PRESENTED TO THE LIBRARY
BY

Miss Emily Waud.

F35 .G57.5

McGILL
UNIVERSITY
LIBRARY

336021 1940

PRESENTED TO THE LIBRARY
BY

Miss Emily Waud.

F35 .G57.5

McGILL UNIVERSITY LIBRARY

336021 1940

McGill University Libraries
DG 210 G6 1823
Pinnock's improved edition of Dr. Goldsm
3 000 703 902 7

PINNOCK'S

IMPROVED EDITION OF GOLDSMITH'S HISTORIES



Hardened Steel Plate

Perkins, Fairman, & Heath.

OLIVER GOLDSMITH

Published by C. & W. B. Whittaker, 13 Ave-Maria Lane
1821

Pinnock's Improved Edition

of

Dr. GOLDSMITH'S ABRIDGEMENT

of the

HISTORY OF ROME

WITH

Questions for Examination

Illustrative Notes

&c. &c.



LONDON,

Published by G. & W. B. Whittaker, 13, Ave Maria Lane.

1825.

Perkins & Heath. — Rotrd. Hankinson Steel Plate

*DG210 G6 1823 McLennan RBD
Goldsmith, Oliver,
Pinnock's improved edition
of Dr. Goldsmith's abridgeme
[redacted] F35/G57/5 71800646

PINNOCK'S IMPROVED EDITION

OF

DR. GOLDSMITH'S ABRIDGMENT

OF THE

HISTORY OF ROME;

TO WHICH IS PREFIXED,

AN INTRODUCTION

TO THE

STUDY OF ROMAN HISTORY,

AND

A GREAT VARIETY OF VALUABLE INFORMATION ADDED THROUGHOUT THE WORK; WITH

A DICTIONARY,

BIOGRAPHICAL, HISTORICAL, &c.

EXPLAINING EVERY DIFFICULTY, FIXING THE PROPER SOUND AND MEANING OF THE WORDS, AND THUS RENDERING THE WHOLE EASY TO BE UNDERSTOOD BY THE LOWEST CAPACITY.

ALSO

QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION

AT THE END OF EACH SECTION.

EIGHTH EDITION.

FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS.

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR G. & W. B. WHITTAKER,

AVE-MARIA-LANE, LUDGATE-STREET.

1823.

Printed by R. Gilbert, St. John's-square, London.

INTRODUCTION

TO THE

HISTORY OF ROME.

CHAPTER I.

Of the City of Rome—its Divisions—Gates—the Capital—Pantheon—Temple of Saturn—of Janus—Theatres—Amphitheatres—Circi—Naumachiæ—Campus Martius—Fora—Porticos—Arches—Columns—Bagnios—Aqueducts—Cloacæ—Public Ways, &c.

1. Perspic'uous, *a.* clear, well arranged.
3. Mons, *s.* a mountain.
   Col'lis, *s.* a hill.
4. Por'ta, *s.* a gate.
   Vi'a, *s.* a way, a road, a street.
   Fo'rum, *s.* a square, or market-place.
   Pisci'na Pub'lica, *s.* public fish ponds.
   Transtiberi'na, *s.* beyond the Tiber.
14. Stat'ue, *s.* an image, usually of the natural size.
18. Ob'long, *a.* of greater length than breadth.
22. Panegyr'ics, *s.* praises, commendations.
26. Chap'iters, *s.* the upper part of a pillar, usually called the capital.
27. Ed'ifices, *s.* grand buildings.
35. Cemen'ted. *v.* joined.
    Colos'sal, *a.* larger than nature, gigantic.
34. Imped'iments, *s.* hindrances, obstacles.
35. Subterra'nean, *a.* under ground.
    Det'riment, *s.* injury.
    Impreg'nable, *a.* unconquerable, not to be forced.

1. No history, however *perspicuous* in its style, or faithful in its narration of events, can be well understood, without a previous acquaintance with the manners, customs, religion, laws, and institutions of the people, whose actions are recorded. 2. The high rank to which the an-

33602

cient Romans attained in the scale of nations, renders this branch of knowledge, as it relates to them, particularly desirable; not only for the purpose of clearing up obscure passages in their history, but for the perfect enjoyment of those admirable works they have left us; which prove them to have been as renowned in arts as in arms.

3. The city of Rome stood on seven hills, *Mons* Palati'nus, Mons Tarpe'ius, *Collis* Quirina'lis, Mons Cœ'lius, Mons Esquili'nus, Mons Vimina'lis, and Mons Aventi'nus. Though its origin was contemptible in the highest degree, both as to its extent and the meanness of its buildings, it rose by degrees to such a pitch of grandeur, that in the time of Vale'rian its walls surrounded a space of fifty miles, and in its most flourishing state it reckoned a population of four millions of inhabitants.

4. Rom'ulus divided his little city into three tribes, and Ser'vius Tul'lus added a fourth, which division continued till the time of Augus'tus. The great increase of buildings having rendered a new arrangement necessary, the city was, by that prince, divided into the following regions or wards:

1. *Porta* Cape'na
2. Cœlimon'tium
3. I'sis and Sera'pis
4. *Via* Sacra
5. Esquili'na
6. Acta Semi'ta
7. Via Lata
8. *Forum* Roma'num
9. Circus Flamin'ius
10. Pala'tium
11. Circus Max'imus
12. *Pisci'na Publica*
13. Aventi'nus
14. *Transtiberi'na.*

5. From the great extent of its walls, Rome had no less than thirty-four gates in the time of Domi'tian; the principal of which were Porta Flumenta'na, Porta Flaminia, Porta Carmenta'lis, Porta Næ'via, Porta Salia'na, and Porta Cape'na.

6. A city so extensive and wealthy, must naturally be supposed to abound with magnificent buildings, both public and private. Indeed a bare catalogue of them

would compose a volume. We shall, therefore, content ourselves with describing those of the greatest importance, and that are most frequently mentioned in history.

7. The temples, as dedicated to the immortal gods, claim our first attention, and amongst these the capitol, or temple of Jupiter Capitoli'nus, occupied the highest rank. 8. This structure was begun by Tarquin'ius Pris cus, and finished by Tarquin'ius Super'bus, with the spoils taken from the neighbouring nations. It stood on a rising ground, and occupied a space of four acres. It was of a square form, its front adorned with three rows of pillars, and the sides with two. The ascent from the ground was by a hundred steps. 9. The prodigious gifts and ornaments with which it was at several times endowed almost exceed belief. Augus'tus is said to have presented at one time two thousand pounds weight of gold, and jewels to the value of five hundred sestertia*. Astonishing accounts are found in different historians of its brazen thresholds, noble pillars, gilded roof, shields and vases of solid silver and of immense size, the golden chariot, and other precious gifts, bestowed by kings, princes, and victorious generals. 10. It was several times destroyed by fire, and as frequently rebuilt. Domi'tian raised the last and most glorious of all, in which the gilding alone amounted to twelve thousand talents†. A small part of this magnificent temple remains, which has been converted into a Christian church.

11. The pantheon was built by Mar'cus Agrip'pa, and dedicated to all the gods. It is of a circular form, and its roof is in the shape of a cupola or dome. It has no windows, but the light is admitted through a circular opening in the roof, immediately under which is a curious gutter to receive the rain. The top was originally covered with silver plates, but their place is now supplied by lead. It

* Nearly four thousand pounds sterling.
† Two million two hundred and fifty thousand pounds.

is at present a Christian church. So much has the ground which surrounds this building been elevated in the lapse of ages, that whereas heretofore they ascended twelve steps, they now go down as many to the entrance.

12. There are two other temples particularly deserving notice, not so much for the magnificence of the structures, as for the uses to which they were applied, and the customs that depended on them.

13. The temple of Saturn, which served for the public treasury, as being the strongest and most secure place in the city. Here were deposited the public registers and records, among which were the *libri elephan'ti*, or great ivory tables, containing a list of all the tribes, and the schemes of the public accounts.

14. The temple of Janus, built entirely of brass, and containing a *statue* of that god. It had brazen gates, which used always to be kept open in war, and shut in time of peace. So continually, however, were the Romans engaged in hostilities, that it was shut but nine times in the space of more than a thousand years.

15. The public buildings next in rank were theatres, amphitheatres, circi, nauma'chiæ *, and others of inferior note.

16. The theatres were built in the form of a semicircle, and designed for the representation of stage-plays.

i. The scena, which was a partition, reaching quite across the theatre, made either to turn round or draw up, for the purpose of presenting a new prospect to the spectators.

ii. The prosce'nium, or stage, on which the actors performed their parts.

iii. The cavea, or middle part, which was considerably lower than the rest. In the amphitheatre it was generally called the are'na, from being strewed with sand, to prevent the performers from slipping.

* In this word the *ch* is pronounced like *k*.

iv. The seats for the spectators were divided into three ranges, and appropriated to the three divisions of the people, senators, knights, and commons; they were severally called or'chestra, eques'tra, and popula'ria.

17. The amphitheatres were of an oval shape, and appropriated to the greater shows of gladiators, wild beasts, &c. of which more in their proper place.

18. The circi were places set apart for the celebration of chariot races, and other popular sports. They were generally *oblong*, with ranges of seats for the convenience of the spectators. The most remarkable of these was the circus Maximus, first built by Tarquin'ius Pris'cus. Its length was four stadia or furlongs, its breadth proportionate, and it contained seats for one hundred and fifty thousand spectators. It was extremely beautiful, and adorned by succeeding princes, and so prodigiously enlarged, that at last it would conveniently accommodate two hundred and fifty thousand men.

19. The nauma'chiæ, or places for the shows of sea engagements, differed but little from the amphitheatres and circi. Some of these were of such an amazing extent, that whole fleets have gone through their evolutions in them, without confusion or inconvenience.

20. The Campus Mar'tius, or Field of Mars, though merely a large plain field, lying near the Tiber, deserves notice, as being the place where the young noblemen practised all kinds of feats of activity, and learned the use of arms and weapons. Here the races, either with chariots or single horses, were performed. Besides this, it was adorned with the statues of famous men, and with arches, columns, porticos, and other magnificent structures. Here stood the Villa Pub'lica, or palace for the reception and entertainment of foreign ambassadors, who were not allowed to enter the city. Several of the public comi"tia* were held in this field, and for that purpose

* Assemblies of the people.

there were septa or ovilia, (apartments enclosed with rails) into which the tribes or centuries entered one by one, to give their votes.

21. The Roman Fora were public places, surrounded with arched porticos. Of these there were five very considerable.

22. Fo'rum Roma'num, built by Rom'ulus, and called, by way of eminence, simply Forum. In that part of it called the comi"tium, stood the rostra, or pulpit, adorned with the beaks of the ships taken from the inhabitants of Anti'um, whence its name. In this causes were pleaded, orations made, and funeral *panegyrics* pronounced.

23. Fo'rum Ju'lium, built by Julius Cæsar, with the spoils taken in the Gallic war. The area alone cost one hundred thousand sesterces.

24. Fo'rum Augus'ti, built by Augustus Cæsar, and reckoned by Pliny among the wonders of the city. In the two porticos were numerous statues, those on one side representing all the Latin kings, beginning with Æne'as, on the other the kings of Rome, beginning with Romu'lus, and the most eminent persons in the commonwealth, among whom was Augus'tus himself, with an inscription on the pedestal of every statue, expressing the chief actions of the persons it represented.

25. Fo'rum Ner'væ, begun by Domi"tian, but finished and named by Ner'va. In this were the statues of the emperors.

26. But the most celebrated for its admirable structure and contrivance, was the Fo'rum Traja'ni, built by the emperor Trajan, with the spoils he had taken in his wars. The covering of this edifice was brass, the porticos exceedingly beautiful and magnificent, with pillars of unusual height, and *chapiters* of extraordinary size.

27. The porticos were beautiful structures annexed to public *edifices*, as well for ornament as use. They sometimes served for the assemblies of the senate; sometimes

jewellers, and such as dealt in precious wares, exposed their goods to sale under them; but they were more generally considered as places for walking or riding, alike sheltered from the sun and rain.

28. Arches were public buildings, designed for the reward and encouragement of noble enterprises; they were originally plain rude structures of brick; but in later times no expences were spared to render them splendid and magnificent in the highest degree: several remain to this day.

29. Columns, or pillars, were likewise honourable memorials of some noble victory or exploit, and added not a little to the beauty of the city. Those of the emperors Tra'jan and Antoni'nus, deserve particular notice.

30. The former stands in the centre of the Fo'rum Traja'ni, and is composed of twenty-four large blocks of marble, so curiously *cemented*, as to appear one entire stone. It is ascended on the inside by one hundred and eighty-five winding stairs, and has forty little windows for the admission of light. On this pillar are expressed, in admirable sculpture, all the noble actions of the emperor, particularly in the Decian war. A *colossal* statue of Tra'jan, twenty feet high, stood on the top of the column; he was represented in a general's suit of armour, holding in his left hand a sceptre, and in his right a hollow globe of gold, in which, some say, his ashes were deposited after his death.

31. The column of Antoni'nus resembles this, though of greatly inferior workmanship, as being undertaken in the declining age of the empire; these pillars are still standing.

32. The bagnios, or public baths, were among the most remarkable displays of Roman luxury and magnificence. They were generally of vast extent, and fitted up in a style of luxurious splendour, of which we can form but a faint idea. Sen'eca asserts that the floors were inlaid

with precious stones, and Pliny mentions that many of the seats were of solid silver.

33. The most remarkable bagnios were those of Diocle'tian and Antoni'nus Caracal'la, great part of which is still standing; the lofty arches, beautiful and stately pillars, the profusion of costly marbles, the curious vaulting of the roofs, the prodigious number of spacious apartments, and a thousand other ornaments and conveniences, fill the mind of the beholder with admiration and astonishment.

34. The aqueducts, however, were, without question, the noblest proofs of the grandeur of the empire. These wonderful channels, by which water was brought from a prodigious distance, were supported on arches, sometimes upwards of a hundred feet high; mountains, and other apparently insurmountable *impediments*, were cut through to afford them a passage. Of these magnificent structures, Proco'pius reckons fourteen, and Victor not less than twenty.

35. The cloa'cæ, or common sewers, by Tarquin'ius Pris'cus, for conveying away the filth of the city, were worthy of the Roman greatness. These *subterranean* channels were of very considerable size, and constructed with amazing strength. M. Agrippa caused seven streams to meet together under ground in one main channel, with such a rapid current as to carry all before it. Sometimes, when these streams were violently swelled with immoderate rains, they beat with excessive fury against the paving at the bottom and sides. Sometimes huge pieces of stone and timber were carried down the channel, and yet the fabric received no *detriment*. Sometimes terrible earthquakes shook the foundation of the city, and yet these sewers still remained *impregnable*.

36. Lastly, the public ways were but little inferior to the works already described, either in utility or cost. The most noble of these was the Via Ap'pia, which was carried

to a distance of three hundred and fifty miles. It was made of huge stones, generally a foot and a half square; and though it had been constructed more than one thousand eight hundred years, many parts of it are as perfect now as when it was first made.

Questions for Examination.

1. What is essential to the understanding of history?
2. What occasions this to be peculiarly necessary as it regards the Romans?
3. What were the situation and magnitude of Rome?
4. How was it divided?
5. What were the principal gates of Rome?
6. Did Rome possess any magnificent buildings?
7. Which of these demand our first attention?
8. Describe this temple.
9. Was it wealthy?
10. Was it not the subject of several accidents?
11. Describe the Pantheon.
12. Are these the only temples worthy of notice?
13. What was the first?
14. ..... second?
15. What were the public buildings next in rank?
16. Describe the theatres.
17. ..... amphitheatres.
18. ..... Circi.
19. ..... Naumachiæ.
20. ..... Campus Martius.
21. ..... Fora.
22. ..... Forum Romanum.
23. ..... Forum Julium.
24. ..... Forum Augusti.
25. ..... Forum Nervæ.
26. Which of the Fora was the most celebrated?
27. What were the porticos?
28. ..... arches?
29. ..... columns?
30. Describe Trajan's Pillar.
31. ..... the Pillar of Antoninus.
32. What other public buildings deserve notice?
33. What were the most remarkable of these?
34. What afforded the noblest proofs of Roman grandeur?
35. What further deserves our attention?
36. What are the last things necessary to be described?

CHAPTER II.

OF THE RELIGION OF THE ROMANS.

Of the Gods of Rome—Roman Virtues—Vices—Lupercalia—Fratres—Arvales—Divination—the Augurs—their manner of Divination—Aruspices—Pontifices—Pontifex Maximus—Vestals—Sacrifices, &c.

1. Polythe'ists, *s.* worshippers of many gods.
Indispen'sable, *a.* absolutely necessary.
3. Avari"cious, *a.* covetous, greedy of wealth.
9. Pry, *v.* to examine into.
Sooth'saying, *part.* foretelling future events.
Tus'cans, *s.* inhabitants of Tuscany, in Italy.
13. Unpropi"tious, *a.* unfavourable.
Pyramid'ical, *a* tapering upwards to a point.
Prognos'tics, *s.* signs.
19. Fas'ces, *s.* bundles of rods, with an ax in the centre, carried before the consuls, &c. as symbols of authority.

1. THE Romans were *polytheists* to so great a degree, that they are said to have worshipped thirty thousand gods: to attempt an enumeration of even the chief of these would be tedious and unnecessary, as mythology is among those studies that are *indispensable* to a liberal education.

2. In the early ages of the republic, the Romans rather exceeded than fell short in their virtues. Thus they were devout even to superstition: valiant to a contempt of life, and an inconsiderate courting of danger; frugal and temperate, to a voluntary abstinence from lawful pleasures and conveniences; constant, even to their own ruin; and rather rigorous than just.

3. But, while they adopted the gods of the nations whom they conquered, they adopted likewise their luxuries and their vices, so that at length, from being just, temperate, and generous, they became extravagant, un-

just, and *avaricious*. 4. Yet, in proportion as they degenerated from their ancient virtues, they increased the number and pomp of their religious ceremonies, until the substance being gone, nothing but empty show remained.

5. It will be sufficient in this brief Introduction to notice a few of the most remarkable of these.

6.—i. The Luperca'lia, or feast in honour of Pan. At its commencement, a sacrifice was offered of some goats and a dog; then two children, noblemen's sons, being brought thither, the Luper'ci, or priests of Pan, stained their foreheads with the bloody knife, while others wiped it off with locks of wool, dipped in milk. This done, having cut the goat's skins into thongs, they ran about the streets naked to the waist, and lashed all they met; women in particular used to offer themselves to the strokes, as supposing that they were thereby rendered fruitful. History informs us, that Antony did not disdain to celebrate these rites.

7.—ii. The Poti″tii and Pina'rii were instituted by Evander, in honour of Her'cules, after he had slain the giant Ca'cus, who had stolen some of his cattle*. Every year a young bullock, that had never borne the yoke, was offered in sacrifice to that god, by the descendants of the Poti″tii and Pina'rii, two noble families at the court of Evan'der.

8.—iii. Ac'ca Lauren'tia, the nurse of Romulus, had a custom once a year of making a solemn sacrifice for a blessing on the fields, her twelve sons always assisting at the ceremony; hence arose the order of Fratres Arva'les, which was in great repute at Rome. The members of this order wore crowns made of ears of corn at the time of the solemnity. Their principal business was to take care of the boundaries and divisions of lands, and to decide all controversies that might arise concerning them.

---

* Vide Eneidos, lib. 8, v. 268.

9. A desire to *pry* into futurity has always been a leading passion in the human breast: for its gratification a number of methods have been invented. The origin of *soothsaying* has been ascribed to the Chalde'ans; from them the art passed to the Grecians, and from the Grecians to the *Tuscans*, which latter taught it to the Latins and Romans.

10. The professors of this art among the Romans were called Augurs and Arus'pices.

11. The Augurs professed to interpret dreams, oracles, prodigies, &c. and to say whether any action should be fortunate or prejudicial to any particular person, or to the whole commonwealth. This they did,

i. From appearances in the heavens, as thunder, lightning, comets, meteors, &c.

ii. From the flight or singing of birds.

iii. From the sacred chickens. The manner of divining from them was as follows:—the Augurs, whose duty it was, threw down a handful of crumbs or corn, then ordering the coop to be opened, if the chickens did not immediately run fluttering to their meat, if they took no notice of it, or flew away, the omen was considered unfortunate: if, on the contrary, they picked it up with greediness, the omen was particularly happy.

12. The business of the Aruspices was to observe the beasts offered in sacrifice, and by them to divine the success of any enterprise. This they did,

i. From the beasts themselves.

ii. From their entrails.

iii. From the flame of the sacrifice.

iv. From the flour, frankincense, wine, and water, used in the sacrifice.

13. If the beasts were obliged to be dragged to the altar, escaped from the stroke, or roared and struggled much after receiving it, the omen was *unpropitious;* but if they came without compulsion, received the blow without struggling or resistance, and sent out a great quantity

of blood, a prosperous event was confidently promised. A double liver was reckoned highly unfortunate, so likewise was a little or lean heart; if the entrails fell out of the priest's hands, or if they were of a pale livid colour, they portended sudden danger and ruin. If the flame of the sacrifice arose freely, in a *pyramidical* form, clear, and transparent, it was a favourable omen; but if it was kindled with difficulty, did not burn upright, if it was slow in consuming the sacrifice, and sent forth a crackling noise, it was considered unfortunate and unpropitious. In the meal, frankincense, &c. *prognostics* were taken from their taste, smell, colour, &c.

14. The Pontifices were priests whose duty it was to give judgment in all causes relating to religion, to inquire into the lives and manners of the inferior priests, and to punish them if they saw occasion: to prescribe rules for public worship; to regulate the feasts, sacrifices, and other religious institutions. The office of Pontifex Maximus, or chief of the Pontifices, was so honourable, that all the emperors either actually took it upon them, or at least assumed the name.

15. The institution of the vestal virgins is generally ascribed to Numa; their office was to attend upon the rites of Vesta, and to preserve the sacred fire, which was never extinguished more than once a year, and then relighted by the rays of the sun; should it by any negligence be suffered to expire, it was considered as an unlucky omen for the state, and the vestal, whose inattention occasioned the misfortune, was severely punished.

16. These priestesses, who were always of noble families, were obliged to make a vow of chastity for thirty years, after which they were at liberty to marry; if they broke this vow they were buried alive without the city wall. These severities were, however, recompensed by peculiar privileges. The *fasces* were carried before them when they went abroad, as before the consul or prætor,

and if they chanced * to meet a malefactor going to execution, they could deliver him from the impending punishment.

17. As every deity had some peculiar rites and institutions, it will not be possible, in treating of sacrifices, to give more than the general outline of this branch of the Roman worship.

18. The priest, and the person by whom the victim was presented, went before in white garments, to represent the purity necessary to render the sacrifice acceptable. The beast to be sacrificed, if an ox, bull, or cow, had its horns gilded; if of the lesser sorts, as a sheep, goat, or swine, it was crowned with the leaves of the tree in which the deity most delighted for whom the sacrifice was designed.

19. The procession usually advanced to the sound of musical instruments, and these continued to play even while prayers were offered to the gods, to prevent the hearing of any unlucky noise. When the prayers were finished, the priest threw some corn and frankincense, together with the *moia*, or sacred cake, upon the head of the beast; he then sprinkled some wine between the horns, by way of libation. In the next place, he plucked off some hair from the forehead of the beast, and threw it into the fire; and lastly, turning himself to the east, he drew a sort of crooked line with his knife from the forehead to the tail, which was the signal for the public servants to slay the victim. 20. When the aruspices had performed their part of the ceremony, the priests laid what they thought fit for the gods upon the altar, and went and regaled on the rest.

Questions for Examination.

1. What was the religion of the Romans?
2. What was the character of the Romans?
3. Did they continue thus strict in their conduct?
4. Did they give up all appearance of religion?

---

* If designedly done it was unavailing.

5. What religious festivals did they celebrate?
6. What was the first?
7. ..... second?
8. ..... third?
9. What is man's ruling passion, and with whom did soothsaying originate?
10. What were its professors among the Romans called?
11. What was the duty of the augurs?
12. What was the business of the aruspices?
13. How did they prognosticate from these?
14. Who were the pontifices?
15. Describe the vestal virgins and their duties?
16. What farther obligations and privileges belonged to them?
17. Describe the sacrifices of the Romans?
18. What was the usual order of procession?
19. Describe the ceremony of the sacrifice?
20. Was the whole victim consumed?

CHAPTER III.

OF THE ROMAN DIVISION OF TIME.

Of the Regulators of the Roman Calendar—of the divisions of the Months—the Roman manner of Reckoning — Festivals — Calends of January — Lupercalia—Terminalia—Cerealia—Florealia—Saturnalia, &c.

4. Solar year, *s.* the time required for the earth to perform her revolutions round the sun.
5. Eq'uinoxes, *s.* two periods of the year when the sun crosses the equator, causing the days and nights to be equal.

1. ROM'ULUS, Numa, and Julius Cæsar, were the principal regulators of the Roman calendar. The former divided the year into ten months, commencing with March. 2. Numa added those of January and February, and by various means contrived to remedy the inequality between the solar and the lunar year; but his regulations did not exactly answer the end proposed, so that, in the lapse of ages, the festivals, and solemn days for sacrifice, came to be kept at a season quite contrary to that of their institution.

3. Julius Cæsar, with the assistance of some of the ablest mathematicians and astronomers of his time, undertook to remedy these defects. In order, therefore, to bring things to their orignal state, he added two months of thirty-three and thirty-four days respectively to one year, which was called the last year of confusion. 4. After this he appointed the *solar year*, to consist of three hundred and sixty-five days, six hours, which six hours occasioned a day to be added every four years to the end of February. 5. As this year of 365 days 6 hours exceeded the length of the real year eleven minutes, Pope Gregory, in 1582, found that the *equinoxes* had gone back ten whole days; he therefore cut off ten days from the calendar to bring them to their proper places, and this forms what is called the Gregorian, or New Style.

6. The months were divided into Calends, Nones, and Ides.

7. The Nones were so called, because they reckoned nine days from the Ides.

8. The Ides were generally about the middle of the month.

9. The Calends were always fixed to the first of every month, but the nones and the ides differed in different months, for March, May, July, and October, had six nones each, the other eight months only four. In the former, therefore, the nones were the 7th, and the ides the 15th; in the latter the nones were the 5th, and the ides the 13th.

10. In reckoning these, the Romans went backwards; thus, January 1, was the first of the calends of January. December the 31st was the day next before the calends of January, and so on to the 13th, which was called Idus Decembris, or the ides of December: the 12th was the day before the ides of December; and so on to the 5th, which was called the nones of December; the 4th was the day before the nones of December; and so on to the 1st, which was called the calends of December.

11. The festivals of the Romans were too numerous to be minutely described; let it suffice to mention a few of the most remarkable. The calends of January, or new year's day, was noted as the day on which the magistrates entered on their offices; good wishes and presents were likewise sent from friend to friend. February the fifteenth, or the fifteenth of the calends of March, was the feast of *Luperca'lia*, already described. On the 22d or 23d, was the *Termina'lia*, sacred to Ter'minus, the guardian of boundaries, or landmarks, on which they offered him cakes and fruits, and sometimes sheep and swine. April 19th, or the 13th of the calends of May, was the *Cerea'lia*, or feast of Ceres, celebrated by women alone. April 27th, or the 5th of the calends of May, was the *Florea'lia*, or feast of Flora, goddess of flowers. On the fourteenth of the calends of January, or the 18th of December, and five following days, was celebrated the *Saturna'lia*, or feast of Saturn. During this feast masters changed situations with their slaves, and suffered themselves to be jested with or reproved without resentment. No war was to be proclaimed, no offender executed. The schools kept a vacation, and mirth and freedom where every where enjoyed.

Questions for Examination.

1. Who were the principal regulators of the Roman calendar?
2. What alterations did Numa make, and what was the consequence?
3. By whom were these defects remedied?
4. What farther regulations did he adopt?
5. Did these improvements answer the desired end?
6. How were the months divided?
7. What were the Nones?
8. ..... Ides?
9. ..... Calends?
10. How were these reckoned?
11. Describe the Roman festivals.

CHAPTER IV.

OF THE DIFFERENT ORDERS OF THE STATE.

Patricians and Plebeians—Patrons and Clients—Senators, Knights, and Commons—Ingenui, Liberti and Libertini—Manumission—the Senate—Candidates — Consuls— Dictator — Prætors—Censors—Quæstors—Tribunes of the People—Ædiles, &c.

1. Pa'tres, *s.* fathers.
2. Ad'vocates, *s.* defenders in a court of law.
   Def'erence, *s.* submission.
5. Progen'itors, *s.* forefathers.
6. Præ'tor, *s.* a governor, or magistrate, next in dignity to the consuls.
7. Lic'tor, *s.* one of the guards of a chief magistrate.
10. Ex'igencies, *s.* critical situations.
11. Protract'ing, *part.* lengthening.
20. Ex'piatory, *a.* having the power of atoning for crime.

1. No sooner had Rome arrived at some degree of consequence as a state, than Rom'ulus made a distinction of his subjects into nobles and commons, the former called *patres*, or patricii, the latter plebeii; and as the patricii were appointed to watch over, protect, and countenance the plebeii, the former were likewise entitled patrones, and the latter clientes. 2. Their obligations were mutual: the patrons engaged to be the advisers and *advocates* of their clients, while the clients were expected to serve their patrons with fidelity, to pay them all possible *deference* and respect, and even to assist them with money if necessary. 3. A new division, however, took place about the time of Tarquin's expulsion, into senators, knights, and commons. 4. The senators were members of the supreme council of state. The knights called equites, were allowed a gold ring, and a horse at

the public charge: and the commons were the remainder of the population, not included in those two orders.

5. Such persons as were free of the city, were either ingenui, liberti, or libertini. The ingenui were such as had been born free, and of free *progenitors;* the libertini were the children of parents who had been made free; liberti, such as had been slaves, but were now free.

6. Considerable ceremony was used in setting a slave free. He was brought before the *prætor,* when his master, laying his hand upon the slave's head, said, I desire that this man may be made free; then the prætor, laying a rod upon his head, said, I pronounce him to be free, after the Roman manner. After this the *lictor,* taking the rod from the prætor's hand, struck the slave several times on the head, face, and back, after which he received a cap in token of liberty, and his name was enrolled among the freemen of the city.

7. The senate was the chief council of state, composed both of patricians and plebeians, at first chosen by the kings, afterwards by the consuls, but at last by the censors alone. 8. He that stood first on the censors' roll, had the honourable title of *princeps senatus,* or prince of the senate; the rest were called *patres conscripti,* or conscript fathers*. 9. The qualifications necessary for those who wished to become members of this illustrious body, were to have borne some office in the magistracy, and to possess an estate of not less than twelve hundred sestertia, or nine thousand one hundred and seventy-five pounds sterling.

10. The senate met regularly on the calends, nones, and ides of every month, except September and October. At other times they were assembled by order of the dictator, the consuls, the prætors, the tribunes of the commons, or the interrex, whenever the *exigencies* of the state required; their decrees were called *senatus consulta.*

* From their names being written in the censors' roll.

11. There were several impediments to the passing of a decree; the principal were, *protracting* the debate until after sunset, when it was not lawful to proceed to a division; and the interposition of the tribunes, who had the privilege by their *veto* (I forbid) to put an end to the debate: both methods were frequently practised.

12. The magistrates of the Roman republic were elective, and previous to their election were called *candidati*, candidates, from the *toga candidata*, or loose white gown, which they wore while soliciting the votes of the people. 13. As human nature is in all ages the same, as many arts were used by the Roman candidates to acquire popularity, as in more modern times are practised to secure a seat in parliament, they took the meanest person by the hand, addressed him by the familiar title of father, brother, or friend, and carefully abstained from offending the most inconsiderable fellow who was master of a vote, lest they should not only lose his, but the votes of those who might espouse his cause.

14. The consular office was first established on the expulsion of Tarquin, Anno Urbis* 244. There were two consuls chosen at first from the patricians, but, A. U. 387, the plebeians obtained the privilege of having one of their own body always an associate in the office; their power was the same as that of the kings, but they exercised it only one year, so that they seldom degenerated into tyrants. 15. They wore a white robe edged with purple, called prætexta, and were preceded, when they appeared in public, by twelve lictors carrying the faces and securis.

16. In times of great emergency a supreme magistrate, called a dictator, was appointed by the consuls, with absolute power. He might proclaim war, levy forces, lead them against the enemy, or disband them at his pleasure; the lives and fortunes of all were at his

* In the year of the city, that is, from the foundation of the city.

disposal, and from his judgment there was no appeal. He was always attended in public by twenty-four lictors, with the fasces, and other ensigns of his dignity.

17. The prætors were magistrates chosen to administer justice in the absence of the consuls, or to assist them when at home. At first there was only one, but their number rose by degrees to sixty-four; in the decline of the empire, however, they again fell as low as three.

18. The censors were magistrates of great power and authority, being appointed not only to divide the people into their proper classes and centuries, and to take an exact account of their estates and goods, but likewise to superintend the public morals, and to punish a breach of them, even by persons of the highest dignity. 19. They were two in number, were chosen every five years, but continued in office only one year and a half. 20. On performing the census, or numbering of the people, they made a solemn lustration or *expiatory* sacrifice, whence the space of five years was called a lustrum.

21. The quæstors were eight in number, and their duty was to receive and lodge ambassadors, to take charge of the decrees of the senate, and to act as treasurers. The quæstorship was the first office any person could bear in the commonwealth, and might be undertaken at the age of twenty-four or twenty-five years.

22. The tribunitial office owes its origin to a quarrel between the patricians and plebeians *, in which the latter departed from the city, and could not be induced to return, till permission was granted them to choose magistrates from their own body, who should defend liberties, and remedy the grievances imposed on them by their superiors.

23. These magistrates were called *tribunes of the people*, and though at first they pretended to be only the protectors of the commons, and redressers of public

* Vide Chap. x.

grievances, yet by degrees they usurped almost absolute power, imprisoning and otherwise punishing even the consuls themselves, and occasioning far greater disorders than those they were chosen to remedy. They were at first five in number, but were afterwards increased to ten.

24. The ædiles were magistrates appointed to assist the tribunes, to inspect the public games, to superintend the building and reparation of temples, theatres, baths, and other public edifices; they likewise had the supervision of the stores of corn and other provisions, of the commodities brought to market, and the punishment of delinquents in matters relating to buying and selling.

Questions for Examination.

1. Into what classes were the Romans divided?
2. What were the obligations of each?
3. Was this division the only one?
4. Describe these.
5. Were there not other distinctions?
6. How were they made free?
7. What was the senate?
8. How were its members denominated?
9. What qualifications were necessary for the candidates?
10. When did they meet?
11. Were there any impediments to the passing of a decree?
12. How were the Roman magistrates appointed?
13. By what means did they procure these?
14. When was the consular office first established, and who were eligible?
15. What was their dress, and how were they attended?
16. Was there not sometimes a superior magistrate?
17. Who were the prætors?
18. ..... censors?
19. What was their number, and the duration of their office?
20. What was remarkable in their administration?
21. Who were the quæstors?
22. What was the origin of the tribunitial office?
23. What were they called, and how did they discharge their duty?
24. Who were the ædiles?

CHAPTER V.

Of Judicial Proceedings and Punishments among the Romans.

3. Defau'lt, *s.* failure.
   Plain'tiff, *s.* the complainant.
4. Suf'frages, *s.* votes.
   Major'ity, *s.* the greater number.
12. Indict'ment, *s.* charge of criminalty.
13. Ex'ile, *s.* banishment.
15. Fur'ca, *s.* a fork.
18. Jurispru'dence, *s.* laws.

1. JUDICIAL proceedings were either public or private; the latter relating to controversies, the former to crimes.

2. The manner of carrying on private suits was as follows: the injured party summoned the offender to the court, who was obliged either to appear immediately, or give bond for his appearance at the proper season.

3. On the day appointed for hearing, the prætor caused the parties to be summoned; upon the *default* of either party, that party lost his cause; but if both appeared, the *plaintiff* proceeded to prefer his suit, according to a set form. Judges were then appointed by the prætor to hear and determine the matter, and the number of witnesses fixed, that the suit might not be unreasonably protracted; then the parties proceeded to give security, that they would abide by the judgment, and the judges took a solemn oath to decide impartially. After this, the cause was argued by lawyers on both sides, assisted by witnesses, writings, &c.

4. In giving sentence, the *suffrages* of the *majority* of the judges were necessary to decide against the defendant: if the number was equally divided, the defendant was cleared; and if half the judges condemned him to pay one sum, and half another, the least sum was always exacted.

5. The inquisition of criminal matters belonged at first to the kings, afterwards to the consuls, but at length it devolved on the prætors.

6. The criminal was first summoned to appear, as in the former case; his name was entered in the roll of criminals, and a day appointed for the trial.

7. From the entry of the name till the trial was over, the accused person wore a mourning habit, and assumed every appearance of sorrow and concern.

8. Upon the appointed day, the court being met, and the parties in waiting, a jury was impanelled to hear the trial, and decide on the guilt or innocence of the accused.

9. The accuser then proceeded, in a studied oration, to state the charge against the criminal, and to aggravate it by all the powers of eloquence; the advocates for the accused then proceeded to make the best defence the circumstances of the case would admit; and lastly, the jury delivered their verdict, by writing their opinion on a tablet, and throwing it into a little box or urn, placed expressly for the purpose; the accused person prostrating himself at their feet while so doing, to excite their compassion.

10. The tablets being drawn, and the majority of opinions collected, the prætor proceeded to give judgment, either of condemnation or acquittal.

11. It sometimes happened, that the people at large were constituted the judges, both of civil and criminal matters, but more especially the latter. When any magistrate designed to impeach a person of a crime before the whole people, he ascended the rostra *, gave notice of his intention, and fixed the day of trial; the suspected party giving sureties for his appearance, or in default of this he was committed to prison.

12. On the appointed day, on the appearance of the accused party, the accuser began his charge, and at the

* A kind of pulpit, so called from being adorned with beaks of ships, called in Latin, rostra.

end of the *indictment*, mentioned the particular punishment appointed by the law for such an offence. After a number of forms had been gone through, and the accused had made his defence, either by himself or his advocates, a day was appointed for the comitia to meet to pass sentence.

13. Sometimes, however, the criminal was relieved, either by the interposition of the tribunes in his behalf, by going into voluntary *exile*, by prevailing on the accuser to relinquish his charge, or by ill omens appearing on the appointed day, by which the assembly was prevented.

14. The Roman punishments authorised by law were,

i. Damnum, or fine.

ii. Vincula, imprisonment and fetters.

iii. Verbera, or stripes generally inflicted with rods.

iv. Talio, or the infliction of the same injury that had been done to the accuser, as maiming, or the like.

v. Ignominia, public shame or penance.

vi. Exilium, banishment.

vii. Servitus, or selling into slavery.

Those which extended to the offender's life were,

i. Percussio securi, beheading.

ii. Strangulatio, strangling, usually performed in prison.

iii. Præcipitatio de robore—iv. Dejectio è rupe Tarpeiâ, throwing the criminal headlong, either from that part of the prison called robur, or from the Tarpeian Rock.

v. In crucem actio, crucifixion, usually inflicted on slaves or very mean persons.

vi. Projectio in profluentem, was a punishment peculiar to the crime of parricide; the criminal, after having been scourged with rods, was sewed into a leathern sack, together with a serpent, an ape, a cock, and a dog, and thrown either into the sea, or a river.

15. Besides these there were, throwing to wild beasts, scourging to death, the head being placed in a kind of pillory or *furca*, and many others devised by the inventive cruelty of those who possessed power only to abuse it.

16. It would not be consistent with the limits assigned to this Introduction, to enter minutely into a description of the Roman code of laws. At first they were engraved on ten tables of brass, and exposed to public inspection *, and soon after two others were added.

17. But as the commonwealth increased, both in extent of dominion and in refinement, laws multiplied, till in the reign of Justin'ian there were more than two thousand distinct volumes on the subject. 18. Thus rendered almost useless by their immense numbers, that emperor employed the wisest and most learned men in his dominions, in selecting and arranging such as were most valuable; thus composing a system of *jurisprudence*, which, for its comprehensiveness and utility, has formed the ground-work of civil law in most of the modern states of Europe.

Questions for Examination.

1. How were judicial proceedings distinguished?
2. How were private suits carried on?
3. What occurred on the day of hearing?
4. How was sentence given?
5. To whom belonged judgment in criminal matters?
6. How was it conducted?
7. What was the deportment of the criminal?
8. What was the first proceeding?
9. Describe the farther proceedings.
10. What was the final process?
11. Were not the people sometimes judges of criminal matters?
12. What was the form of proceeding?
13. Were there not methods of evading judgment?
14. What were the Roman punishments?
15. Were there not others?
16. What were the Roman laws?
17. Did not these laws increase?
18. Was not an abridgment made?

---

* Vide History, Chap. xii.

CHAPTER VI.

SECT. I.

Of the Roman Art of War.

Levies of the Foot—Cavalry—Alteration in its Constitution—Military Oath—Manner of administering it—Evocati—Velites—Hastati—Principes Triarii—Minor Divisions—Legion—Number of Horse—Centurions—Tribunes—Legati—Imperator—Practice of devoting himself.

2. Len'ity, *s.* mildness.
7. Af'fluence, *s.* riches, wealth.

1. As soon as the consuls were elected, they proceeded to choose twenty-four military tribunes, fourteen from the knights, and ten from the commons; they then issued an edict, commanding all persons above seventeen years of age to assemble in the area before the capitol; this being done, every tribe was directed to divide into its proper centuries, and out of each century, soldiers were selected by name, for which purpose tables were at hand, in which the name, age, and wealth of every person were exactly described. 2. None were exempt from this levy, except from age, sickness, inability, or a release by public authority. 3. Refusal to serve was usually punished by fine, imprisonment, or stripes, according to the *lenity* or severity of the consul.

4. The Roman cavalry were called equites *, and their order the equestrian order, from their being allowed a horse at the public charge. Rom'ulus originally chose three hundred young men from the noblest families to serve on horseback; but after the institution of the cen-

* From equus, a horse.

sus by Ser'vius Tul'lus, all persons who were worth four hundred sestertia *, and possessed an unblemished character, had the honour of being admitted into the order of the equites. 5. On being enrolled, a horse and gold ring were given to each, and he was obliged to appear for the future on horseback, whenever the state had occasion for his services. 6. Thus the Roman army, instead of being composed of the dregs of the state, as is too frequently the case in modern times, consisted of the most respectable and most virtuous citizens, who fought for the honour of their country, and felt an interest in its prosperity †.

7. This happy constitution of the cavalry continued till the time of Ma'rius; after that period, the military affairs being new modelled, the knights preferred the enjoyment of ease and *affluence* at home, to the dangers and fatigues of war abroad; their places in the army, therefore, were filled by foreign horse, and the title became a mere honorary appendage, unconnected with military duty.

8. The levies being completed, a solemn oath was administered to each soldier in the following manner: 9. The tribunes of every legion chose one soldier, and administered to him a solemn oath, that he would obey his commanders in all things to the utmost of his power, that he would at all times be ready to attend, and that he would never leave the army without their consent; after he had ended, the rest passing one by one, individually swore to the same effect, exclaiming "Idem in me," I swear the same.

10. But besides these ordinary soldiers there were others called evocati, who were held in superior estimation to the others. These were not compelled to remain in the army, but were usually old and experienced soldiers, who had served their legal time, or received particular marks of favour as rewards of valour. In the field they usually

* £3,125. † This will not apply to the latter ages of the empire.

guarded the chief standard, being excused from all the military drudgery to which the others were subject.

11. The whole Rōman infantry was divided into four sorts, velites, hastati, principes, and triarii.

12. The velites were young and inexperienced soldiers, lightly armed, and stationed in loose order before the army, to be employed in any occasional service that required swiftness and expedition.

13. The hastati were so called from the spears which they used in battle.

14. The principes were generally men of middle age and of great vigour; they composed the second rank.

15. The triarii were commonly veterans*, of long experience and approved valour, who composed the third rank, and were considered the main strength and hopes of the army; they are sometimes called pilarii, from their weapon, the pilum or javelin.

16. Each of these grand divisions, except the velites, was made up of thirty manipuli or companies, and each company of two centuries or ordines. Three manipuli, one of hastati, one of principes, and one of triarii, composed a cohors or cohort, and ten cohorts made up a legion.

17. The number of foot in a legion was fixed by Rom'ulus at three thousand, though he afterwards increased it to six thousand; the common number was from four to five thousand, seldom exceeding that standard.

18. The horse required to every legion was three hundred, divided into ten turmæ or troops, and again every turma into three decuriæ, or bodies of ten men.

19. The principal officers were the centurions, the tribunes, the legati or generals, and the imperator or commander-in-chief.

20. Of centurions, there were two to every manipulus or company, who had the command of a century each, the

* Old soldiers.

most honourable of these was called primipilus, and enjoyed many signal advantages.

21. Of tribunes, there were six in every legion, whose business it was to decide all controversies in the army, to give the word to the watch, to take care of the works and camp, and to perform many other duties of an important nature; they were generally of a senatorian or equestrian rank, and had the honour of wearing a gold ring as the equites.

22. Of legati or generals, there was commonly one to each legion, who commanded in chief under the imperator or consul, and in his absence they had the honour of using the fasces, and were intrusted with the whole charge of the army.

23. The general-in-chief was usually intrusted with great power, by which he was at liberty to carry on the war in any way he thought proper; but the senate reserved to itself the right of making peace and decreeing war, unless on very extraordinary occasions.

24. So highly was the general-in-chief estimated by the ancient Romans, that they firmly believed, if at any time he would consent to be devoted or sacrificed to Jupiter, Mars, the earth, and the infernal gods, certain success would attend the army under his command.

25. In pursuance of this idea, the two Decii, father and son, devoted themselves for their country's good: the former in the war against the Latins, the latter in that against the Tuscans; and the event in both cases was such as to strengthen the idea of its efficacy *.

Questions for Examination.

1. How were the levies made?
2. Who were exempt from military service?
3. What was the consequence of refusal to serve?

---

* Vide History, Chap. xiii.

4. Describe the constitution of the Roman cavalry.
5. What marks of distinction did they enjoy?
6. What was the character of the Roman army?
7. How long did this state of things continue?
8. What followed the completion of the levies?
9. How was this oath administered?
10. Were there not soldiers of superior rank in the army?
11. How were the Roman infantry divided?
12. What were the velites?
13. ..... hastati?
14. ..... principes?
15. ..... triarii?
16. Of what were these divisions composed?
17. What number composed a legion?
18. How many horse were attached to a legion?
19. What were the principal officers?
20. How many centurions were there?
21. .... tribunes?
22. ..... legati?
23. What were the powers of the commander-in-chief?
24. How was he estimated?
25. Was this ever practised?

SECT. II.

Of the Roman Arms, Weapons, Order of Battle, Standards, Military Music, &c.

3. Hide, *s.* a skin, in this case made into leather.
4. Cu'bit, *s.* one foot nine-tenths.
8. Mar'shalling, *part.* setting in order.
   Repul'se, *s.* a being driven back.
11. In'tervals, *s.* openings.
    Impet'uous, *a.* fierce.
14. Tal'ons, *s.* claws.
17. Du'bious, *a.* doubtful, uncertain.
22. Haran'gue, *v.* to make a speech.

1. THE arms of the legionaries consisted of the sword, the shield, the pilum or dart, the galea or helmet, and the lorica or coat of mail.

2. The sword was of different forms in different ages of the commonwealth; the usual shape was that of the Turkish scimitar, only sharper at the point; contrary to

the custom of other nations, it was worn at the right side, that it might not be in the way of the shield.

3. The scutum or shield was of wood, strengthened with iron, and covered with bull's *hide;* in the middle was an iron boss jutting out, which served to glance off stones or darts, and likewise to press violently upon the enemy. The scutum was about four feet long, guarding nearly the whole body.

4. The pilum was a kind of javelin, which in a charge they darted at the enemy. Its staff was usually about three *cubits* long, with an iron head hooked and jagged at the end: these were sometimes thrown with such force as to inflict terrible wounds, the hooks at their points preventing their being drawn out. Even when they fixed in the enemies' shields only, they were a great encumbrance, by hindering the free use of their arms.

5. The galea or helmet, was a head-piece of brass or iron, on the top of which was the crista or crest, composed of feathers or horse-hair. The helmets of the officers were frequently very splendid and curious, and adorned with gold and silver.

6. The lorica, or coat of mail, was generally of leather covered with scales of iron, silver or gold: sometimes these lorica were composed of several folds of linen quilted together, which formed a very effectual defence.

7. The arms of the cavalry differed but little from those of the infantry; their shields were smaller and their lances or javelins thicker, with spikes at each end.

8. In *marshalling* the army for battle, the hastati were placed in front, in close and firm ranks; behind them the principes in looser order, and after them the triarii, so wide apart, that in case of a *repulse* they could receive both the hastati and principes into their ranks.

9. The Roman cavalry was posted on the wings, or two extremities of the army, and fought sometimes on foot, sometimes on horseback, as occasion required.

10. The commander-in-chief commonly took his station in the middle of the army, between the principes and triarii, as the place from whence he could best issue his orders. The legati and tribunes were usually near his person, unless they were appointed to command any particular part of the army, and the centurions stood, each at the head of his century. The primipili or chief centurions had the honour of standing with the tribunes near the general's person.

11. The engagement bgan with the velites, bowmen, and slingers, who skirmished in flying parties without order, and then fell back in the rear. The hastati next advanced, and, if they found themselves overpowered, gradually retiring, they sheltered themselves among the principes, and in conjunction with them renewed the fight. If the principes and hastati together were too weak to sustain the fury of the battle, they all fell back into the wider *intervals* of the triarii, and, with united force, made another effort, much more *impetuous* than before; if this also failed, the day was lost. 12. But this method generally proved successful; for as most other nations drew up their whole army in one front, they must have had strength and resolution sufficient to overcome the Romans in three successive encounters before a battle could be decided in their favour.

12. Besides the regular array already described, the army was sometimes drawn up in the form of a cuneus or wedge, for the purpose of penetrating and breaking the enemy's order of battle. The globus or orb, when the soldiers cast themselves into a round body facing every way, practised usually in cases of extremity, and the forfex or shears, when the ranks resembled that instrument this was adopted to receive the cuneus when that form was had recourse to by the enemy.

14. The military ensign common to the whole legion was an eagle of gold and silver, fixed on a spear, holding a thunderbolt in his talons, as just ready to launch it.

15. Those of the manipuli or companies, were spears with a transverse piece like a cross, on which was a hand, alluding to the word manipulus; beneath was a small round shield, on which was sometimes placed an image of some god, or, in later times, of the emperor.

16. The ensigns of the horse were like our colours, on which were commonly the names of the emperors in golden or purple letters.

17. These ensigns were held in the highest veneration and guarded with the utmost care; hence it was common in a *dubious* engagement, for the commanders to snatch the ensigns out of the bearers' hands and throw them among the enemy, knowing that their men would encounter the extremest danger to recover them.

18. The military music of the Romans was composed entirely of wind instruments, the principal of which were the tuba, the cornua, and the buccina.

19. The tuba exactly resembled our trumpet, the cornua and buccina were shaped like the horns of oxen, which were put to the same use in the ruder ages.

20. In a battle, those belonging to the manipuli took their station by the ensign of their particular company; those common to the whole legion stood near the chief eagle, and on the word being given by the generals they sounded the alarm, which was followed by all the rest.

21. Besides this classicum or alarm, the Roman soldiers gave a general shout on making the attack, and increased the dismal clamour, by clashing their arms with great violence, to intimidate and dishearten the enemy.

22. It was customary also, previous to a battle, for the general to *harangue* his army; for this purpose he had a tribunal erected of green turf, surrounded with the fasces, ensigns, and other military ornaments, and from thence reminded his soldiers of their former achievements, animated them by promises of honours and rewards, and set before them the shame and disgrace attendant on cow-

ardice and neglect of duty: this practice was productive of the most salutary effects, and contributed greatly to the success of the Roman arms.

Questions for Examination.

1. What were the arms of the legionaries?
2. Describe the sword.
3. ..... shield.
4. ..... pilum.
5. ..... helmet.
6. ..... coat of mail.
7. Did the arms of the cavalry differ from those of the infantry?
8. How were the troops arranged for battle?
9. What was the situation of the cavalry?
10. Where were the commander-in-chief, and other principal officers, stationed?
11. Describe the manner of the engagement.
12. Was this frequently the case?
13. Was the method of drawing up the army invariable?
14. What military ensigns were used?
15. What were those of the manipuli?
16. What ensigns were used by the cavalry?
17. Were these ensigns respected by the soldiers?
18. Of what did the military music of the Romans consist?
19. Describe these instruments.
20. Where were the musicians stationed in a battle?
21. Was this the only alarm?
22. By what means was the courage of the soldiers excited?

SECT. III.

Military Affairs—continued.

The Roman Camp—Prætorium—Quæstorium, Legati and Tribunes—Principia—Remaining Divisions—Fortifications—Duties of the Soldiers—Military Punishments—Decimation—Minor Punishments—Military Rewards—Hasta pura—Armillæ—Torques—Phaleræ—Vexillæ—Corona Civica—Corona Muralis—Corona Cas-

trensis—Corona Navalis—Corona Obsidionalis—Corona Triumphalis — Ovation — Triumph — Triumph of Paulus Æmilius, &c.

1. Pavil'ion, *s.* tent of a superior nature.
7. Intrench'ments, *s.* banks of earth thrown out from the ditches.
Vi''gilance, *s.* watchfulness, care.
10. Mu'tiny, *s.* rebellion.
Mi'nor, *a.* lesser.
11. Delin'quent, *s.* a criminal.
Aver'ted, *part.* prevented, turned aside.
15. Re''tinue, *s.* attendants.
20. Wains, *s.* waggons.
22. Mag'nitude, *s.* greatness, large size.
25. Di'adem, *s.* a crown; sometimes it was only a fillet adorned with jewels.

1. THE Roman camp was usually square, in the upper part of which were the general's *pavilion*, and the lodgment of the chief officers; in the lower, the tents of the common soldiers, both horse and foot.

2. The general's tent was called the prætorium, on the right side of which stood the quæstorium, assigned to the quæstor or treasurer of the army; near this was the forum, serving, not only for the sale of commodities, but for the meeting of councils, and giving audience to ambassadors.

3. On the other side of the prætorium, the legati or lieutenant-generals were lodged, and below the prætorium, the tribunes opposite their proper legions.

4. Between the two partitions was a spot of ground about a hundred feet in length, called principia, where stood the altars and statues of the gods.

5. The middle of the lower partition was assigned to the Roman horse, next to them were the triarii, then the principes, next the hastati, afterwards the foreign horse, and lastly the foreign foot.

6. The camp was fortified with a ditch called fossa, and a parapet called vallum.

7. The duties of the soldiers consisted principally in keeping watch and guard, casting up *intrenchments*, and

other laborious services; and so strict was the Roman discipline, that a departure from the necessary *vigilance* was punished with death: to detect this, the watch was visited at uncertain times, either by a party of horse, by the tribunes, and legati, or by the general himself.

8. Besides these employments, they were exercised in walking, running, leaping, vaulting, swimming, and using their weapons.

9. The military punishments were, beating with rods, or bastinading with fustes or clubs; this latter was generally fatal, as the offender was obliged to run between the soldiers, drawn up in two ranks, who had liberty to kill him if they could, so that he was soon despatched.

10. When a whole company or legion had offended by *mutiny*, deserting of their colours, or the like, it was usual to decimate them, that is, to put every tenth man to death without reprieve.

11. The *minor* punishments were, public shame, degradation, giving the *delinquent* barley instead of wheat, taking away his belt, &c. &c.

12. Military rewards were numerous, though not always of intrinsic value; as,

The hasta pura or fine spear, made of wood without any iron upon it; this was a very honourable reward for him who had killed an enemy in a skirmish *.

The armillæ or bracelets, given for some signal service to native Romans only.

The torques, golden and silver collars, wreathed with curious art and beauty.

The phaleræ or rich horse trappings.

The vexillæ, banners of different colours, worked in silk, or some other curious materials.

13. Corona civica, a crown composed of oaken boughs, and given to the soldier who had saved the life of a Roman citizen; it was the most honourable of crowns, and when those who wore it entered any public place, the whole

* Vide History, Chapter xii.

assembly rose up to do them honour; they were permitted likewise to take their place among the senators, however low their station in life might be.

Corona muralis, a crown of gold given to him who in an assault first scaled the walls of the city, and therefore it bore some resemblance to a wall.

Corona castrensis or vallaris, a crown of gold, the reward of him who had first entered the enemy's intrenchments.

Corona navalis or rostrata, a crown of gold set round with figures resembling the beaks of ships, the reward of those who had signalized themselves at sea.

Corona obsidionalis, a crown composed of the grass growing in a besieged place, presented to the general who had relieved it, or raised the siege.

Corona triumphalis, a crown of laurel, worn by those generals who had enjoyed the honour of a triumph. It was in after ages made of gold.

14. Of triumphal processions there were two kinds: one called ovation, from ovis, the sheep usually offered in this solemnity; the other, the triumph, by way of eminence.

15. The lesser triumph or ovation, was decreed to the general who had *averted* a threatened war by negotiation, or acquired any advantages without bloodshed. The procession generally commenced at the Albanian mountain, from whence the general, with his *retinue*, entered the city on foot, marching to the sound of flutes or pipes, and wearing a garland of myrtle, the emblem of peace.

16. The greater triumph, by far the most noble and splendid procession, was reserved for those generals, who, by hard-earned victories and glorious achievements, had added to the territories of the commonwealth, or delivered the state from threatened danger. 17. Plutarch having left us a circumstantial description of the triumph of Paulus Æmil'ius, on putting an end to the Macedonian war, it will serve to give the reader a just idea of that pompous and imposing ceremony.

18. The people erected scaffolds in the forum and

circus, and all other parts of the city where they could best behold the pomp. The spectators were clad in white garments, all the temples were open and full of garlands and perfumes; the ways cleared and cleansed by a great many officers, who drove away such as thronged the passage, or straggled up and down.

19. The triumph lasted three days; on the first, which was scarce long enough for the sight, were to be seen the statues, pictures, and images of an extraordinary size, which were taken from the enemy, drawn upon seven hundred and fifty chariots. 20. On the second was carried in a great many *wains*, the fairest and richest armour of the Macedonians, both of brass and steel, all newly furbished and glittering: which, although piled up with the greatest art and order, yet seemed to be tumbled on heaps carelessly and by chance; helmets were thrown on shields, coats of mail upon greaves; Cretan targets and Thracian bucklers, and quivers of arrows, lay huddled among the horses' bits; and through these appeared the points of naked swords, intermixed with long spears. 21. All these arms were tied together with such a just liberty, that they knocked against one another as they were drawn along, and made a harsh and terrible noise, so that the very spoils of the conquered could not be beheld without dread. 22. After these waggons loaded with armour, there followed three thousand men, who carried the silver that was coined, in seven hundred and fifty vessels, each of which weighed three talents, and was carried by four men. Others brought silver bowls, and goblets, and cups, all disposed in such order as to make the best show, and all valuable, as well for their magnitude as the thickness of their engraved work. 23. On the third day, early in the morning, first came the trumpeters, who did not sound as they were wont in a procession or solemn entry, but such a charge as the Romans use when they encourage their soldiers to fight. Next followed young men,

girt about with girdles curiously wrought, who led to the sacrifice one hundred and twenty stalled oxen, with their horns gilded, and their heads adorned with ribbons and garlands, and with these were boys that carried dishes of silver and gold. 24. After these was brought the gold coin, which was divided into vessels that weighed three talents each, like to those that contained the silver; they were in number fourscore, wanting three. These were followed by those that brought the consecrated bowl which Æmil'ius caused to be made, that weighed ten talents, and was adorned with precious stones. 25. Then were exposed to view the cups of Antig'onus and Seleu'cus, and such as were made after the fashion invented by The'ricles, and all the gold plate that was used at Per'seus's table. Next to these came Per'seus's chariot, in which his armour was placed, and on that his *diadem*. 26. After a little intermission the king's children were led captives, and with them a train of nurses, masters, and governors, who all wept, and stretched forth their hands to the spectators, and taught the little infants to beg and intreat their compassion. 27. There were two sons and a daughter, who, by reason of their tender age, were altogether insensible of the greatness of their misery; which insensibility of their condition rendered it much more deplorable, insomuch that Per'seus himself was scarce regarded as he went along, whilst pity had fixed the eyes of the Romans upon the infants, and many of them could not forbear tears; all beheld the sight with a mixture of sorrow and joy until the children were past. 28. After his children and attendants came Per'seus himself, clad in black, and wearing slippers after the fashion of his country; he looked like one altogether astonished, and deprived of reason, through the greatness of his misfortune. 29. Next followed a great company of his friends and familiars, whose countenances were disfigured with grief, and who testified to all that beheld them, by their tears, and their continual looking

upon Per'seus, that it was his hard fortune they so much lamented, and that they were regardless of their own. 30. After these were carried four hundred crowns of gold, sent from the cities by their respective ambassadors to Æmil'ius, as a reward due to his valour. 31. Then he himself came seated on a chariot magnificently adorned, (a man worthy to be beheld even without these ensigns of power) clad in a garland of purple interwoven with gold, and with a laurel branch in his right hand. 32. All the army in like manner, with boughs of laurel in their hands, and divided into bands and companies, followed the chariot of their commander; some singing odes according to the usual custom, mingled with raillery, others songs of triumph and the praises of Æmil'ius's deeds, who was admired and accounted happy by all men, yet unenvied by every one that was good.

Questions for Examination.

1. What was the form of the Roman camp?
2. What were the pavilions of the officers called, and in what part of the camp were they situated?
3. Who were lodged on the other side of the prætorium?
4. What part of the camp was devoted to religious purposes?
5. How were the soldiers disposed?
6. How was the camp fortified?
7. What were the duties of the soldiers?
8. Had they no other employments?
9. What were the Roman military punishments?
10. How were mutiny and desertion punished?
11. Were there not minor punishments?
12. What were the military rewards?
13. Describe the honorary crowns.
14. How many kinds of triumph were there?
15. Describe the lesser triumph.
16. For whom was the great triumph reserved?
17. Who has left a circumstantial description of it?
18. What were the preparations for the ceremony?
19. How long did it last, and in what way commence?
20. What was next displayed?
21. How were these arms fastened together?

22. What came next in the procession?
23. How did the third day commence?
24. Proceed with the description.
25. What came next?
26. Did not the captives form a part of the procession?
27. What rendered this sight particularly affecting?
28. Who followed the children?
29. By whom was he attended?
30. What farther magnificent trophies were exhibited?
31. Who was the next personage that appeared?
32. By whom was he followed?

SECT. IV.

Military and Naval Affairs continued.

Ceremony of denouncing War—making a League or Alliance—Manner of besieging a Town—Resistance of the Besieged—Turres Mobiles—Testudo—Aries or Ram—Balista, Catapulta, and Scorpio—Origin of the Roman Navy—of the different Rates of their Ships—of the Turritæ and Rostræ.

2. Attī'red, *part.* dressed.
Con'fines, *s.* borders.
Im'precating, *part.* calling down, desiring with heavy curses.
4. Vouchsa'fe, *v.* to grant.
Vi'olent, *v.* to break.
6. Tu'telar, *a.* guardian.
7. Ram'parts, *s.* walls, fortifications.
8. Coun'termined, *part.* dug mines opposed to those of the besiegers.
10. Wicker work, *s.* basket work.
15. For'midable, *a.* to be feared, powerful.
17. Annoy, *v.* to injure.

1. THE ceremonies of denouncing war, entering into an alliance, or concluding a peace, were, among the Romans, attended with many superstitious observances, performed, for the most part, by the fæciales or heralds, who were public officers appointed for that particular purpose.

2. When any cause of complaint, either real or pretended, arose against any neighbouring state, one of these

officers, *attired* in a peculiar habit, repaired to the *confines* of the enemy's country, and there formally declared the intention of his arrival, calling all the gods to witness the justice of his cause, and *imprecating* the divine vengeance, if his assertions were false. 3. This was repeated in the chief city of the enemy, with a demand of satisfaction; if this was obtained, he returned to Rome; if time to deliberate was required, he went away for ten days, and then came again to hear their resolution: this was sometimes repeated three times; but if at the end of thirty days, no satisfaction was obtained, war was declared by throwing a spear into the enemy's country, and by a set form of defiance. 4. In making a league or alliance, the herald took up a stone, and pronounced these words, "If I keep my faith, may the gods *vouchsafe* their assistance and give me success; if, on the contrary, I *violate* it, then may the other party be entirely safe, and preserved in their country, in their possessions, and, in a word, in all their rights and liberties; and may I perish and fall alone, as now this stone does;" and then he let the stone fall out of his hands.

5. The Romans seldom attempted the siege of strong towns, as consuming too much time, but generally preferred the shorter, though more hazardous, method of taking them by storm*. 6. When, however, circumstances rendered it desirable or necessary, they began by inviting the *tutelary* deities of the place, to forsake it and come over to their side, as thinking it a heinous act of impiety to fight against the gods; this was called evocatio deorum tutelarium. 7. They then made use of every means that art could devise, to overcome the resistance of the besieged: they battered the walls with rams and other engines, they dug an entrance under the wall, which was called mining, and built wooden towers from which they

* By a sudden and violent attack.

laid platforms to the top of the *ramparts*, and thus engaged hand to hand with the enemy.

8. Nor were the besieged on their part idle; they *countermined*, and thus frequently met with their enemies and fought battles underground; they put the most stinking combustibles that could be procured into barrels, and having set them on fire, rolled them down among the assailants, that the noisomeness of the stench might oblige them to quit their stations. Their towers, rams, and other engines, they frequently burnt.

9. The turres mobiles were moveable towers, consisting of several stories furnished with engines, ladders, casting bridges, &c. and moving on wheels for the purpose of being brought near the walls.

10. The testudo, the musculus, and the vinea, were engines composed of *wicker* work, with a sloping roof to shelter the soldiers in their approach to the walls; they either went on wheels, or were supported by poles carried with the hands. 11. The testudo was likewise a figure into which the soldiers sometimes cast themselves, the first rank standing upright, the next rank stooping a little, and the others lower and lower, till the last rank kneeled; then covering their heads with their shields, they formed a kind of sloping roof, resembling the shell of a tortoise, from whence its name.

12. The aries, or ram, was a long beam, like the mast of a ship, having an iron head resembling that of a ram; this was hung from a cross beam supported by strong posts, and being equally balanced, was violently driven forward by a great number of men, and thus, by repeated strokes, the firmest wall was beaten down. 13. The balista was an engine for throwing great stones, which it did with a force almost equal to that of cannon in modern times. The catapulta threw a great number of very large spears and darts with astonishing force and velocity, while the scorpion discharged those of a smaller size.

14. Although Rome was conveniently situated for maritime affairs, she wholly neglected them for many ages; and though at length An'cus Mar'tius built Os'tia at the mouth of the Tiber, for a port, yet the Romans possessed no naval force till the first Punic war. 15. Finding, however, from the continual depredations to which the coast of Italy lay exposed, that a fleet was essentially necessary for their security, they set about building a number of ships of war, taking for their model a Carthaginian vessel that had been stranded on their shores *. From this time they became as *formidable* by sea, as they had previously been by land.

16. The ships of war, called naves longæ, were denominated from the number of banks of oars one above another, which they contained; thus a ship with three banks was called a trireme, four banks quadrireme, and five banks a quinquereme; these were the usual rates, but we sometimes read of moneres, biremes, hexeres, hepteres, and octeres.

17. Some of these ships were called turritæ, from their having turrets or towers built on their decks, from whence to *annoy* the enemy; others rostratæ, from the rostra or beaks, with which their prows were furnished for the purpose of sinking the ships of their adversaries.

Questions for Examination.

1. In what manner did the Romans denounce war?
2. Describe the ceremonies observed on declaring war.
3. Was this the whole?
4. How did they form an alliance?
5. Were the Romans expert in sieges?
6. How did they conduct them when obliged to undertake them?
7. What were their next proceedings?
8. How were they opposed?
9. What were the towers?

---

* Vide History, Chapter xiv.

10. What other engines were used?
11. Was not another device called the testudo?
12. Describe the ram.
13. ..... balista, catapulta, and scorpion.
14. Were the Romans formidable at sea?
15. What occasioned their becoming so?
16. How were their ships denominated?
17. Had they not other denominations?

CHAPTER VII.

SECT. I.

Of the Public Games.

Ludi Circenses and Ludi Scenici—Pentathlum—Discus—Cestus—Chariot Races—Bigæ, Quadrigæ, and Ludus Trojæ—Wild Beasts—Bestiarii—Naumachiæ—Gladiators—Retiarii—Secutores—Description of the Combats, &c.

5. San'guinary, *a.* bloody.
6. Ve'hement, *a.* violent.
10. Evolu'tions, *s.* changes of form and place.
11. Celes'tial, *a.* heavenly.
16. Ma'ritime, *a.* belonging to the sea.
18. Im'molating, *part.* slaying for sacrifice.
19. Vi'ed, *v.* contended.
20. Refrac'tory, *a.* troublesome, disobedient.
21. Pu'ny, *a.* small, trifling.
23. Tri'dent, *s.* a spear with three points.
24. Depic'ted, *part.* painted.

1. THE public games of the Romans were divided into the ludi circenses * and ludi scenici †.

2. Of the ludi circenses, the principal were the pentathlum, chariot races, ludus trojæ, combats of wild beasts,

---

* So called from their having originally been exhibited in the circus.

† Theatrical representations.

and of gladiators, and the naumachiæ. The pentathlum, as well as most of the Roman sports, was borrowed from the Grecian games, and consisted of running, wrestling, leaping, throwing, and boxing.

3. As the three first mentioned sufficiently explain themselves, a brief description of the last two will alone be necessary.

4. Throwing was generally performed with a discus, or quoit, of an oval shape, made of stone, iron, or copper, five or six fingers broad, and more than a foot long; this the player threw to a vast distance, by means of a leathern thong fastened round his hand. This game appears to have been of very ancient origin, as it was with a discus, or quoit, that Apollo is said to have accidentally killed his favourite Hyacinth *.

5. The cestus were leathern guards for the hands, composed of thongs, and commonly loaded with iron or lead, to add force and weight to the blow; this kind of combat is most admirably described by Virgil †, and appears to have been attended with very *sanguinary* consequences.

6. The chariot races were in high request among the people of Rome, and occasioned factions as *vehement* as the most interesting political question ever did, some favouring one company of charioteers and some another.

7. These companies, of which there were four, were distinguished by their colours, the green, the red, the white, and the blue; to these Domit'ian added the golden and the purple.

8. The chariots were named bigæ, quadrigæ, &c. from the number of horses yoked to them: these were always arranged abreast, however numerous; and Sueto'nius assures us that, at the Olympic games, Nero made use of a decemjugis, or a chariot drawn by ten horses thus yoked; the same emperor likewise caused camels to run

* Ovid. Metam. lib. 10. † Æn. 5.

in the circus; and Heliogab'alus made use of elephants for the same purpose.

9. In these races the charioteers displayed great skill in keeping at a just distance from the metæ, or marks, and from one another; for if they approached too near, they were in danger of dashing their chariot in pieces, and if they kept at too great a distance, it gave an opportunity for their bolder adversary to fetch a narrow compass, and thus get before them.

10. The ludus trojæ, or Trojan game, is said to have been the invention of Asca'nius, the son of Æne'as; it was celebrated by boys, selected for the most part from noble families, and furnished with horses and arms suited to their age: their captain had the honourable title of Princeps Juventatis, or prince of the youth; and they imitated all the *evolutions* of a regular battle. This sport is beautifully described by Virgil, in his fifth Æneid.

11. The shows of wild beasts were chiefly in honour of Diana, the goddess of hunting, and no cost was spared to render them worthy of her *celestial* patronage; for this purpose the rarest animals were procured from every part of the world, as crocodiles, birds, &c. to gratify curiosity; lions, tigers, leopards, &c. for the combat, and other creatures for the amusement and use of the people, who were allowed to catch as many as they could; of this kind were deer, hares, and the like.

12. When the people were invited to this latter sport, the middle of the circus was set all over with large trees, removed thither at a vast charge for the purpose, so as to make it resemble a forest.

13. The combats between wild beasts were exhibited with great variety: sometimes a tiger being matched with a lion, sometimes a lion with a bull, a bull with an elephant, a rhinoceros with a bear, &c. sometimes a deer was hunted in the arena with dogs, &c ; but the most wonderful sight was, when, by bringing the water into

the amphitheatre, huge sea-monsters were introduced to combat with wild beasts.

14. The men that engaged with wild beasts were called bestiarii; some of whom were condemned persons, others hired, as the gladiators; and sometimes even the nobility and gentry voluntarily engaged in these dangerous encounters.

15. So splendid were these shows become in the latter ages of the republic, and under the emperors, that Pompey is said to have exhibited at once, five hundred lions and eighteen elephants; and Julius Cæsar to have opposed twenty unarmed elephants to five hundred foot, and twenty elephants with turrets on their backs, defended by sixty men each, to five hundred horse and as many foot.

16. The naumachiæ, or naval combats, were instituted when the Romans began to turn their attention towards *maritime* affairs, for the purpose of acquiring naval experience and discipline. 17. The places where these shows were exhibited, are supposed to have resembled the circi in shape, having a sufficient depth of water for the largest vessels to ride in safety. The exhibition was sometimes a bloodless one, but too frequently all the horrors of a real fight were displayed, and the water became distained with the blood shed for the amusement of the Roman people.

18. The combats of gladiators owe their origin to the barbarous custom of *immolating* human victims at the funerals of great men; a custom that was supposed to be pleasing to the manes of the deceased, but from which humanity recoils with horror.

19. The people becoming, by degrees, exceedingly delighted with these sanguinary entertainments, every candidate for an office of importance, and the heir of any rich citizen newly deceased, usually *vied* with each other in gratifying this barbarous propensity; as for the

emperors, it was so much their interest to ingratiate themselves with the commonalty, that they obliged them with these shows almost upon all occasions.

20. The gladiators were usually captives taken in war, or *refractory* slaves sold by their masters to the lanistæ, or persons who trained them for the combat; yet, in the more degenerate ages of the empire, it was not unusual for freemen, and even senators, to engage in this dangerous and disgraceful employment.

21. At first the numbers engaged were small, perhaps not more than two or three pair; but as the appetite for blood grows by feeding, it was not satisfied with so *puny* a gratification: accordingly we are told that Julius Cæsar, in his ædileship, presented three hundred and twenty pair. Titus exhibited a show of gladiators, naumachiæ, and wild beasts, that lasted one hundred days; and Trajan one of a similar kind, for one hundred and twenty-three days, in which he brought out a thousand pair of gladiators; indeed, so numerous were they in the time of Pompey, that Spartacus, one of their number, was enabled to raise an army of seventy thousand men among the gladiators only, and to maintain a war of some years with the whole Roman state.

22. The several kinds of gladiators were denominated from the arms they used. Of these the most remarkable were the retiarii and the secutores.

23. The retiarius * was dressed in a short coat, having a trident, or spear with three points, in his left hand, and a net on his right, with which he endeavoured to entangle his adversary, that with his *trident* he might dispatch him. On his head he wore a hat, tied under his chin with a broad ribbon.

24. The secutor † was armed with a buckler and helmet, on which a fish was *depicted*, in allusion to the net; his weapon was a scimitar, and he was called Secutor,

* From rete, a net. † Follower.

because if the retiarius should fail in casting his net, he attempted by flight to gain time for another throw; this the secutor endeavoured to prevent by following him with all possible speed.

25. On the day appointed for the show, the gladiators were brought out altogether, and obliged to take a circuit round the arena, in a very solemn and pompous manner. After this they were matched as equally as possible, and proceeded to skirmish at first with harmless weapons, till, at the sound of the trumpet, they entered upon more desperate and fatal encounters.

26. When either of the combatants received a serious wound, his adversary, or the people, usually exclaimed, with shouts, *hoc habet*, he has it; and when any one was disabled from continuing the fight, he supplicated the pity of the spectators: if they accorded it, and granted him his life, they expressed their assent by clenching the fingers of both hands between one another, and holding the thumbs upright; but if the spectators considered that he had displayed little skill, courage, and agility, they sealed his doom by bending back their thumbs, when he was instantly stabbed by his adversary.

Questions for Examination.

1. How were the public games of the Romans divided?
2. What were the ludi circenses?
3. Can you describe them?
4. How was throwing performed?
5. What was the cestus?
6. Were the chariot races admired by the Romans?
7. How were these companies distinguished?
8. How were the chariots denominated?
9. Was much skill requisite in these races?
10. What was the lujus trojæ?
11. Describe the shows of wild beasts?
12. How was this latter sport prepared?
13. In what way were the combats of wild beasts exhibited?
14. Who were the men that engaged with them?

15. Was much magnificence displayed in these shows?
16. When were the naumachiæ instituted?
17. Where and in what manner were they exhibited?
18. What was the origin of the combats of gladiators?
19. How did they become the amusement of the Romans?
20. Who were the the gladiators?
21. Were many engaged at once?
22. How were they denominated?
23. Describe the retiarius.
24. ..... secutor.
25. How did these sports commence?
26. Proceed with a description of these games.

SECT. II.

Of the Public Games—continued.

Of Tragedy and Comedy—First rude Attempts—Livius Andronicus—Cothurnus—Sock—Persona—Chorus—Ludi Megalenses—Ludi Cerealis—Ludi Florales—Ludi Martiales—Ludi Apollinares—Ludi Capitolini—Ludi Romani—Ludi Consuales—Ludi Sæculares, &c.

2. Cen'turies, *s.* periods of one hundred years.
   Extem'pore, *ad.* without being previously studied.
3. Legit'imate, *a.* regular, (lawful).
   Subor'dinate, *a.* inferior, in a lower rank.
4. Appen'dages, *s.* things attached to another.
6. Effem'inate, *a.* womanish, not manly.
17. Miner'va, *s.* the daughter of Jupiter, and goddess of war and wisdom.
19. Plu'to, *s.* brother of Jupiter, and god of hell.
   Pros'erpine, *s.* daughter of Jupiter and Ceres, and wife of Pluto.
   Ju'no, *s.* sister and wife of Jupiter, and queen of gods and men.
   Apol'lo, *s.* son of Jupiter and Latona, and god of music, medicine, and poetry.
   Dian'a, *s.* sister of Apollo, and goddess of hunting.
   Ce'res, *s.* goddess of agriculture, or the cultivation of the earth.

Par'cæ, *s.* the Fates; their names were Clotho, Lachesis, and Atropos, and they determined whatever was to happen.
Lato'na, *s.* the mother of Apollo and Diana.

1. THE ludi scenici, or stage plays, are most properly divided into tragedy and comedy, all other kinds being merely varieties of one or the other of these species.

2. For some *centuries* after the building of the city, the Romans were unacquainted with scenic representations, and when at length they attempted something of the kind, it was merely a rude sort of satirical dialogue, framed *extempore* by the actors, in which, with no very delicate or gentle hand, they lashed the vices of the age. This by degrees became more refined, and adorned with music and dancing.

3. About the year of Rome five hundred and fourteen, Liv'ius Andron'icus, a Greek by birth, introduced the *legitimate* tragedy and comedy; and from that time the Romans abandoned their old diversions of satires, or at least rendered them *subordinate* to this more noble species of amusement.

4. The Roman tragedy and comedy were wholly borrowed from the Greeks: and though in many respects they resembled ours, yet they had some *appendages* which have long ceased to be in use; to these, the principal were the buskin, the sock, the mask, and the chorus.

5. The cothur'nus, or buskin, peculiar to tragedy, was a high sort of boot, which made the actors appear above the ordinary height of mortals, and by rendering them incapable of moving otherwise than slowly, gave them that grave and stately air, which subjects of that nature required.

6. The soci, were a kind of light covering for the feet, which, from their *effeminate* appearance, suited the characters usually represented in comedy. 7. That it was

accounted scandalous for men to wear them, appears from the severe censures bestowed by Sen'eca on Calig'ula, for sitting in judgment with a rich pair of socks on his feet.

8. From the vast size of the Roman theatres, the spectators could not distinctly perceive the gestures of the actors, nor hear their words. The persona, or mask, therefore, was invented to remedy these defects, by representing the features on a larger scale, and by rendering the voice clearer and fuller; for this latter reason, the word persona is supposed to be derived from *persono*, to sound through. Unlike the modern mask, they covered the heads, and had hair fastened to them.

9. The chorus was usually a company of actors, which remained on the stage during the performances, and conversed on the subject in the intervals of the acts. This is wholly dropped in the modern drama, and its place supplied by music.

10. The sacred games were instituted in honour of several deities, and were as follows:

11. The Lu'di Megalen'ses, were instituted in honour of the mother of the gods, and lasted six days from the day before the nones of April, to the ides. No servant was allowed to bear a part in the celebration.

12. The Lu'di Cerea'les, in honour of Ceres, were held from the day before the ides of April for eight days. In these games the matrons represented the grief of Ce'res for the loss of her daughter Proserpine, and her travels in search of her. The games of the circus, and splendid processions, formed part of the ceremony.

13. Lu'di Flora'les, sacred to Flo'ra, and celebrated every spring, to beg a blessing on the grass, trees, and flowers, were distinguished by the most indecent ceremonies, women running up and down naked, sometimes dancing, sometimes fighting, or acting the mimic.

14. Lu'di Mar'tiales, in honour of Mars, were held

twice a year, on the fourth of the ides of May, and on the calends of August. The sports of the circus alone distinguished this festival.

15. Lu'di Apollina'res, in honour of Apollo, were held on no particular day, but when the prætor thought fit. On this festival, the people sat in the circus crowned with laurel, the gates were set open, and the day kept sacred with all manner of ceremonies.

16. Lu'di Capitoli'ni, in honour of Jupiter Capitolinus, on account of his temple having been preserved from the Gauls.

17. Lu'di Ro'mani, were games instituted at the first building of the circus, by Tarquinius Priscus, in honour of Ju'piter, Ju'no, and *Miner'va*.

18. Lu'di Consua'les, were the games instituted by Romulus for the surprise of the Sabine virgins. They were celebrated yearly, on the twelfth of the calends of September, consisting principally of horse-races, and encounters in the circus.

19. Lu'di Sæcula'res, the most remarkable games among the Romans, were celebrated once in one hundred years, to the honour of *Plu'to*, *Pro'serpine*, *Ju'no*, *Apol'lo*, *Dia'na*, *Ce'res*, and the *Par'ce*, or three sisters. The manner of the solemnity was as follows:

20. In the first place, the heralds received orders to make an invitation of the whole world to come to a feast which they had never as yet seen, and should never see again. 21. Some few days before the beginning of the games, the quindecemviri, taking their seats in the capitol, and in the Palatine temple, distributed among the people purifying compositions, as flambeaux and sulphur. From hence the people passed to Diana's temple on the Aventine mountain, carrying wheat, barley and beans, as an offering; and after this they spent whole nights in devotion to the destinies.

22. At length, when the time of the games was ac-

tually come, which continued three days and three nights, the people assembled in the Cam'pus Mar'tius, and sacrificed to Ju'piter, Ju'no, Apol'lo, Lato'na, Dia'na, the Par'cæ, Ce'res, Plu'to, and Pros'erpine. 23. On the first night of the feast, the emperor, accompanied by the quindecemviri, commanded three altars to be raised on the banks of the Tiber, which they sprinkled with the blood of three lambs, and then proceeded to burn the offerings and the victim. After this they marked out a space, which served for a theatre, illuminating it with an innumerable multitude of flambeaux and fires: here they sung certain hymns composed on this occasion, and celebrated all kinds of sports. 24. On the day after, when they had been at the capitol to offer the victims, they returned to the Campus Martius, and held sports to the honour of Apol'lo and Dia'na; these lasted till the next day, when the noble matrons, at the hour appointed by the oracle, went to the capitol to sing hymns to Jupiter. 25. On the third day, which concluded the feast twenty-seven boys, and as many girls, sung in the temple of Pal'atine Apollo, hymns and verses in Greek and Latin, to recommend the city to the protection of those deities whom they designed particularly to honour by these sacrifices. 26. The famous Car'men Secula're of Ho'race was composed for this last day, in the secular games held by Augus'tus.

Lu'di Fune'bres, were combats of gladiators at the funerals of great men, as has already been mentioned.

Questions for Examination.

1. What were the ludi scenici?
2. What were the early dramas of the Romans?
3. Who introduced legitimate tragedy and comedy?
4. Were these dramas similar to ours?
5. What was the cothurnus?
6. ..... sock?
7. Were they in general use?
8. Why was the mask used?
9. What was the chorus?

10. What were the sacred games?
11. ..... Ludi Megalenses?
12. ..... Cereales?
13. ..... Florales?
14. ..... Martiales?
15. ..... Apollinares?
16. ..... Capitolini?
17. ..... Romani?
18. ..... Consuales?
19. ..... Sæculares?
20. How were the games introduced?
21. What was the next process?
22. How did the games commence?
23. What ceremonies were used?
24. What passed on the next day?
25. ..... third day?

CHAPTER VIII.

Of the Roman Habit, Marriages, and Funerals.

The Toga—Toga Prætexta—Toga Virilis—Toga Palla—Toga Sordida—Toga Picta, &c.—the Tunica—Stola and Pallia—Perones—Calcei Lunati—Mullei—Soleæ—Marriages—Fortunate and Unfortunate Days—Description of the Ceremony—Funerals—Last Kiss—other Practices—Order of the Procession—Funeral Oration—Last Rites—Funeral of the Emperors.

11. Auspi"cious, *a.* favourable.
Rites, *s.* religious forms, ceremonies.
12. O'mens, *s.* signs of good or bad fortune.
13. Dis'taff, *s.* a machine for spinning flax.
16. Inter'red, *part.* buried.
17. Transfu'sed, *part.* passed.

1. THE most celebrated parts of the Roman dress were the toga and the tunica.

2. The toga, or gown, appears to have been of a circular form, without sleeves, differing in size according to the fancy or ability of the wearer. Its colour is sup-

posed to have been the natural whiteness of the wool, to distinguish it from the toga candida, the whiteness of which was increased by artificial means. This gown was disposed in graceful folds, and gave the wearer a majestic appearance.

3. The toga prætexta was edged with purple, and considered as an honourable distinction, at first appropriated to magistrates, but afterwards bestowed on others for some eminent service. Even boys, who were the sons of noblemen, were permitted to wear it.

4. The toga virilis, or manly gown, was assumed by young men at the age of seventeen.

5. The toga palla was a mourning gown, of black cloth; and the toga sordida, a gown become dirty by long use, worn by prisoners at their trial.

6. The toga picta, purpurea, palmata, the consular trabea, the paludamentum, and the chlamys, differed very little except in their ornaments; they were the robes of state, worn by kings, consuls, emperors, and all generals during their triumph.

7. The tunica, or close coat, was the common garment worn by itself within doors, and abroad under the gown. The lower orders of people, however, who could not afford to wear the toga, appeared in public with their tunics only. This garment was at first made short, and without sleeves, but by degrees it was lengthened till it reached the ancles, and had sleeves to the wrist.

8. The dress of the females consisted of the stola, or ordinary vest, reaching to the ancles, over which, when they went abroad, they threw the palla, or pallium, a long open gown, which entirely covered them. They dressed their heads with vittæ and fasciæ, ribbons and fillets.

9. The ancient Romans wore no covering on their head, to defend them from the rain and cold, but merely threw over them the lappet of their gown.

10. There were several sorts of coverings for the feet, the principal were the perones, rudely formed of raw

hides, and reaching to the middle of the leg; used only by the common people. Calcei lunati, worn by Patricians only, and distinguished by a crescent, or half-moon of ivory, worn on them as an ornament. Mullei, were red sandals, covering only the sole of the foot, and bound with red straps as high as the mid-leg. Soleæ, were sandals covering only the soles of the foot, and fastened with straps and buckles; they were peculiar to the women.

11. The ceremonies practised at Roman marriages may be thus briefly described:—Great care was taken to choose an *auspicious* moment for the celebration of these *rites;* and the most happy season in all respects, was that which followed the ides of June. The calends, nones, and ides of every month, and the whole of May, were considered as very unfortunate.

12. The ceremony began with the taking of *omens* by the aruspices. In dressing the bride they always divided her hair with the head of a spear; then crowning her with a chaplet of flowers, they put on her a veil or flammeum, provided for the occasion. Her tunic was bound with a girdle, which the bridegroom was to unloose.

13. Thus habited, she was led in the evening to the bridegroom's house, by three boys wearing the prætexta, whose parents were living. She was lighted by five torches, and a *distaff* and spindle were carried before her.

14. On her arrival, she bound woollen fillets round the door-posts (which were adorned with flowers for the occasion,) and washed them over with melted tallow, as a preservative against infection and sorcery. This being done, she was lifted over the threshold, and on her entrance had the keys of the house delivered to her, while the bridegroom presented her with two vessels, one with fire, the other with water, emblematic of the duties required in the marriage life. The ceremony was concluded with a splendid feast, during which the bridegroom scat-

tered nuts about the room for the boys to scramble, intimating thereby, that he now relinquished all childish diversions.

16. The funerals of the Romans were frequently celebrated with considerable pomp, whether the body was to be *interred* or burnt; but as the latter was the most prevailing practice, we shall confine ourselves to that, in the following description :—

17. When a person was given over by the physicians, and the soul, as it were, just about to take flight, the friends and nearest relations used to kiss and embrace him, as though they expected that his spirit would by this means be *transfused* into their bodies. 18. As soon as he expired they took off his rings, and closed his eyes; the body was then washed, anointed, and wrapped in its most valuable garment; and, if the deceased had, by his valour, obtained any honourable crowns, they were placed on his head. The corpse was then laid out by the nearest relation, at the entrance of the house, with its feet towards the gate. At intervals, exclamations of grief were uttered by persons stationed there for the purpose. Branches of cypress likewise were placed in front of the house, to notify the mournful event.

19. On the day of the funeral, the procession was led by musicians playing on trumpets and flutes; after these came the mourning women, singing the funeral song, filled with the praises of the deceased; next came the mimic and players, who danced after the satiric manner. These were followed by persons bearing couches, on which were laid the images of the deceased's ancestors, and statues of other great men *; then came the lictors, with their fasces reversed, and next the body, borne by the nearest relations. This was followed by a long train of mourners,

* Not less than six hundred funeral couches were carried before the corpse of Marcel'lus, and a thousand before that of Syl'la.

who beat their breasts, tore their hair, and shewed every appearance of extravagant grief.

20. On the arrival of the procession at the appointed place, an oration was pronounced in praise of the deceased; the body was then placed on the funeral pile, lying on its couch, and fire was applied by the next of kin. Beasts were then slaughtered and cast on the pile, as were likewise rich garments and perfumes. When the whole was burnt, the embers were extinguished by sprinkling them with wine, and the remaining bones carefully collected and placed in an urn provided for the purpose. This was afterwards entombed in its sepulchre, when the company, being sprinkled with holy water, retired.

21. The funerals of the emperors were celebrated with still greater splendour, and from the top of the pile an eagle being let loose, was supposed to carry the prince's soul to heaven.

Questions for Examination.

1. Describe the Roman dress.
2. What was the toga?
3. ..... toga prætexta?
4. ..... toga virilis?
5. ..... toga pulla?
6. ..... toga picta, &c.?
7. ..... tunica?
8. What was the dress of the females?
9. What was the covering for the head?
10. ..... the feet?
11. What ceremonies were used at marriages?
12. How did the ceremony begin?
13. What followed?
14. What happened on her arrival?
15. How did the ceremony conclude?
16. How were the Roman funerals conducted?
17. How were dying persons treated?
18. In what manner was the corpse prepared for the last duties?
19. Describe the funeral procession?
20. ..... last ceremonies?
21. How were the funerals of the emperors celebrated?

CHAPTER IX.

Of the Roman Meals, Names, and Money.

2. Semicir'cular, *a.* in the shape of a half circle.
3. Sump'tuous, *a.* splendid, rich.
7. Ini"tials, *s.* first letters.
13. Obscu're, *a.* dark, difficult to be understood.

1. THE Romans usually made but one set meal, which was about the ninth hour, or three o'clock P. M *. Before this they took merely a little bread, a few raisins, or nuts, or a little honey.

2. Their eating room was called triclinium, from the number of couches it usually contained; or stibadium, after the custom was introduced of using only one large *semicircular* couch, with a table of the same shape.

3. The couches on which they reclined were frequently very *sumptuous*, as we may suppose, when we are informed that the whole of the wealth found in Carthage, when it was taken by the Romans, was not more than was frequently expended for the furniture of one table.

4. On the arrival of the guests, they first bathed with the master of the house, and then changed their usual dress for a light kind of frock; at the same time putting off their soleæ, or shoes, that they might not soil the fine carpets and furniture of the beds. 5. Then taking their places, the first man lay at the head of the bed, reclining on his left elbow, his back being supported by a pillow, or bolster; the next lay with his head towards the feet of the first, from which he was defended by his pillow, or bolster: and the rest after the same manner. When thus arranged, they were presented with garlands and perfumes. The most honourable place was the middle part of the middle bed.

* Post meridiem, or afternoon.

6. The several courses were generally brought in, arranged on tables, and not by single dishes, and the guests were diverted during the entertainment with music and dancing. Julius Cæ'sar is said to have provided twenty-two thousand triclin'ia, at a feast made by him for the people.

7. The names most commonly in use among the Romans, with their *initials*, were the following:—A. Au'lus, C. Cai'us, D. De'cius, C. Ca'eso *, L. Lu'cius, M. Manlius and Mar'cus, N. Nume'rius, P. Pub'lius, Q. Quinta'tus, T. Ti'tus, AP. Ap'pius, CN. Cnei'us, SP. Spu'rius, TI. Tibe'rius, MAM. Mam'ercus, SER. Ser'vius, SEX. Sex'tius. 8. To these were usually added the family name, and sometimes a third, arising from a particular occurrence, as Par'thicus, Africa'nus, &c.

9. Adopted persons assumed the three names of him into whose family they were admitted, but retained their own in addition †.

10. The money of the Romans was, at first, of brass alone; but about the year of the city 484, silver began to be coined, and gold about sixty years after.

11. The as, which was of brass, originally weighed one pound, but it was reduced by degrees to half an ounce, and thus continued; it had on one side the image of Janus, and on the other the beak of a ship; its value was about three farthings of our money. The semissis was half an as, the triens one third, the quadrans one fourth; these had on them the impression of a boat.

12. A denarius was of the value of 10 ases, and a centussis of 100 ases, 10 denarii, or 6*s*. 3*d*. of our money.

---

* Anciently the *c* was pronounced hard like *k*.

† When a person intended to adopt another into his family, he presented his reason for so doing to the pontifices; if these were approved, the consul, or some other principal magistrate, brought in a bill at the comitia, to render the adoption valid. A sum of money was then paid to the parents of the young man, as the price of their son.

13. Of silver money, the old denarius was of the value of 10 ases, or $8\frac{3}{4}d.$ but the new denarius, uttered about the time of Claudius, was worth only $7\frac{1}{2}d.$; the victoria'tus, so called from the image of Victory stamped on it, was $3\frac{3}{4}d.$ or half a dena'rius; the sester'tius was half the victoria'tus, or $1\frac{3}{4}$ $\frac{1}{2}d.$ The o'bolus $\frac{1}{8}$ of the dena'rius, and the libel'la $\frac{1}{16}$. The sem'bella, a corruption of semilibel'la, was half this; and the terun'cius half the sembel'la, or $\frac{1}{480}$ of a dena'rius.

14. Of gold coins, the old aure'us dena'rius was worth $17s.$ $1\frac{3}{4}d.$; the new, $15s.$ only.

15. The sums principally in use among the Romans, were the sester'tium, the libra, and the talent; the sestertium contained a thousand sestertii, or $7l.$ $16s.$ $3d.$ The libra was worth about $3l.$ and the talent $187l.$ $10s.$

Thus have we endeavoured, in a plain and brief manner, to render the customs, manners, religion, &c. of the Roman people familiar to the reader, by which means much light will be thrown on their history, and many *obscure* passages in their poets, orators, and other writers, rendered easy to every capacity.

Questions for Examination.

1. At what times did the Romans take their meals?
2. What was the name of their eating room?
3. Was the furniture rich?
4. How were the guests received?
5. In what way were they placed at table?
6. How were the courses served?
7. What were the most usual Roman names?
8. Had they no additional names?
9. What names did adopted persons assume?
10. What was the Roman money?
11. Describe the several brass coins?
12. Were there not some of greater value?
13. What was the silver money of the Romans?
14. Describe their gold coins?
15. What sums were principally in use?

Map of the Roman Empire

OCEANUS ATLANTICUS
OCEANUS GERMANICUS
OCEANUS AQUITANICUS
MARE MEDITERRANEUM
MARE INFERUM
MARE ADRIATICUM
MARE IONIUM
MARE CASPIUM
PONTUS EUXINUS
PALUS MÆOTIS
SINUS CODANUS
SINUS VENEDICUS
SINUS CODANUS
SINUS ARABICUS
MARE ERYTHRÆUM

HIBERNIA
CALEDONIA
BRITANNIA
GERMANIA
GALLIA
HISPANIA
ITALIA
SARMATIA EUROPÆA
SARMATIA ASIATICA
SCYTHIA
DACIA
PANNONIA
MOESIA
THRACIA
MACEDONIA
GRÆCIA
ASIA
BITHYNIA
PONTUS
ARMENIA MINOR
ARMENIA MAJOR
MESOPOTAMIA
SYRIA
ARABIA
ÆGYPTUS
LIBYA
AFRICA
MAURETANIA TINGITANA
MAURETANIA CÆSARIENSIS
NUMIDIA
GÆTULIA
REGIO TRIPOLITANA
REGIO CYRENAICA
REGIO MARMARICA
BALEARES INSULÆ
CORSICA
SARDINIA
SICILIA
CRETA
CYPRUS

Longit. ab Fortun. 35 Ins. versus Orientem.

THE

ROMAN HISTORY.

CHAPTER I.

Of the Origin of the Romans.

1. Æne'as, *s.* a Trojan prince.
   Ve'nus, *s.* the goddess of love and beauty, who is said, in Pagan fable, to have come down from heaven to enjoy the company of Anchi'ses.
   Anchi'ses, *s.* (pronounced *An-ki-ses*) the son of Ca'pys, by The'mis, daughter of I'lus, king of Troy.
2. Ru'tuli, *s.* a people of Italy.
   Mezen'tius, *s.* king of the Tyrrhe'nians in Italy.
4. Usurpa'tion, *s.* the act of wrongfully taking what belongs to another.
   Ves'tal, *s.* a virgin priestess of Ves'ta, the goddess of fire.
   Poster'ity, *s.* succeeding generations.
5. Mars, *s.* the god of war among the ancients.
   Sacerdo'tal, *a.* belonging to priesthood, priestly.
   Func'tions, *s.* acts of an office, employment.
12. Divul'ged, *part.* made known.
   Depo'sed, *part.* deprived of an office.
13. O'men, *s.* any sign or token by which a future event may be foretold.
   Tu'telar, *a.* having the guardianship and protection of any person or thing.

1. THE Romans were particularly desirous of being thought descendants from the Gods; as if to hide the meanness of their real ancestry. *Æne'as*, the son of *Ve'nus* and *Anchi'ses*, having escaped from the destruc-

tion of Troy*, after many adventures and dangers, arrived in Italy †—A. M. 2294—where he was kindly received by Lati'nus, king of the Latins, who promised him his daughter Lavin'ia in marriage. 2. Tur'nus, king of the *Ru'tuli*, was the first who opposed Æne'as, he having long made pretensions to her himself. A war ensued in which the Trojan hero was victorious, and Tur'nus slain. In consequence of this, Lavin'ia became the wife of Æne'as, who built a city to her honour, and called it Lavin'ium. Some time after, engaging in a war against *Mezen'tius*, one of the petty kings of the country, he was vanquished in turn and died in battle, after a reign of four years. 3. Asca'nius, his son, succeeded to the kingdom; and to him Sil'vius ‡, second son, whom he had by Lavin'ia. It would be tedious and uninteresting to recite a dry catalogue of the kings that followed, of whom we know little more than the names §; it will be sufficient to say, that the succession continued for nearly four hundred years in the same family; and that Nu'mi-

---

* This famous city has had the names of Darda'nia, Il'ios, Il'ion, Il'ium, Tro'ja, Per'gama, Teu'cria, and Teu'crium. It is said to have obtained its different names from the several kings who governed it. This place has been greatly celebrated by the poets. It was situated in Phry''gia, in Asia Mi'nor, on the sea-coast, somewhat north of the present Smyr'na.

† The ancient names of Italy were, Satur'nia, Œno'tria, Hespe'ria, and Auso'nia. This beautiful country, which has been emphatically called the garden of Europe, is about nine hundred miles long, from the foot of the Alps to Cape Leucopetra, now Capo del Armi; in breadth, it varies from five hundred and sixty, to about twenty-five.

‡ So called because born in a wood, whither his mother Lavin'ia had fled for fear of Asca'nius.

§ These kings were, Asca'nius, who reigned 8 years; Syl'vius Posthu'mus 29 years; Æne'as Syl'vius 31 years; Lati'nus Syl'vius 51 years; Alba 39 years; Cape'tus, or, as Livy styles him, A'tys 26; Capis 28; Cape'tus II. 13; Tiberi'nus 8 (this prince was driven into the river Albu'la, in an engagement on its banks, and drowned, and from that time the river has borne the name of Tiber;) Agrippa 41; Alla'dius, or Rem'ulus, 19; Aventi'nus, whose name has been transferred to the hill where he was interred, 37; Procas 23; Nu'mitor and Amu'lius.

tor, the fifteenth from Æne'as, was the last king of Alba *.

Nu'mitor, who took possession of the kingdom in consequence of his father's will, had a brother named Amu'lius, to whom were left the treasures which had been brought from Troy. 4. As riches too generally prevail against right, Amu'lius made use of his wealth to supplant his brother, and soon found means to possess himself of the kingdom. Not contented with the crime of *usurpation*, he added that of murder also. Nu'mitor's sons first fell a sacrifice to his suspicions; and to remove all apprehensions of being one day disturbed in his ill-got power, he caused Rhe'a Sil'via, his brother's only daughter, to become a *vestal* †; which office obliging her to perpetual virginity, made him less uneasy as to the claims of *posterity*.

5. His precautions, however, were all frustrated in the event. Rhe'a Sil'via was called to the performance of some religious service in the temple of *Mars*, near the town. A spring of water glided through the sacred wood, in which the temple was enclosed, and the priestess, in order to discharge one of her *sacerdotal functions*, went thither to take the necessary water for her sacrifice; where a man, disguised in a military habit, like that in which Mars was commonly represented, surprised and forced the vestal. Others are of opinion that she met a young lover there by appointment. 6. When Rhe'a Sil'via, however, could no longer conceal her shame, she charged the God Mars with being the cause of it. The circumstances of the temple, the sacred wood,

* Alba was founded by Asca'nius, who removed the seat of government from Lavin'ium thither.

† The vestals were ladies of noble families dedicated to the service of the goddess Vesta, and devoted to perpetual virginity. Their office was to attend and keep up the sacred fire in her temple, lest by any accident it should be extinguished; such an occurrence being supposed to forebode great calamities to the state. For a breach of their vow of chastity, they were buried alive.

and the presence of that God, who was believed to make his residence in the sanctuary consecrated to him, gave a less odious colour to the affair, whether it was her crime or her misfortune. Whoever this lover of her's might have been; whether some person who deceived her by assuming so great a name; or Amu'lius himself, whom some suspected of this violence to his niece, certain it is, that in due time she was brought to bed of two boys, who were no sooner born than devoted by the usurper to destruction. 7. The mother was condemned to be buried alive, the usual punishment for vestals who had violated their chastity, and the twins were ordered to be flung into the river Tiber. 8. It happened, however, at the time this rigorous sentence was put into execution, that the river had, more than usual, overflowed its banks, so that the place where the children were thrown, being distant from the main current, the water was too shallow to drown them. It is said by some, that they were exposed in a cradle, which, after floating for a time, was, by the waters retiring, left on dry ground; that a wolf, descending from the mountains to drink, ran, at the cry of the children, and gave them suck under a fig-tree, caressing and licking them as if they had been her own young, the infants hanging on her dugs as if she had been their mother, until Fau'stulus, the king's shepherd, struck with so surprising a sight, conveyed them home, and delivered them to his wife Ac'ca Lauren'tia, to nurse, who brought them up as her own. 9. Others, however, assert, that from the vicious life of this woman, the shepherds had given her the nick-name of Lupa *, or wolf, which they suppose might possibly be the occasion of this marvellous story.

10. Rom'ulus and Re'mus, the twins, in whatever manner preserved, seemed early to discover abilities and desires above the meanness of their supposed origin. From

* Lu'pa literally signifies a harlot as well as a she-wolf.

their very infancy, an air of superiority and grandeur seemed to discover their rank. They led, however, the shepherd's life like the rest; worked for their livelihood, and built their own huts. But pastoral idleness displeased them, and, from tending their flocks, they betook themselves to the chase. Then, no longer content with hunting wild beasts, they turned their strength against the robbers of their country, whom they often stript of their plunder, and divided it among the shepherds. 11. The youths who continually joined them, so increased in number, as to enable them to hold assemblies, and celebrate games. In one of their excursions, the two brothers were surprised. Re'mus was taken prisoner, carried before the king, and accused of being a plunderer and robber on Nu'mitor's lands. Rom'ulus had escaped; but Re'mus, the king sent to Nu'mitor, that he might do himself justice.

12. From many circumstances, Fau'stulus suspected the twins under his care, to be the same that Amu'lius had exposed on the Ti'ber, and at length *divulged* his suspicions to Rom'ulus. Nu'mitor made the same discovery to Re'mus. From that time nothing was thought of but the tyrant's destruction. He was beset on all sides; and, during the amazement and distraction that ensued, was taken and slain; while Nu'mitor, who had been *deposed* for forty years, recognized his grandsons, and was once more placed on the throne *.

13. The two brothers, leaving Nu'mitor the kingdom of Alba, determined to build a city upon the spot where they had been exposed and preserved. But a fatal desire of reigning seized them both, and created a differ-

* The troops, if they deserve the name, with which Romulus invested the palace, and at length slew the king, were merely a tumultuary rabble from the country, whose ensigns were bundles of hay suspended from long poles; these were called *manipuli*, and hence came the name of *manipulares*, afterwards given to the troops.

rence between these noble youths, which terminated tragically. Birth-right in the case of twins could claim no precedence; they therefore were advised by the king to take an *omen* from the flight of birds, to know to which of them the *tutelar* gods would decree the honour of governing the rising city, and consequently, of being the director of the other. 14. In compliance with this advice each took his station, on a different hill. To Re'mus appeared six vultures; in the moment after, Rom'ulus saw twelve. Two parties had been formed for this purpose, the one declared for Re'mus, who first saw the vultures; the other for Rom'ulus, who saw the greater number. Each party called itself victorious; the one having the first omen, the other that which was most complete. This produced a contest, which ended in a battle, wherein Re'mus was slain. It is even said, that he was killed by his brother, who being provoked at his leaping contemptuously over the city wall struck him dead upon the spot*.

15. Rom'ulus being now sole commander, and eighteen years of age, began the foundation of a city that was one day to give laws to the world. It was called Rome, after the name of the founder, and built upon the Pal'atine hill, on which he had taken his successful omen—[A. M. 3252, ANTE C. 752.] The city was at first nearly square, containing about a thousand houses. It was almost a mile in circumference, and commanded a small territory round it of eight miles over †. 16. However, small as it appears, it was yet worse inhabited; and the first method made use of to increase its numbers, was the opening of a sanctuary for all malefactors and slaves, and such as were desirous of novelty; these came in great multitudes, and contributed to increase the number of our legislator's new subjects.

* Some writers say that Remus did not fall in this contest, but was killed subsequently by Romulus, for having, in derision, leapt over the walls of the new city.

† In making out the boundaries of the city, Romulus made use of a plough; and as this plough was lifted out of the ground at every place where a gate was intended to be set up, a city gate was called *porta*, from *portare* to carry.

Questions for the Examination of the Pupil,

On the most essential parts of the foregoing Chapter, to be answered by him in writing.

1. What was the origin of the Romans?
2. Who first opposed Æneas, and what was the result?
3. Who were the successors of Æneas?
4. What was the conduct of Amulius?
5. Did these precautions prove successful?
6. What followed?
7. What was the sentence on Rhea Silvia and her children?
8. How were the children preserved?
9. What is supposed to have occasioned this marvellous story?
10. What was the character and conduct of Romulus and Remus?
11. In what manner were they surprised?
12. How was the birth of Romulus and Remus discovered, and what consequences followed?
13. What caused a difference between the brothers?
14. Relate the circumstances which followed?
15. By whom was Rome built, and what was then its situation?
16. By what means was the new city peopled?

CHAPTER II.

From the Building of Rome, to the Death of Romulus.

1. Constitu'tion, *s.* form of government.
   Lic'tors, *s.* Roman officers employed in apprehending criminals.
2. Sen'ate, *s.* an assembly of men met together to enact laws, and to debate on matters which respect the state.
3. Patri''cians, *s.* the nobility; men of honourable birth.
   Le''gislature, *s.* the power that makes laws.
   Suf'frages, *s.* votes or voices given to determine a controversy or matter in dispute.
4. Plebe'ians, *s.* the common people.
5. Sooth'sayers, *s.* those who pretend to foretel future events.

6. Repu'diate, *v.* to divorce, to put away.
Nep'tune, *s.* (in heathen mythology) the god of the sea.
Glad'iator, *s.* a person trained to fight in the public games at Rome.

1. SCARCELY was the city raised above its foundation, when its rude inhabitants began to think of giving some form to their *constitution*. Rom'ulus, by an act of great generosity, left them at liberty to choose whom they would for their king; and they, in gratitude, concurred to elect him for their founder. He accordingly was acknowledged as chief of their religion, sovereign magistrate of Rome, and general of the army. Beside a guard to attend his person, it was agreed, that he should be preceded wherever he went, by twelve *lictors*, each armed with an axe tied up in a bundle of rods; these were to serve as executioners of the law, and to impress his new subjects with an idea of his authority *.

2. The *sen'ate*, who were to act as counsellors to the king, was composed of a hundred of the principal citizens of Rome, consisting of men whose age, wisdom, or valour, gave them a natural authority over their fellow-subjects. The king named the first senator, who was called prince of the senate, and appointed him to the government of the city, whenever war required his own absence.

3. The *Patri"cians*, who composed the third part of the *legislature*, assumed to themselves the power of authorizing those laws which were passed by the king, or the senate. All things relative to peace or war, to the election of magistrates, and even to the choosing a king, were confirmed by *suffrages* in their assemblies.

4. The *Plebe'ians* were to till the fields, feed cattle, and follow trades; but not to have any share in the government, to avoid the inconveniences of a popular power †.

* This symbol of sovereignty was borrowed from his neighbours the Hetrurians.

† The Patri"cians and Plebe'ians were farther distinguished—

5. The first care of the new-created king was, to attend to the interests of religion. The precise form of their worship is unknown; but the greatest part of the religion of that age consisted in a firm reliance upon the credit of their *soothsayers*, who pretended, from observations on the flight of birds, and the entrails of beasts, to direct the present, and to dive into futurity *. Rom'ulus, by an express law, commanded that no election should be made, nor enterprize undertaken, without first consulting them.

6. Wives were forbidden, upon any pretext whatsoever, to separate from their husbands; while, on the contrary, the husband was empowered to *repudiate* the wife, and even, in some cases, to put her to death. The laws between children and their parents were still more severe; the father had entire power over his offspring, both of fortune and life; he could imprison or sell them at any time of their lives, or in any stations to which they were arrived.

7. After endeavours to regulate his subjects by law, Rom'ulus next gave orders to ascertain their numbers. The whole amounted to no more than three thousand foot, and about as many hundred horsemen, capable of bearing arms. These therefore were divided equally into three tribes, and to each he assigned a different part of the city. Each of these tribes was subdivided into ten curiæ, or companies, consisting of a hundred men each, with a centurion to command it; a priest called curio, to perform the sacrifices; and two of the principal inhabitants, called duumviri, to distribute justice.

---

the former as patrons, the latter as clients. The duty of the patron was to advise his clients on points of law; to manage his suits; and, by every means in his power, to promote his peace and happiness; in return for which, the client was to assist his patron with money on certain occasions; to ransom him or his sons if taken prisoners; and to bear the charges of their magistracy, and other honourable employments.

* For a more particular account of these, vide Intro. Cap. 2.

8. By these judicious regulations, each day added strength to the new city; multitudes of people flocked in from all the adjacent towns, and it only seemed to want women to ensure its duration. In this exigence, Rom'ulus, by the advice of the senate, sent deputies among the Sab'ines, his neighbours, entreating their alliance; and, upon these terms, offering to cement the strictest confederacy with them. The Sab'ines, who were at that time considered as the most warlike people of Italy, rejected the proposal with disdain. 9. Rom'ulus therefore proclaimed a feast in honour of *Neptune* *, throughout all the neighbouring villages, and made the most magnificent preparations for celebrating it. These feasts were generally preceded by sacrifices, and ended in shows of wrestlers, *gladiators* †, and chariot-courses. The Sab'ines, as he had expected, were among the foremost who came to be spectators, bringing their wives and daughters with them, to share the pleasures of the sight. 10. In the mean time, the games began, and while the strangers were most intent upon the spectacle, a number of the Roman youth rushed in among them with drawn swords, seized the youngest and most beautiful women, and carried them off by violence. In vain the parents protested against this breach of hospitality; in vain the virgins themselves at first opposed the attempts of their ravishers; perseverance and caresses obtained those favours which timidity at first denied; so that the ravishers, from being objects of aversion, soon became the partners of their dearest affections.

11. A bloody war ensued. The cities of Cæ'nina ‡,

---

* Neptune was the son of Saturn and Ops, and brother of Jupiter, Pluto and Juno. In the division of the universe among the brothers, the kingdom of the sea fell to the share of Neptune. He is represented sitting in a chariot made of a shell, with a trident in his hand, and drawn by sea horses or dolphins.

† Vide Intro. Cap. 7.

‡ A town of Latium, near Rome. (Livy.)

Antem'næ *, and Crustumi'num †, were the first who resolved to avenge the common cause, which the Sab'ines seemed too dilatory in pursuing. But all these, by making separate inroads, became an easy conquest to Rom'ulus, who made the most merciful use of his victories; instead of destroying their towns, or lessening their numbers, he only placed colonies of Romans in them, to serve as a frontier to repress more distant invasions.

12. Ta'tius, king of Cu'res, a Sabine city, was the last, although the most formidable, who undertook to revenge the disgrace his country had suffered. He entered the Roman territories at the head of twenty-five thousand men, and, not content with a superiority of forces, he added stratagem also. 13. Tarpe'ia, who was daughter to the commander of the Capit'oline hill, happened to fall into his hands, as she went without the walls of the city to fetch water. Upon her he prevailed, by means of large promises, to betray one of the gates to his army. The reward she engaged for, was what the soldiers wore on their arms, by which she meant their bracelets. They, however, either mistaking her meaning, or willing to punish her perfidy, threw their bucklers upon her as they entered, and crushed her to death. 14. The Sab'ines being thus possessed of the Capit'oline, after some time, a general engagement ensued, which was renewed for several days, with almost equal success, and neither army could think of submitting; it was in the valley between the Capit'oline and Quiri'nal hills that the last engagement was fought between the Romans and the Sab'ines. 15. The battle was now become general, and the slaughter prodigious; when the attention of both sides was suddenly turned from the scene of horror before them to another. The Sab'ine women, who had been carried off

* A city of the Sabines, between Rome and the Anio, from whence its name. (Ante Amnem.) Dionys. Hal.

† A town of Etruria near Veii. (Virg.)

by the Romans, flew in between the combatants, with their hair loose, and their ornaments neglected, regardless of their own danger; and, with loud outcries, implored their husbands and their fathers to desist*. Upon this, the combatants, as if by mutual impulse, let fall their weapons. 16. An accommodation ensued, by which it was agreed, that Rom'ulus and Ta'tius should reign jointly in Rome, with equal power and prerogative; that a hundred Sab'ines should be admitted into the senate, that the city should retain its former name, but the citizens should be called Quiri'tes, after Cu'res, the principal town of the Sab'ines; and that both nations being thus united, such of the Sab'ines as chose it, should be admitted to live in and enjoy all the privileges of citizens of Rome. 17. The conquest of Came'ria was the only military achievement under the two kings, and Ta'tius was killed about five years after by the Lavin'ians, for having protected some of his servants who had plundered them and slain their ambassadors; so that, by this accident, Rom'ulus once more saw himself sole monarch of Rome. 18. Soon after the death of Ta'tius, a cruel plague and famine having broken out at Rome, the Camerini embraced the opportunity to lay waste the Roman territory. But Romulus gave them battle, killed six thousand on the spot, and returned in triumph to Rome. He took likewise Fidenæ, a city about forty furlongs distant from his capital, and reduced the Veientes to submission.

19. Successes like these produced an equal share of pride in the conqueror. From being contented with those limits which had been wisely assigned to his power, he

---

* Some historians of eminence consider this incident as wholly fabulous: the real fact appears to be, that the engagement having proved by no means decisive, the women requested permission to mediate between the hostile powers; laying aside, therefore, their ornaments, and putting on mourning, they repaired to the Sabine camp, and throwing themselves at the feet of their fathers and brothers, sought and obtained a reconciliation.

began to affect absolute sway, and to control those laws to which he had himself formerly professed implicit obedience. The senate was particularly displeased at his conduct, as they found themselves used only as instruments to ratify the rigour of his commands. 20. We are not told the precise manner which they employed to get rid of the tyrant. Some say that he was torn in pieces in the senate-house; others, that he disappeared while reviewing his army; certain it is, that from the secrecy of the fact, and the concealment of the body, they took occasion to persuade the multitude that he was taken up into heaven; thus, him whom they could not bear as a king, they were contented to worship as a god. Rom'ulus reigned thirty-seven years; and, after his death, had a temple built to him, under the name of Quiri'nus.

Questions for Examination.

1. What were the first proceedings of the rude inhabitants of Rome?
2. Of whom was the senate composed?
3. Who were the Patricians?
4. Who were the Plebeians?
5. What was the first care of the new king?
   In what did the religion of Rome consist?
6. What were the laws between husband and wife, and between parents and children?
7. What were the regulations directed by Romulus?
8. What was the result of these regulations?
9. What conduct did Romulus adopt in consequence?
10. What treatment did the Sabines experience?
11. Did they tamely acquiesce in this outrage?
12. Who undertook to revenge the disgrace of the Sabines?
13. What was this stratagem, and how was its perpetrator rewarded?
14. Did the possession of the Capitoline put an end to the war?
15. What put a stop to this sanguinary conflict?
16. What were the terms of accommodation?
17. Was this joint sovereignty of long continuance?
18. Was Romulus successful in military affairs?
19. What was the consequence?
20. What was the manner of his death?

CHAPTER III.

From the Death of Romulus, to the Death of Numa Pompilius, the second King of Rome.—U.C. 38.

4. Conjunc'ture, *s.* a particular period, critical time.
Indu'ce, *v.* to lead, to persuade.
5. Ege'ria, *s.* the nymph who presides over pregnant women.
Ja'nus, *s.* the most ancient of the kings of Italy; deified after his death, and represented with two faces, to denote his knowledge of the past and future. From him the month of January takes its name.

1. UPON the death of Rom'ulus, the city seemed greatly divided in the choice of a successor. The Sab'ines were for having a king chosen from their body, but the Romans could not endure the thoughts of advancing a stranger to the throne. In this perplexity, the senators undertook to supply the place of the king, by taking the government each of them in turn, for five days, and during that time enjoying all the honours and all the privileges of royalty. 2. This new form of government continued for a year; but the Plebe'ians who saw this method of transferring power was only multiplying their masters, insisted upon altering that mode of government. The senate being thus driven to an election, at length pitched upon Nu'ma Pompil'ius, a Sab'ine, and their choice was received with universal approbation by the people *.

3. Nu'ma Pompil'ius, who was now about forty, had long been eminent for his piety, his justice, his moderation, and exemplary life. He was skilled in all the learning and philosophy of the Sab'ines, and lived at home at Cu'res, contented with a private fortune; unambitious of higher honours. It was not, therefore, without reluctance, that he accepted the dignity; which when he did so, produced

* Nu'ma Pompil'ius was the fourth son of Pompil'ius Pom'po, an illustrious Sab'ine. He had married Ta'tia, the daughter of Ta'tius, the colleague of Rom'ulus, and on the death of his wife gave himself up entirely to solitude and study. (Plutarch—Livy.)

such joy, that the people seemed not so much to receive a king as a kingdom.

4. No monarch could be more proper for them than Nu'ma, at a *conjuncture* when the government was composed of various petty states lately subdued, and but ill united to each other: they wanted a master who could, by his laws and precepts, soften their fierce dispositions; and, by his example, *induce* them to a love of religion, and every milder virtue. 5. Numa's whole time therefore was spent in inspiring his subjects with a love of piety, and a veneration for the gods. He built many new temples, instituted sacred offices and feasts; and the sanctity of his life gave strength to his assertion—that he had a particular correspondence with the goddess *Ege'ria*. By her advice he built the temple of *Janus*, which was to be shut in time of peace, and open in war. He ordained four vestal virgins, who had very great privileges allowed them *.

6. For the encouragement of agriculture, he divided those lands, which Rom'ulus had gained in war, among the poorer part of the people; he regulated the kalendar, and abolished the distinction between Romans and Sabines, by dividing the people according to their several trades, and compelling them to live together. Thus having arrived at the age of fourscore years, and having reigned forty-three in profound peace, he died, ordering his body, contrary to the custom of the times, to be buried in a stone coffin; and his books of ceremonies, which consisted of twelve in Latin, and as many in Greek, to be buried by his side in another †.

---

* These must have been distinct from those of whom Rhe'a Sil'via, the mother of Rom'ulus and Re'mus, made one. Among other privileges, they had the fasces carried before them, when they went abroad; and if they met a malefactor going to execution, they had the power of freeing him from death, on making oath that the meeting was accidental.

† For the religious rites and ceremonies instituted by Nu'ma and others, see Intro. Cap. II. The books here mentioned were dug up about four hundred years after, and burnt by order of the senate.

Questions for Examination.

1. Upon the death of Romulus, what took place in regard to his successor?
2. How long did this order of things continue?
3. What was the character of Numa Pompilius?
4. Was Numa a monarch suited to this peculiar conjuncture?
5. Relate the acts of Numa.
6. What were the further acts of Numa?
7. What orders did he leave at his death?

CHAPTER IV.

From the Death of Numa, to the Death of Tullus Hostilius, the third King of Rome.—U.C. 82.

2. Al'bans, *s.* a people of Alba in Italy.
3. Impet'uous, *a.* hasty, violent, vehement.
4. Cham'pions, *s.* heroes, great warriors.
5. Antag'onists, *s.* adversaries, persons opposed to others in battle.
6. Manes, *s.* ghosts.
7. Embru'ed, *part.* dipped, steeped.

1. AT the death of Nu'ma, the government once more devolved upon the senate, and so continued, till the people elected Tul'lus Hostil'ius for their king, which choice had also the concurrence of the other part of the constitution. This monarch, the grandson of a noble Roman *, who had formerly signalised himself against the Sab'ines, was every way unlike his predecessor, being entirely devoted to war, and more fond of enterprise than even the founder of the empire himself had been; so that he only sought a pretext for leading his forces into the field.

* Host'us, the grandfather of Hostil'ius, was originally of Medu'lia, a city of La'tium, but had settled at Rome about forty years after its foundation. He was the first who entered the breach at Fi'denae, for which Rom'ulus rewarded him with a *mural crown*. See Intro. Cap. VI. sect. 3. (Pliny—Diony. Hal.)

2. The *Albans*, by committing some depredations on the Roman territory, were the first people that gave him an opportunity of indulging his favourite inclinations. The forces of the two states met about five miles from Rome, prepared to decide the fate of their respective kingdoms; for, in these times, a single battle was generally decisive. The two armies were for some time drawn out in array, awaiting the signal to begin, both chiding the length of that dreadful suspense, when an unexpected proposal from the Alban general put a stop to the onset. 3. Stepping in between both armies, he offered the Romans to decide the dispute by single combat; adding, that the side whose champion was overcome, should submit to the conqueror. A proposal like this, suited the *impetuous* temper of the Roman king, and was embraced with joy by his subjects, each of whom hoped, that he himself should be chosen to fight the cause of his country. 4. There were, at that time, three twin brothers in each army; those of the Romans were called Hora'tii, and those of the Albans Curia'tii; all six remarkable for their courage, strength, and activity; and to these it was resolved to commit the management of the combat*. At length the *champions* met, and each, totally regardless of his own safety, only sought the destruction of his opponent. The spectators, in horrid silence, trembled at every blow, and wished to share the danger, till fortune seemed to decide the glory of the field. 5. Victory, that had hitherto been doubtful, appeared to declare against the Romans: they beheld two of their champions laying dead upon the plain, and the three Curia'tii, who were wounded, slowly endeavouring to pursue the survivor, who seemed by flight to beg for mercy. Too soon, however, they perceived that his flight was only

* The Hora'tii and Curia'tii were, according to Diony'sius Halicarnas'sus, the sons of two sisters, daughters of Sequin'ius, an illustrious citizen of Alba. One married to Curia'tius, a citizen of Alba, and the other to Hora'tius, a Roman: so that the champions were near relatives.

pretended, in order to separate his three *antagonists*, whom he was unable to oppose united; for, quickly after, stopping his course, and turning upon the first, who followed closely behind, he laid him dead at his feet: the second brother, who was coming up to assist him that had already fallen, shared the same fate. 6. There now remained but the last Curia'tius to conquer, who, fatigued and disabled by his wounds, slowly advanced to offer an easy victory. He was killed, almost unresisting, while the conqueror exclaiming, "Two have I already sacrificed to the *manes* of my brothers; the third I will offer up to my country"—despatched him as a victim to the superiority of the Romans, whom now the Alban army consented to obey *.

7. But the virtues of that age were not without alloy; that very hand that in the morning was exerted to save his country, was, before night, *embrued* in the blood of a sister: for, returning triumphant from the field, it raised his indignation to behold her bathed in tears, and lamenting the loss of her lover, one of the Curia'tii, to whom she had been betrothed. This so provoked him, beyond the powers of sufferance, that in a rage he slew her: but the action displeased the senate, and drew after it the condemnation of the magistrate. He was, however, pardoned, by making his appeal to the people, but obliged to pass under the yoke; an ignominious punishment, usually inflicted on prisoners of war †.

8. Tul'lus having greatly increased the power and wealth of Rome by repeated victories, now thought proper to demand satisfaction of the Sab'ines, for the insults which had been formerly offered to some Roman citizens at the temple of the goddess Fero'nia, which was common

* This obedience of the Albans was of short duration; they soon rebelled, and were defeated by Tul'lus, who razed the city of Alba to the ground, and transplanted the inhabitants to Rome, where he conferred on them the privileges of citizens.

† Livy, lib. i. cap. 26. Dion. Hal. l. 3.

to both nations. A war ensued, which lasted some years, and ended in the total overthrow of the Sab'ines.

Hostil'ius died after a reign of thirty two years; some say by lightning; others, with more probability, by treason.

Questions for Examination.

1. On whom devolved the government on the death of Numa, and what is the character of his successor?
2. What opportunity first offered of indulging the new king's inclinations?
3. What proposal was offered, and accepted, for deciding the dispute?
4--6. Relate the circumstances which attended the combat, and the result of it.
7. What act followed the victory?
8. What conquest was next achieved?

CHAPTER V.

From the Death of Tullus Hostilius, to the Death of Ancus Martius, the fourth King of Rome.— U. C. 115.

1. Interreg'num, *s.* the time in which a throne is vacant between the death of one sovereign prince, and the accession of another. In England, there is no interregnum, the government being hereditary.
   Lin'eal, *a.* in a direct line.
2. Ve'ii, *s.* the people of a once very rich and powerful city in Tuscany, about twelve miles from Rome.
   Fiden'ates, *s.* the people of Fidena, another once rich and powerful city of Italy. In this city, in the year of our Lord 27, the amphitheatre fell, when there were 50,000 people in it; and most of whom were either killed or wounded.
   Vol'sci, *s.* a once very considerable poeple of Italy.
3. Adja'cent, *a.* lying near.

1. After an *interregnum*, as in the former case, An'cus Mar'tius, the grandson of Nu'ma, was elected king by the people, and their choice was afterwards confirmed

by the senate. As this monarch was a *lineal* descendant from Nu'ma, so he seemed to make him the great object of his imitation. He instituted the sacred ceremonies*, which were to precede a declaration of war; but he took every occasion to advise his subjects to return to the arts of agriculture, and to lay aside the less useful stratagems of war.

2. These institutions and precepts were considered by the neighbouring powers rather as marks of cowardice than of wisdom. The Latins therefore began to make incursions upon his territories, but their success was equal to their justice: An'cus conquered the Latins, destroyed their cities, removed their inhabitants to Rome, and increased his dominions by the addition of part of theirs. He quelled also an insurrection of the *Ve'ii*, the *Fiden'ates*, and the *Vol'sci;* and over the Sab'ines he obtained a second triumph.

3. But his victories over the enemy were by no means comparable to his works at home, in raising temples, fortifying the city, making a prison for malefactors, and building a sea-port at the mouth of the Ti'ber, called Os'tia, by which he secured to his subjects the trade of that river, and that of the salt pits *adjacent*. Thus having enriched his subjects, and beautified the city, he died, after a reign of twenty-four years.

Questions for Examination.

1. Who was next elected by the people, and what measures did he pursue?
2. In what light did his enemies consider his institutions? With what success did they oppose him?
3. What were the other acts of Ancus?

---

* First an ambassador was sent to demand satisfaction for the alleged injury; if this were not granted within 33 days, heralds were appointed to proclaim the war in the name of the gods and people of Rome. At the conclusion of their speech, they threw their javelins into the enemy's confines, and departed.

CHAPTER VI.

From the Death of Ancus Martius, to the Death of Tarquinius Priscus, the fifth King of Rome.—U. C. 130.

1. Tarquin'ia, *s.* a city of Tuscany, in Italy.
2. Au'gury, *s.* the pretended art of fortelling future events. This art was formerly much practised, but is now justly exploded as inconsistent with reason and true philosophy.
   Pre'sage, *s.* a token by which something future may be known.
3. Haran'gue, *s.* a set speech.
4. Intrig'ue, *s.* cunning contrivance.
9. Tar'dy, *a.* slow, late.

1. Lu'cius Tarquin'ius Pris'cus, whose original name was Lucu'mon, and who was appointed guardian to the sons of the late king, took the surname of Tarquin'ius, from the city of *Tarquinia*, whence he last came. His father was a merchant of Corinth *, who had acquired considerable wealth by trade, and had settled in Italy, upon account of some troubles at home. His son, Lucu'mon, who inherited his fortune, married a woman of family in the city of Tarquin'ia. 2. His birth, profession, and country, being contemptible to the nobles of the place, he, by his wife's persuasion, came to settle at Rome, where merit alone gave a title to distinction. On his way thither, say the historians, as he approached the city gate, an eagle, stooping from above, took off his hat, and flying round his chariot for some time, with much noise, put it on again †. This, his wife Tan'aquil,

* Corinth (now Corito) was a celebrated city of ancient Greece, situated on the isthmus of that name, about sixty stadia or furlongs from the sea. Its original name was Ephy're (Homer, Martial, Sueto'nius, Livy.)

† Such relations as these are not to be put on a footing with

who it seems was skilled in *augury*, interpreted as a *presage*, that he should one day wear the crown. Perhaps it was this which first fired his ambition to pursue it.

3. An'cus being dead, and the kingdom, as usual, devolving upon the senate, Tarquin used all his power and arts to set aside the children of the late king, and to get himself elected in their stead. For this purpose, upon the day appointed for election, he contrived to have them sent out of the city; and in a set speech, in which he urged his friendship for the people, the fortune he had spent among them, and his knowledge of their government, he offered himself for their king. As there was nothing in this *harangue* that could be contested, it had the desired effect; and the people, with one consent, elected him as their sovereign.

4. A kingdom thus obtained by *intrigue*, was, notwithstanding, governed with equity. In the beginning of his reign, in order to recompense his friends, he added a hundred members * more to the senate, which made them, in all, three hundred.

5. But his peaceful endeavours were soon interrupted by the inroads of his restless neighbours, particularly the Lat'ins, over whom he triumphed, and whom he forced to beg for peace. He then turned his arms against the Sab'ines, who had risen once more, and had passed the river Ti'ber; but, attacking them with vigour, Tar'quin routed their army; so that many who escaped the sword, were drowned in attempting to cross over, while their bodies and armour, floating down to Rome, brought news of the victory, even before the messengers could

---

the authentic parts of the history. They are, most probably, fables invented by the ancient historians to do honour to some favourite personage, or to give interest to their relation of facts.

* These members were chosen from the Plebeians. They were not called Patres Conscripti, as the others, but Patres Minorum Gentium. They had, however, the same authority in the senate as the others, and their children ranked as Patricians.

arrive that were sent with the tidings. These conquests were followed by several advantages over the Lat'ins, from whom he took many towns, though without gaining any decisive victory.

6. Tar'quin having thus forced his enemies into submission, was resolved not to let his subjects grow corrupt through indolence. He therefore undertook and perfected several public works for the convenience and embellishment of the city *.

7. In his time it was, that the augurs came into a great increase of reputation. He found it his interest to promote the superstition of the people; for this was, in fact, but to increase their obedience. Tan'aquil, his wife, was a great pretender to this art; but Ac'cius Næ'vius was the most celebrated adept of the kind ever known in Rome.

8. Upon a certain occasion, Tar'quin being resolved to try the augur's skill, asked him, whether what he was then pondering in his mind could be effected. Næ'vius having consulted his auguries, boldly affirmed that it might: "Why then," cries the king, with an insulting smile, "I had thoughts of cutting this whetstone with a razor." "Cut boldly," replied the augur; and the king cut it through accordingly †. Thenceforward nothing was un-

* Preparations for building the Capitol were made in this reign. The city was likewise fortified with stone walls, and the cloacæ, or common sewers, constructed by the munificence of this prince. See Introd. Cap. i. p. 35.

† Tarquin, finding the number of horse appointed by Romulus too small, so that he was frequently prevented from pursuing a victory when gained, resolved to add some new bodies of knights to those of the first institution; but in this he was opposed by Nævius, who affirmed that the original number had been fixed by auguries. To bring these auguries therefore into contempt, Tar'quin made the experiment related in the text. This event, however, though attested by all the writers of Roman history, bears evident marks of a fabulous origin. Even Cicero, himself an augur, says to his brother Quintus, "Look with contempt on the razor and flint of the famous Accius; when we reason as philosophers, we must lay no stress on fables." Cic. l. i. de div.

dertaken in Rome without consulting the augurs, and obtained their advice and approbation.

9. Tar'quin was not content with a kingdom, without having also the ensigns of royalty *. In imitation of the Lyd'ian kings, he assumed a crown of gold, an ivory throne, a sceptre with an eagle on the top, and robes of purple. It was, perhaps, the splendour of these royalties that first raised the envy of the late king's sons, who had now, for above thirty-seven years, quietly submitted to his government. His design also of adopting Ser'vius Tul'lius, his son-in-law, for his successor, might have contributed to inflame their resentment. 10. Whatever was the cause of their *tardy* vengeance, they resolved to destroy him; and, at last, found means to effect their purpose, by hiring two ruffians, who demanding to speak with the king, pretending that they came for justice, struck him dead in his palace, with the blow of an axe. The lictors, however, who waited upon the person of the king, seized the murderers as they were attempting to escape, and put them to death: but the sons of An'cus, who were the instigators, found safety in flight †.

11. Thus fell Lu'cius Tarquin'ius, surnamed Pris'cus, to distinguish him from one of his successors of the same name. He was eighty years of age, and had reigned thirty-eight years.

---

* These ensigns of royalty were sent him by the Sabines, as tokens of submission.

† They had before attempted to render the king detestable in the eyes of his subjects, by imputing to him the murder of Nævius, who had suddenly disappeared. As this calumny failed of its intended effect, they were pardoned by Tarquin; but this clemency by no means lessened their inveterate hatred, nor rendered them less anxious to effect his destruction.

Questions for Examination.

1. Who was Lucius Tarquinius Priscus?
2. What occasioned his removal to Rome, and what circumstances attended it?
3. Was this presage fulfilled, and by what means?
4. In what manner did he govern?
5. Was Tarquin a warlike prince?
6. How did he improve his victories?
7. By what acts did he ensure the obedience of his subjects?
8. What contributed to increase the reputation of the augurs?
9. What part of his conduct is supposed to have raised the envy of the late king's sons?
10. What was the consequence of this envy and resentment?
11. What was his age, and how long did he reign?

CHAPTER VII.

From the Death of Tarquinius Priscus to the Death of Servius Tullius, the sixth King of Rome.—U. C. 176.

2. Dissim'ulation, *s.* the act of putting on a false appearance, in order to conceal one's intention or endeavour.
3. Sack'ing, *part.* the taking of a town by storm, and delivering it up to be plundered by the soldiers.
7. Lus'trum, *s.* a space of five years.
10. Sympathet'ic, *a.* having mutual sensation.
11. Ille'gal, *a.* unlawful.

1. THE report of the murder of Tar'quin filled all his subjects with complaint and indignation, while the citizens ran from every quarter to the palace, to learn the truth of the account, or to take vengeance on the assassins. 2. In this tumult, Tan'aquil, widow of the late king, considering the danger she must incur, in case the conspirators should succeed to the crown, and desirous of seeing her son-in-law his successor, with great art dissembled her sorrow, as well as the king's death. She as

sured the people, from one of the windows of the palace, that he was not killed, but only stunned by the blow; that he would shortly recover; and that in the mean time, he had deputed his power to Ser'vius Tul'lius, his son-in-law. Ser'vius accordingly, as it had been agreed upon between them, issued from the palace, adorned with the ensigns of royalty, and, preceded by his lictors, went to dispatch some affairs that related to the public safety; still pretending that he took all his instructions from the king. This scene of *dissimulation* continued for some days, till he had made his party good among the nobles; when, the death of Tarquin being publicly ascertained, Ser'vius came to the crown, solely at the senate's appointment, and without attempting to gain the suffrages of the people *.

3. Ser'vius was the son of a bondwoman, who had been taken at the *sacking* of a town † belonging to the Lat'ins, and was born whilst his mother was a slave. While yet an infant in his cradle, a lambent flame ‡ is said to have played round his head, which Tan'aquil converted into an omen of future greatness.

4. Upon being acknowledged king, the chief object of his reign was to increase the power of the senate, by depressing that of the people. 5. The populace, who were unable to see into his designs, conferred upon him the full power of settling the taxes as he should think proper. 6. Accordingly, as he insisted that they should pay their taxes by centuries, he commanded that by centuries also they should give their votes, in all public transactions.

---

* Dionys'ius Halicarnas'sus tells us, that he assumed the sovereignty, without waiting for the suffrages, either of the senate or people.

† Cornic'ulum (Dion. Hal.) His father is said to have been one Tul'lius, an officer of royal extraction, who was killed in the defence of his country. The name of his mother was Ocrisia. Ibid.

‡ A flame of fire gliding about without doing any harm.

In former deliberations, each citizen gave his suffrage singly, and the numbers of the poor always carried it against the power of the rich; but by the regulations of Ser'vius, the senate was made to consist of a greater number of centuries than all the other classes put together, and thus entirely outweighed them in every contention.

7. In order to ascertain the increase or decay of his subjects, and their fortunes, he instituted another regulation, which he called a *lustrum*. By this, all the citizens were to assemble in the Cam'pus Mar'tius *, in complete armour; and in their respective classes, once in five years; and there to give an exact account of their families and fortune.

8. Having enjoyed a long reign, spent in settling the domestic policy of the state, and also not inattentive to foreign concerns, he conceived reasonable hopes of concluding it with tranquillity and ease †. He even had thoughts of laying down his power; and, having formed the kingdom into a republic, to retire into obscurity; but so generous a design was frustrated ere it could be put into execution.

9. In the beginning of his reign, to secure the throne by every precaution, he had married his two daughters to the two grandsons of Tar'quin: and as he knew that the women, as well as their intended husbands, were of oppo-

---

* A large plain at Rome, without the walls of the city, where the Roman youth performed their exercises. Cam'pus is the Latin word for field; and this field or plain was called Mar'tius, because it was dedicated to Mars, the god of war.

† Though no mention is made in the text of his military exploits, he performed some worthy of record. The Hetru'rians, encouraged by his pacific disposition, revolted; but Ser'vius, taking the field, quickly subdued them anew, and divided their lands among the Roman citizens. For this victory he enjoyed the honours of a splendid triumph. Still restless, the Hetru'rians revolted a second and a third time, and a second and a third time Ser'vius triumphed on their reduction. (Dion. Hal.)

site dispositions, he resolved to cross their tempers, by giving each to him of a contrary turn of mind; her that was meek and gentle, to him that was bold and furious; her that was ungovernable and proud, to him that was remarkable for a contrary character; by this he supposed that each would correct the failings of the other, and that the mixture would be productive of concord. 10. The event, however, proved otherwise. Lu'cius, the haughty son-in-law, soon grew displeased with the meekness of his consort, and placed his whole affections upon his brother's wife, Tul'lia, who answered his passion with *sympathetic* ardour. As their wishes were ungovernable, they soon resolved to break through every restraint that prevented their union; they both undertook to murder their respective consorts; they succeeded, and were soon after married together. 11. A first crime ever produces a second; from the destruction of their consorts, they proceeded to conspiring that of the king. They began by raising factions against him, alleging his *illegal* title to the crown, and Lu'cius's claiming it as his own, as heir to Tar'quin. At length, when he found the senate ripe for seconding his views, he entered the senate-house, adorned with all the ensigns of royalty, and, placing himself upon the throne, began to harangue them on the obscurity of the king's birth, and the injustice of his title. 12. While he was yet speaking, Ser'vius entered, attended by a few followers, and seeing his throne thus rudely invaded, offered to push the usurper from his seat; but Tar'quin being in the vigour of youth, threw the old king down the steps which led to the throne; some of his adherents, who were instructed for that purpose, followed him, as he was feebly attempting to get to the palace, dispatched him by the way, and threw his body, all mangled and bleeding, as a public spectacle, into the street. 13. In the mean time, Tul'lia, burning, with impatience for the event, was informed of what her hus-

band had done, and, resolving to be among the first who should salute him as monarch, ordered her chariot to the senate house. But as her charioteer approached the place where the body of the old king, her father, lay exposed and bloody, the man, amazed at the inhuman spectacle, and not willing to trample upon it with his horses, offered to turn another way; this serving only to increase the fierceness of her anger, she threw the footstool at his head, and ordered him to drive over the body without hesitation *.

14. This was the end of Ser'vius Tul'lius, a prince of eminent justice and moderation, after an useful and prosperous reign of forty-four years.

Questions for Examination.

1. What effect had the murder of Tarquin on his subjects?
2. By what means was the succession assured to Servius Tullius?
3. Who was Servius?
4. What was the chief object of his reign?
5. Was this object opposed?
6. By what means did he accomplish this object?
7. What other important measure did he adopt?
8. What hopes did he entertain in his old age?
9. By what means did he hope to secure tranquil possession of the throne?
10. Did the event answer his expectations?
11. To what farther crimes did this commencement lead?
12. What followed?
13. What was the conduct of his daughter on this melancholy occasion?
14. What was the character of Servius, and how long did he reign?

---

* The blood of the good old king is said to have dyed the chariot wheels, and even the clothes of the inhuman daughter; from that time, the street where it happened was called *vicus sceleratus*, the wicked or accursed street.

CHAPTER VIII.

From the Death of Servius Tullius to the Banishment of Tarquinius Superbus, the seventh and last King of Rome.—U. C. 220.

1. Heredit'ary, *a.* descending by inheritance.
2. Ineffi''cient, *a.* that does not answer the end proposed.
6. Con'fiscate, *v.* to seize on private property, and convert it to public use, by way of punishment.
9. Sib'ils, s. (in Pagan history), a certain number of women, who were supposed to have been endowed with a prophetic spirit, and to have foretold the revolutions and fates of kingdoms.
11. Quindecem'viri, *s.* literally the fifteen men.
12. Friv'olous, *a.* slight, trifling.
Malefac'tors, *s.* (from *malè*, wickedly ; and *facio*, to do ;) criminals, offenders against the law.
13. Sed'ulously, *ad.* busily, assiduously.
14. Unan'imously, *ad.* with one mind.
17. Inex'orable, *a.* not to be moved by any entreaty.
18. Achiev'ed, *v.* performed, accomplished.
19. Indel'ible, *a.* not to be effaced or blotted out.
21. Poig'nant, *a.* severe or painful.
Pon'iard, *s.* a dagger or short sword.
24. Inflex'ible, *a.* not to be bent, or moved from a purpose.
25. Fo'rum, *s.* a public place at Rome, where lawyers, &c. made their speeches in matters of property, or in criminal cases.
Etru'ria, *s.* an extensive country of Rome, now called Tuscany.

1. Lu'cius Tarquin'ius, afterwards called Super'bus, or the Proud, having placed himself upon the throne, in consequence of this horrid deed, was resolved to support his dignity with the same violence with which it was acquired. Regardless of the senate or the people's approbation, he seemed to claim the crown by an *hereditary* right, and refused burial to the late king's body, under pretence of his being an usurper. 2. All the good part of mankind, however, looked upon his accession with detestation and horror: and this act of *inefficient* cruelty only served to confirm their hatred. 3. Conscious of this,

he ordered all such as he suspected to have been attached to Ser'vius, to be put to death; and fearing the natural consequences of his tyranny, he increased the guard round his person.

4. His chief policy seems to have been to keep the people always employed either in wars or public works, by which means he diverted their attention from his unlawful method of coming to the crown. He first marched against the Sab'ines, who refused to pay him obedience; and he soon reduced them to submission. 5. In the mean time, many of the discontented patricians abandoning their native country, took refuge at Gabii, a city of La'tium, about twelve miles from Rome, waiting an opportunity to take up arms, and drive Tarquin from his throne. To escape this danger, Tarquin had recourse to the following stratagem. 6. He caused his son Sex'tus to counterfeit desertion, upon pretence of barbarous usage, and to seek refuge among the inhabitants of the place. There, by artful complaints and studied lamentations, Sex'tus so prevailed upon the pity of the people, as to be chosen their governor, and, soon after, general of their army. 7. At first, in every engagement, he appeared successful; till, at length, finding himself entirely possessed of the confidence of the state, he sent a trusty messenger to his father for instructions. Tar'quin made no answer; but, taking the messenger into the garden, he cut down before him the tallest poppies. Sex'tus readily understood the meaning of this reply, and found means to destroy or remove, one by one, the principal men of the city; taking care to *confiscate* their effects among the people. 8. The charms of this dividend kept the giddy populace blind to their approaching ruin, till they found themselves, at last, without counsellors or head; and, in the end, fell under the power of Tar'quin without even striking a blow.

9. But, while he was engaged in wars abroad, he took

care not to suffer the people to continue in idleness at home. He undertook to build the Capitol *, the foundation of which had been laid in a former reign; and an extraordinary event contributed to hasten the execution of his design. A woman, in strange attire, made her appearance at Rome, and came to the king, offering to sell nine books, which she said were of her own composing. 10. Not knowing the abilities of the seller, or that she was, in fact, one of the celebrated *Syb'ils*, whose prophecies were never found to fail, Tar'quin refused to buy them. Upon this she departed, and burning three of her books, returned again, demanding the same price for the six remaining. 11. Being once more despised as an impostor, she again departed, and burning three more, she returned with the remaining three, still asking the same price as at first. Tar'quin, surprised at the inconsistency of her behaviour, cousulted the augurs, to be advised what to do. These much blamed him for not buying the nine, and commanded him to take the three remaining, at whatsoever price they were to be had. 12. The woman, says the historian, after thus selling and delivering the three prophetic volumes, and advising him to have a special attention to what they contained, vanished from before him, and was never seen after. A trick this, invented probably by Tar'quin himself, to impose upon the people; and to find in the Syb'il's leaves whatever the government might require. However this was, he chose proper persons to keep them, who, though but two at first, were afterwards increased to fifteen, under the name of *Quindecemviri*. The important volumes were put into a stone chest, and a vault in the newly designed

* The Capitol is said to have been so named from the circumstance of a man's head, still fresh and bleeding, having been turned up by the workmen, in digging the foundation. The augurs interpreted it, as portending, that Rome should one day be the head and mistress of Italy.

building was thought the properest place to secure them.*

13. The people having been now for four years together employed in building the capitol, began, at last, to wish for something new to engage them; Tar'quin, therefore, to satisfy their wishes, proclaimed war against the Ru'tuli, upon a *frivolous* pretence of their having entertained some *malefactors*, whom he had banished; and invested their chief city, Ar'dea, which lay about sixteen miles from Rome. 14. While the army was encamped before this place, the king's son, Sextus Tarquin'ius, Collati'nus, a noble Roman, and some others, sitting in a tent drinking together, the discourse turned upon wives, each man preferring the beauty and virtue of his own. Collati'nus offered to decide the dispute by putting it to an immediate trial, whose wife should be found possessed of the greatest beauty, and most *sedulously* employed at that very hour: being heated with wine, the proposal was relished by the whole company; and, taking horse without delay, they posted to Rome, though the night was already pretty far advanced.

15. There they found Lucre'tia, the wife of Collati'nus, not like the other women of her age, spending the time in ease and luxury, but spinning in the midst of her maids, and cheerfully portioning out their tasks. Her modest beauty, and the easy reception she gave her husband and his friends, so charmed them all, that they *unanimously* gave her the preference; but kindled, in the breast of Sextus Tarquin'ius, a detestable passion, that nothing but possession could satisfy.

16. For that purpose he went from the camp to visit her privately, a few days after, and found the same kind reception which he had met with before. As his intentions were not suspected, Lucre'tia sate with him at sup-

* The capitol, or temple of Jupiter Capitoli'nus.

per, and ordered a chamber to be got ready for him. Midnight was the time in which this ruffian thought it safest to put his designs in execution. 17. Having found means to convey himself into her chamber, he approached the bed-side with a drawn sword, and rudely laying his hand upon her bosom, threatened her with instant death if she offered to resist his passion. 18. Lucre'tia affrighted out of her sleep, and seeing death so near, was yet *inexorable* to his desire; but was told, that if she would not yield he would instantly kill her, lay his own slave dead in her bed by her, and then report that he had found and killed them both in the act of adultery. 19. The terror of infamy *achieved* what the fear of death could not obtain, and she consented. The next morning he returned to the camp, exulting in his brutal victory. 20. In the mean time, Lucre'tia, detesting the light, and resolving not to pardon herself for the crime of another, demanded her husband Collati'nus, and Spu'rius her father, to come to her; an *indelible* disgrace having befallen the family. 21. They instantly obeyed the summons, bringing with them Vale'rius, a kinsman of her father, and Ju'nius Bru'tus, a reputed idiot, whose father Tar'quin had murdered, and who had accidentally met the messenger by the way. 22. Their arrival only served to increase Lucre'tia's *poignant* anguish; they found her in a state of the deepest desperation, and vainly attempted to give her relief. "No," said she, "never shall I find any thing worth living for in this world, under the loss of virtue. You see, my Collati'nus, a polluted wretch before you; one whose person has been the spoil of another, but whose affections were never estranged from you. Sextus Tarquin'ius, under the pretended veil of friendship, has this night violated that honour which death only can restore; but, if you have the hearts of men, remember to avenge my cause, and let posterity know, that she who has lost her virtue, hath only death

for her best consolation." So saying, she drew a *poniard* from beneath her robe, and instantly plunging it into her bosom, expired without a groan.* 23. Struck with sorrow, pity, and indignation, Spu'rius and Collati'nus gave vent to their grief; but Bru'tus, drawing the poniard reeking from Lucre'tia's wound, and lifting it up towards heaven, "Be witness, ye gods," he cried, "that, from this moment, I proclaim myself the avenger of the chaste Lucre'tia's cause; from this moment I profess myself the enemy of Tar'quin, and his lustful house; from henceforth this life, while life continues, shall be employed in opposition to tyranny, and for the happiness and freedom of my much-loved country." 24. A new amazement seized the hearers: he, whom they had hitherto considered as an idiot, now appearing in his real character, the friend of justice, and of Rome. He told them, that tears and lamentations were unmanly, when vengeance called so loudly; and, delivering the poniard to the rest, imposed the same oath upon them which he himself had just taken.

25. Ju'nius Bru'tus was the son of Mar'cus Ju'nius, who was put to death by Tar'quin the Proud, and the grandson of Tar'quin the elder. He had received an excellent education from his father, and had, from nature, strong sense and an *inflexible* attachment to virtue; but knowing that Tar'quin had murdered his father and his eldest brother, he counterfeited a fool, in order to escape the same danger, and thence obtained the surname of Bru'tus. Tar'quin, thinking his folly real, despised the man; and having possessed himself of his estate, kept him as an idiot in his house, merely with a view of making sport for his children.

* However this action may have been admired by some, as the triumph of injured virtue, suicide ought always to be considered as a heinous crime.

26. Brutus, however, only waited this opportunity to avenge the cause of his family. He ordered Lucretia's dead body to be brought out to view, and exposing it in the public *forum*, inflamed the ardour of the citizens by a display of the horrid transaction.* He obtained a decree of the senate, that Tar'quin and his family should be for ever banished from Rome, and that it should be capital for any to plead for, or to attempt his future return. 36. Thus this monarch, who had now reigned twenty-five years, being expelled his kingdom, went to take refuge with his family at Ci'ra, a little city of *Etru'ria*. In the mean time, the Roman army made a truce with the enemy, and Bru'tus was proclaimed deliverer of the people.

Thus ended with Tar'quin, after a continuance of two hundred and forty-five years, the Regal State of Rome.†

Questions for Examination.

1. What was the conduct of Lucius Tarquinius at the commencement of his reign?
2. Was his claim quietly acquiesced in?
3. What means did he adopt for his security?
4. By what means did he divert the people's attention from the unlawful manner in which he acquired the crown?
5. What happened in the mean time?
6. To what mean artifice did he have recourse?
7. How did Sextus accomplish his father's design?
8. What were the effects of this measure?
9. In what way did he employ his subjects at home during his absence, and what extraordinary event occurred?

---

* He enumerated the many crimes which had rendered Tar'quin odious to his subjects; that he had poisoned his own brother and wife, murdered his lawful sovereign, and filled the common sewers with the bodies of the nobility; that he was treacherous to his best friends, and inhuman to all his subjects; that their prospect in a successor was equally gloomy, as his three sons were of as tyrannical a temper as himself, of which the eldest had just given them a specimen. (Livy, l. i. c. 58, 59.)

† The territories of Rome were, at this time, about forty miles long, and thirty broad.

10. Did he accept her offer?
11. Was her second application successful, and what followed?
12. What became of the Sybil, and what is the general opinion respecting this transaction?
13. Did the building of the Capitol entirely engross the attention of the people?
14. What remarkable event took place at the siege of Ardea?
15. What was the consequence of this intemperate frolic?
16. What method did Sextus take to accomplish his vile design?
17. How did he proceed?
18. Did Lucretia yield to his desires?
19. What was the effect of this threat?
20. How did Lucretia support the loss of her honour?
21. Did they obey her summons?
22. What was the consequence of their arrival?
23. What effect had this dreadful catastrophe on those present?
24. How was this unexpected resolution received?
25. Give some account of Brutus.
26. For what reason, and by what means, did Brutus endeavour the abolition of royalty?
27. What became of Tarquin after his expulsion?

CHAP. IX.

The Commonwealth.

From the Banishment of Tarquin, to the Appointment of the Dictator.—U. C. 245.

Dicta'tor, *s.* a Roman magistrate, invested with absolute authority, in times of extraordinary emergency.

1. Repub'lican, *a.* a state of government in which the supreme power is lodged in a select number of persons.

Mon'archy, *s.* the government of a single person, called a king

3. Grate'ful, *a.* agreeable.
5. Intrig'ues, *s.* plots, secret contrivances.
7. Impel'led, *v.* obliged, driven.
9. Repress', *v.* to conquer, to subdue.
10. Sto'ic, *a.* destitute of mental feeling.
11. Insurrec'tion, *s.* a seditious rising.

Ve'ians, *s.* the inhabitants of Veii, about twelve miles from Rome: these people were sometimes called Veientes.

12. Remiss', *a.* slow, slothful.

Cav'alry, *s.* horse-soldiers.
13. Assa'il, *v.* to attack.
18. Sally, *s.* a sudden issuing from a besieged place to attack the besiegers.
Block'ade, *s.* a shutting up a besieged place, so that none can come out or go in.
22. He'inous, *a.* highly criminal.
24. Hos'tages, *s.* persons given in pledge as securities for the performance of certain conditions.
28. Abridg'ing, *part.* shortening, lessening.
29. Col'league, *s.* a partner or associate in the same office.
30. Irk'some, *a.* disagreeable, not easily to be borne.
Coinci'des, *v.* agrees with, concurs.
Sta'ble, *a.* firm, well settled.
Extenua'tion, *s.* mitigation.

1. THE regal power being overthrown, a *republican* form of government was substituted in its room. The senate, however, reserved by far the greatest share of the authority to themselves, and decorated their own body with all the spoils of deposed *monarchy*. The centuries of the people chose from among the senators, instead of a king, two annual magistrates, whom they ealled CONSULS,* with power equal to that of the regal, and with the same privileges and the same ensigns of authority.

2. Bru'tus, the deliverer of his country, and Collati'nus, the husband of Lucretia, where chosen the first consuls in Rome.

3. But this new republic, however, which seemed so *grateful* to the people, had like to have been destroyed in its very commencement. A party was formed in favour of Tar'quin. Some young men of the principal families in the state, who had been educated about the king, and had shared in all the luxuries and pleasures of the court, undertook to re-establish monarchy. 4. This party

* These were first called Prætors, next Judices, and afterwards Consuls: a Consulendo, from their consulting the good of the commonwealth. They had the royal ornaments, as the golden crown, sceptre, purple robes, lictors, and the ivory and curule chairs. The crowns and sceptres were, however, used only on extraordinary days of triumph.

secretly increased every day; and, what may create surprise, the sons of Bru'tus himself, and the Aqui'lii, the nephews of Collati'nus, were among the number. 5. Tar'quin, who was informed of these *intrigues* in his favour, sent ambassadors from Etru'ria to Rome, under a pretence of reclaiming the estates of the exiles; but, in reality, with a design to give spirit to his faction.* 6. The conspiracy was discovered by a slave, who had accidentally hid himself in the room where the conspirators used to assemble.† 7. Few situations could have been more terribly affecting than that of Bru'tus: a father placed as a judge upon the life and death of his own children, *impelled* by justice to condemn, and by nature to spare them. 8. The young men pleaded nothing for themselves; but, with conscious guilt, awaited their sentence in silence and agony. 9. The other judges, who were present, felt all the pangs of nature; Collati'nus wept, and Vale'rius could not *repress* his sentiments of pity. Bru'tus, alone, seemed to have lost all the softness of humanity; and, with a stern countenance, and a tone of voice that marked his gloomy resolution, demanded of his sons, if they could make any defence to the crimes with which they had been charged. This demand he made three several times; but receiving no answer, he, at length, turned himself to the executioner, "Now," cried he, "it is your part to perform the rest." 10. Thus saying, he again resumed his seat with an air of determined majesty; nor could all the sentiments of paternal pity, the imploring looks of the people, nor yet the tears of his sons, who were preparing for execution, alter the tenor of his resolution. Bru'tus, unmoved by any motive

* Their demand was agreed to, and a decree passed, that the Tarquins should be put in possession of their paternal estates. (Livy, l. ii. c. 3. 5.—Dion. Hal.)

† They all bound themselves by solemn oaths, and by the detestable ceremony of drinking the blood of a murdered man, while the body lay panting at their feet, to do all in their power to destroy the consuls and restore the king. (Plut. in Poplic.)

but the public good, pronounced upon them the sentence of death, and by his office was obliged to see it put in execution. The prisoners were scourged, and then beheaded; and Bru'tus beheld the cruel spectacle; but, in spite of his *stoic* firmness, could not stifle the sentiments of nature, which he sacrificed to the necessity of his office.

11. Tar'quin's hopes of an *insurrection* in his favour being thus overset, he now resolved to force himself upon his former throne by foreign assistance. He prevailed upon the *Veians* to assist him, and, with a considerable army, advanced towards Rome.

12. The consuls were not *remiss* in preparations to oppose him. Vale'rius commanded the foot, and Bru'tus being appointed to head the *cavalry*, went out to meet him on the Roman borders. 13. A'runs, the son of Tar'quin, who commanded the cavalry for his father, seeing Bru'tus at a distance, resolved, by one great attempt, to decide the fate of the day before the engaging of the armies; when, spurring his horse, he flew to him with fury. Bru'tus perceived his approach, and, singled out from the ranks, they met with such ungoverned rage, that, eager only to *assail*, and thoughtless of defending, they both fell dead upon the field together. 14. A bloody battle ensued, with equal slaughter on both sides; but the Romans, remaining in possession of the field of battle, claimed the victory.* In consequence, Vale'rius returned in triumph to Rome.

U.C. 246.

15. In the mean time, Tar'quin, no way intimidated by his misfortunes, prevailed upon Porsen'na, one of the kings of Etru'ria, to espouse his cause, and in person to undertake his quarrel. 16. This prince equally noted for courage and conduct, marched directly to Rome, with a numerous army, and laid siege to the city; while the terror

* The loss of the enemy was eleven thousand three hundred men, and that of the Romans nearly the same number. (Dion. Hal.)

of his name and arms filled all ranks of the people with dismay. The siege was carried on with vigour; a furious attack was made upon the place; the consuls opposed in vain, and were carried off wounded from the field; while the Romans, flying in great consternation, were pursued by the enemy to the bridge, over which both victors and vanquished were about to enter the city in the confusion. 17. All now appeared lost, when Hora'tius Co'cles, who had been placed there as sentinel to defend it, opposed himself to the torrent of the enemy, and, assisted only by two more*, for some time sustained the whole fury of the assault, till the bridge was broken down behind him. When he found the communication thus cut off, plunging with his arms into the torrent of the Tiber, he swam back victorious to his fellow-soldiers, and was received with just applause†.

18. Still, however, Porsen'na was determined upon taking the city; and though five hundred of his men were slain in a *sally* of the Romans, he reduced it to the greatest straits, and turning the siege into a *blockade*, resolved to take it by famine. 19. The distress of the besieged soon began to be insufferable, and all things seemed to threaten a speedy surrender, when another act of fierce bravery, still superior to that which had saved the city before, again brought about its safety and freedom.

20. Mu'tius, a youth of undaunted courage, was resolved to rid his country of an enemy, that so continued to oppress it; and, for this purpose, disguised in the habit of an Etru'rian peasant, entered the camp of the enemy, resolving to die or to kill the king. 21. With this resolution he made up to the place where Porsen'na was paying his

* Hermin'ius and Lar'tius, who retired in safety a few moments before the bridge was completely demolished.

† For this heroic act, Hora'tius was crowned on his return; his statue was erected in the temple of Vul'can; as much land was given him as a plough could surround with a furrow in one day, and a tax was voluntarily imposed to make him a present, in some degree suitable to the service he had performed.

troops, with a secretary by his side; but, mistaking the latter for the king, he stabbed him to the heart, and was immediately apprehended, and brought into the royal presence. 22. Upon Porsenna's demanding who he was, and the cause of so *heinous* an action, Mu'tius, without reserve, informed him of his country and his design, and at the same time thrusting his right hand into a fire that was burning upon the altar before him, "You see," cried he, "how little I regard the severest punishment your cruelty "can inflict. A Roman knows, not only how to act, but "how to suffer; I am not the only person you have to "fear; three hundred Roman youths, like me, have con- "spired your destruction; therefore prepare for their "attempts." 23. Porsen'na, amazed at so much intrepidity, had too noble a mind not to acknowledge merit, though found in an enemy; he, therefore, ordered him to be safely conducted back to Rome, and offered the besieged conditions of peace*. 24. These were readily accepted on their side, being neither hard nor disgraceful, except that twenty *hostages* were demanded; ten young men, and as many virgins, of the best families in Rome. 25. But even in this instance also, as if the gentler sex were resolved to be sharers in the desperate valour of the times, Cle'lia, one of the hostages, escaping from her guards, and pointing out the way to the rest of her female companions, swam over the Tiber on horseback, amidst showers of darts from the enemy, and presented herself to the consul. 26. This magistrate fearing the consequences of detaining her, sent her back; upon which Porsen'na, not to be outdone in generosity, not only gave her liberty, but permitted her to choose such of the hostages, of the opposite sex, as she should think fit to attend her. 27. On her part, she, with all the modesty of a Roman virgin, chose only such as were under fourteen,

* From this time he obtained the additional name of Scævola, or left-handed, from having lost the use of his right hand by the fire.

alleging, that their tender age was least capable of sustaining the rigours of slavery. 28. The year after the departure of Porsen'na, the Sab'ines invading the Roman territories, committed great devastations. The war that ensued was long and bloody; but at length the Sab'ines were compelled to purchase a peace, with corn, money, and the cession of part of their territory.

29. Tar'quin, by means of his son-in-law, Man'lius, once more stirred up the Latins to espouse his interest, and took the most convenient opportunity when the Plebe'ians were at variance with the senators concerning the payment of their debts *. These refused to go to war, unless their debts were remitted upon their return: so that the consuls, finding their authority insufficient, offered the people to elect a temporary magistrate, who should have absolute power, not only over all ranks of the state, but even over the laws themselves. To this the Plebe'ians readily consented, willing to give up their own power for the sake of *abridging* that of their superiors. 30. In consequence of this, Lar'tius was created the first dictator of Rome, for so was this high office called, being nominated to it by his *colleague* in the consulship. 31. Thus the people, who could not bear the very name of king, readily submitted to a magistrate possessed of much greater power; so much do the names of things mislead us, and so little is any form of government *irksome* to the people, when it *coincides* with their prejudices.

---

* Besides this, by his emissaries, he engaged the meaner sort of citizens and the slaves in a conspiracy. The former were, at an appointed time, to seize the ramparts, and the latter to murder their masters at the same instant. The gates were then to be opened to the Tar'quins, who were to enter Rome while it was yet reeking with the blood of the senators. This conspiracy was discovered to the consul by two of Tar'quin's principal agents.

Questions for Examination.

1. What form of government was substituted for the regal?
2. Who were the first consuls?
3. Did this new government appear *stable* at its commencement?
4. Was this party formidable, and who were the most remarkable of its members?
5. What share had Tarquin in this conspiracy?
6. By what means was it discovered?
7. In what unhappy situation was Brutus placed?
8. What had the criminals to say in *extenuation* of their offences?
9. What effect had this scene on the judges?
10. Did not paternal affection cause him to relent?
11. What measures did Tarquin next pursue?
12. What steps were taken to resist him?
13. What remarkable event attended the meeting of the armies?
14. Did this decide the fate of the day?
15. Did Tarquin relinquish his hopes?
16. In what manner did Porsenna attempt the restoration of Tarquin?
17. By what heroic action was the city saved?
18. Did Porsenna persevere in his attempt?
19. What was the consequence?
20. What was this act of heroism?
21. Did he succeed?
22. What followed?
23. How did Porsenna act on the occasion?
24. Were these conditions accepted?
25. What remarkable circumstance attended the delivery of the hostages?
26. How did the consul act on the occasion?
27. Whom did she choose?
28. What happened after the departure of Porsenna?
29. What measures did Tarquin next resort to?
30. What was the consequence?
31. What inference may be drawn from this?

CHAPTER X.

From the Creation of the Dictator, to the Election of the Tribunes. U.C. 255.

3. Len'ity, *s.* mildness, mercy.
5. Defec'tion, *s.* a falling away, a revolt.

Obliv'ion, *s.* forgetfulness, a general pardon for offences against a state.
8. Or'atory, *s.* a fine and persuasive manner of speaking.
Ag'gravated, *v.* heightened, represented as worse than they really were.
10. Aver'red, *v.* declared positively.
11. Ob'vious, *a.* easily discovered, clear.
13. Annul'ling, *part.* abolishing, making void.
Valid'ity, *s.* force, effect.

1. LAR'TIUS being created dictator *, entered upon his office, surrounded with lictors and all the ensigns of ancient royalty; and, seated upon a throne in the midst of the people, ordered the levies to be made in the manner of the kings of Rome. 2. The populace looked with terror upon a magistrate whom they had invested with uncontrollable power, and each went peaceably to range himself under his respective standard. 3. Thus going forth to oppose the enemy, he, after concluding a truce for a year, returned with his army, and, in six months, laid down the dictatorship, with the reputation of having exercised it with blameless *lenity* †.

4. But, though for this time the people submitted to be led forth, they yet resolved to free themselves from the yoke; and, though they could not get their grievances ‡ redressed, yet they determined to fly from those whom they could not move to compassion. The grievances, therefore, continuing, they resolved to quit a city which gave them no shelter, and to form a new establishment without its limits. They, therefore, under the conduct of

* The power of the dictator was absolute; he could of his own will make peace or war, levy forces, lead them forth, disband them, and even dispense with the existing laws at his pleasure, without consulting the senate.

† At the expiration of the truce with the Latins, Posthu'mius, at that time dictator, marched against them, obtained a complete victory over them at the Lake Regil'lus, and concluded an advantageous peace. About this time died Tar'quin, which put an end to any farther contests for the crown.

‡ The principal of these grievances, was the intolerable severity of creditors, who seized their debtors as slaves, notwithstanding many of them had fought and bled for their country.

a Plebe'ian, named Sicin'ius Bellu'tus, retired to a mountain, hence called the Mons Sacer*, within three miles of Rome.

5. Upon the news of this *defection*, the city was filled with tumult and consternation: those who wished well to the people made every attempt to scale the walls, in order to join it†. 6. The senate was not less agitated than the rest; some were for violent measures, and repelling force by force; others were of opinion that gentler arts were to be used, and that even a victory over such enemies would be worse than a defeat. At length, it was resolved to send a messenger, entreating the people to return home, and declare their grievances; promising, at the same time, an *oblivion* of all that had passed.

7. This message not succeeding, Mene'nius Agrip'pa, one of the wisest and best of the senators, was of opinion, that the demands of the people were to be complied with. It was resolved, therefore, to enter into a treaty, and to make them such offers as should induce them to return. 8. Ten commissioners were deputed. The dignity and popularity of the ambassadors procured them a very respectable reception among the soldiers, and a conference began. They employed all their *oratory*; while Sicin'ius and Lu'cius Ju'nius, who were speakers for the soldiery, *aggravated* their distresses with all that masculine eloquence which is the child of nature.

9. The conference had now continued for a long time, when Mene'nius Agrip'pa, who had been originally a Plebe'ian himself, a shrewd man, and who, consequently, knew what kind of eloquence was most likely to please the people, addressed them with that celebrated fable which is so finely told by Liv'y. 10. "In times of old, when every part of the body could think for itself, and

---

* Sacred mountain.

† The gates had been shut by order of the senate, to prevent farther defection.

each had a separate will of his own, they all, with common consent, resolved to revolt against the belly. They knew no reason, they said, why they should toil from morning till night in its service, while the belly, in the mean time, lay at his ease in the midst of them all, and indolently grew fat upon their labours: accordingly, one and all, they agreed to befriend it no more. The feet vowed they would no longer carry the load; the hands vowed they would not feed it; and the teeth *averred* they would not chew its food. Thus resolved, they all, for some time, shewed their spirit, and kept their word; but soon found, that instead of mortifying the belly by these means, they only undid themselves; they languished for a while, and perceived, when too late, that it was owing to the belly, that they had strength to work, or courage to mutiny."

11. This fable, the application of which is *obvious*, had an instantaneous effect upon the people. They unanimously cried out, that Agrip'pa should lead them back to Rome; and were making preparations to follow him, when Lu'cius Ju'nius withheld them; alleging, that though they ought gratefully to acknowledge the kind offers of the senate, yet they had no safeguard against their future resentments; that therefore, it was necessary, for the security of the people, to have certain officers created annually from among themselves, who should have power to give redress to such of them as should be injured, and plead the cause of the community. 12. The people, who are generally of opinion with the last speaker, highly applauded this proposal, with which however the commissioners had not power to comply; they, therefore, sent to Rome to take the instructions of the senate; who, distracted with divisions among themselves, and harassed by complaints from without, were resolved to have peace, at whatever price it should be obtained; accordingly, as

if with one voice, they consented to the creation of these new officers, who were called *Tribunes* of the People.*

13. The Tribunes of the people were at first five in number, though afterwards their body was increased by five more. They were always annually elected by the people, and almost always from their body. They at first had their seats placed before the doors of the senate house, and, when called in, they were to examine every decree, *annulling* it by the word "*Veto, I forbid it;*" or confirming it by signing the letter *T*, which gave it *validity.*

14. This new office being thus instituted, all things were adjusted both on the one side and the other, and the people, after having sacrificed to the gods of the mountain, returned back once more in triumph to Rome.

Questions for Examination.

1. What were the first acts of the dictator?
2. Were his decrees peaceably obeyed?
3. What were his exploits?
4. Were the discontents of the people entirely appeased?
5. How was the news of this defection received?
6. What was its effect on the senate?
7. Was this offer accepted?
8. In what manner was this done, and how were they received?
9. What was the result of this conference?
10. Repeat this fable.
11. What effect did this apology produce?
12. How was this obstacle removed?
13. Who were the tribunes of the people, and what was their authority?
14. Did this new regulation answer the desired end?

---

* They were called tribunes, because chosen by the tribes. The first tribunes were L. Ju'nius Bru'tus, C. Sicin'nius Bellu'tus, Pub'lius Licin'ius, C. Licin'ius, and Sp. Icil'ius Ruga.

CHAPTER XI.

SECT. I.

From the Creation of the Tribunes, to the Appointment of the Decemviri.—U. C. 260.

2. Patri'cians, *s.* (pro. *pa-trish-ans,*) noblemen.
Aboli'tion, *s.* the act of destroying or extinguishing any thing, so that no part shall remain.
5. Adja'cent, *a.* lying near, neighbouring.
Intrepid'ity, *s.* courage, boldness.
Au'ditors, *s.* hearers.
6. Embez'zled, *v.* appropriated to his own use.
8. An'tium, *s.* a maritime city of the Vol'sci, in Italy, which sustained a war against the Romans for 200 years, and was at last taken by Camil'lus.
Ex'ile, *s.* banishment.
Vol'sci, *s.* the people of La'tium, in Italy.
11. Infrac'tion, *s.* a breaking.
13. Lev'ies, *s.* the enlisting of soldiers.
Allie's, *s.* nations united in friendship.
18. Conjur'ing, *part.* earnestly entreating, or adjuring in the name of God.
19. Pon'tiffs, *s.* the highest order of priests.
21. Adjura'tion, *s.* a solemn entreaty.
22. Em'bassy, *s.* a message of business between princes and states.
Ma'tron, *s.* an elderly lady or old woman, a mother.
23. Tribu'nal, *s.* the seat of a judge.
27. Despot'ic, *a.* absolute in power, able to do any thing by his own will alone.
Note. Ambusca'de, *s.* the place where an enemy is concealed.

1. DURING the late separation, all tillage had been entirely neglected, and a famine was the consequence the ensuing season. 2. The senate did all that lay in their power to remedy the distress; but the people, pinched with want, and willing to throw the blame on any but themselves, ascribed the whole of their distress to the avarice of the *patricians;* who, having purchased all the corn, as was alleged, intended to indemnify themselves for the *abolition* of debts, by selling it out to great ad-

vantage. 3. But plenty soon after appeased them for a time. A fleet of ships, laden with corn, from Sicily, once more raised their spirits.

4. But Coriola'nus * incurred their resentment, by insisting that the corn should not be distributed till the grievances of the senate were removed. For this, the Tribunes summoned him to a trial before the people. 5. When the appointed day was come, all persons were filled with the greatest expectations, and a vast concourse from the *adjacent* country assembled and filled the forum. Coriola'nus presented himself before the people, with a degree of *intrepidity* that merited better fortune. His graceful person, his persuasive eloquence, and the cries of those whom he had saved from the enemy, inclined the *auditors* to relent. 6. But, being unable to answer what was alleged against him to the satisfaction of the people, and utterly confounded with a new charge, of having *embezzled* the plunder of *Antium*, the Tribunes immediately took the votes, and Coriola'nus was condemned to perpetual *exile*.

7. This sentence against their bravest defender, struck the senate with sorrow, consternation, and regret. Coriola'nus alone, in the midst of the tumult, seemed an unconcerned spectator. 8. He returned home, followed by the lamentations of the most respectable senators and citizens, to take leave of his wife, his children, and his mother Vetu'ria. Thus recommending all to the care of Heaven, he left the city, without followers or fortune, to take refuge with Tul'lus At'tius †, a man of great power among

* This man's name was originally Ca'ius Mar'cius. He received the surname of Coriola'nus as a reward for having, by his valour, occasioned the taking of Cori'oli, the capital of the Vol'sci. Previous to the occurrence mentioned in the text, he had been condemned to death by the tribunes, but saved by the interference of his friends.

† Tul'lus At'tius was a most determined enemy to the Romans, and to Corio'lanus in particular, for the share he had in humbling the power of the Vol'sci. It was probable more from a hope of revenge, by means of this valiant soldier, than any noble principle, that he offered him his countenance and protection.

the *Vol'sci*, who took him under his protection, and espoused his quarrel.

9. Some pretence was necessary to induce the Vol'sci to break the league which had been made with Rome; and, for this purpose, Tul'lus sent many of his citizens thither, apparently for the purpose of seeing some games at that time celebrating; but gave the senate private information, that the strangers had dangerous intentions of burning the city. 10. This had the desired effect; the senate issued an order, that all strangers, whoever they were, should depart from Rome before sun-set. 11. This order Tul'lus represented to his countrymen as an *infraction* of the treaty, and procured an embassy to Rome, complaining of the breach, and re-demanding all the territories belonging to the Vol'sci, of which they had been violently dispossessed; declaring war in case of refusal. This message, however, was treated by the senate with contempt. 12. War being in consequence declared on both sides, Coriola'nus and Tul'lus were made generals of the Vol'sci, and accordingly invaded the Roman territories; ravaging and laying waste all such lands as belonged to the ple-be'ians, but letting those of the senators remain untouched. 13. In the mean time, the *levies* went on but slowly at Rome; the two consuls, who were re-elected by the people, seemed but little skilled in war, and even feared to encounter a general whom they knew to be their superior in the field. The *allies* also shewed their fears, and slowly brought in their succours: so that Coriola'nus continued to take their towns one after the other. 14. Fortune followed him in every expedition, and he was now so famous for his victories, that the Vol'sci left their towns defenceless to follow him into the field. The very soldiers of his colleague's army came over to him, and would acknowledge no other general. 15. Thus finding himself unopposed in the field, and at the head of a numerous army, he at length invested the city of Rome itself, fully resolved

to besiege it. 16. It was then the senate and the people unanimously agreed to send deputies to him, with proposals for his restoration, in case he would draw off his army. 17. Coriola'nus received these proposals at the head of his principal officers, and, with the sternness of a general that was to give the law, refused their offers *.

18. Another embassy was now sent, *conjuring* him not to exact from his native city aught but what became Romans to grant. Coriola'nus, however, naturally severe, still persisted in his former demands, and granted them only three days for deliberation. 19. In this exigence, all that was left to be done, was another deputation still more solemn than either of the former, composed of the *pontiffs*, priests, and augurs. These, clothed in their habits of ceremony, and with a grave and mournful deportment, issued from the city, and entered the camp of the conqueror: but all in vain, they found him severe and inflexible.

20. When the people saw them return without success, they began to give up the commonwealth as lost. Their temples were filled with old men, with women, and children, who, prostrate at the altars, put up their ardent prayers for the preservation of their country. Nothing was to be heard but anguish and lamentation; nothing to be seen but scenes of affright and distress. 21. At length, it was suggested to them, that what could not be effected by the intercession of the senate, or the *adjuration* of the priests, might be brought about by the tears of a wife, or the commands of a mother. 22. This deputation seemed to be approved by all, and even the senate themselves gave it the sanction of their authority. Vetu'ria, the mother of

* "Is a bare re-establishment in Rome," said he, "a sufficient satisfaction for the affronts I have received? Can there be any safety for me, while a Sicin'nius or a De'cius is able to arm the populace against my life? No, Rome is an unnatural mother, who has cast off a son that was useful to her, and zealous for her glory. She shall soon know, by the effects of my resentment, whose cause it is that the gods espouse."

Coriola'nus, at first hesitated to undertake so pious a work, knowing the inflexible temper of her son, and fearing only to shew his disobedience in a new point of light, by his rejecting the commands of a parent; however, she at last undertook the *embassy*, and set forward from the city, accompanied by many of the principal *matrons* of Rome, with Volum'nia his wife and his two children. 23. Coriola'nus, who at a distance discovered this mournful train of females, was resolved to give them a denial, and called his officers round him to be witnesses of his resolution; but, when told that his mother and his wife were among the number, he instantly came down from his *tribunal*, to meet and embrace them. 24. At first, the women's tears and embraces took away the power of words, and the rough soldier himself, hardy as he was, could not refrain from sharing their distress. Coriola'nus now seemed much agitated by contending passions; while his mother, who saw him moved, seconded her words by the most persuasive eloquence, that of tears: his wife and children hung around him, entreating for protection and pity: while the female train, her companions, added their lamentations, and deplored their own and their country's distress. 25. Coriola'nus, for a moment, was silent, feeling the strong conflict between honour and inclination; at length, as if roused from a dream, he flew to raise his mother, who had fallen at his feet, crying out, "O, my mother, thou hast saved Rome, but lost thy son." He accordingly gave orders to draw off the army, pretending to the officers, that the city was too strong to be taken. 26. Tul'lus, who had long envied Coriola'nus, was not remiss in aggravating the lenity of his conduct to his countrymen. Upon their return, Coriola'nus is said to have been slain by an insurrection of the people, and honourably buried, after a late and ineffectual repentance.

27. Great and many were the public rejoicings at

Rome, upon the retreat of the Vol'scian army*; but they were clouded soon after by the intrigues of Spu'rius Cas'sius, who, wanting to make himself *despotic*, by means of the people, was found guilty of a number of crimes, all tending towards altering the constitution; and was thrown headlong from the Tarpei'an rock†, by those very people whose interests he had endeavoured to extend‡.

Questions for Examination.

1. What were the consequences of the late separation?
2. What measures were taken to remedy these misfortunes, and to whom was the blame of them attributed?
3. What happened to remove the popular discontent?
4. What circumstance raised a fresh commotion?
5. Did Coriolanus obey the summons?
6. What was the issue of the trial?
7. To what sensations did this sentence give rise?
8. What circumstance attended his departure?
9. In what manner did he commence his revenge?
10. Was this information believed?
11. What use did Tullus make of this order?
12. To whom was the conduct of the war committed?
13. Was this invasion vigorously opposed?
14. Was Coriolanus uniformly successful?
15. What did this good fortune induce him to undertake?
16. What measures did the senate adopt on this emergency?
17. How were these proposals received?
18. Were they repeated?

---

* The senate commanded a temple to be erected on the spot where the interview between Coriola'nus and his mother took place, which saved Rome; and dedicated it to maternal influence.

† Tarpei'an Rock, or Tarpei'us Mons, a hill at Rome, about 80 feet in perpendicular height, whence the Romans threw down their condemned criminals.

‡ Soon after the death of Cas'sius, the Vein'tes made incursions almost to the walls of Rome. As the discontents, respecting the Agra'rian law, and the low state of the treasury, rendered the senate incapable of effectually resisting them, the noble family of the Fa'bii, voluntarily offered themselves for this service. These, with their clients, amounted to above 4000 men. They fortified themselves in a castle, called Crem'era; and, for some time, proved themselves able defenders of their country; but, having been enticed into an *ambuscade*, they were all destroyed.

19. What was the next step adopted?
20. Did the Romans boldly resolve to oppose force by force?
21. What new expedient was proposed?
22. Was this proposal adopted?
23. What was the conduct of Coriolanus on the occasion?
24. Describe this interview?
25. What was the result?
26. Did the Volscians approve of this measure?
27. What followed this happy deliverance?

SECT. II.

1. Ci'ted, *v.* summoned.
7. Ex'igence, *s.* pressing necessity, critical situation.
8. De'file, *s.* narrow pass, a kind of lane, where but few men can march abreast.
   E'gress, *s.* passage out of a place.
9. Hem'med, *part.* surrounded.
11. Consterna'tion, *s.* excessive fear.
17. Entrench'ments, *s.* fortifications composed of banks and ditches.
18. Cessa'tion, *s.* a respite, a stop, an interval.
21. Inev'itable, *a.* not to be escaped, certain.
    Prof'fers, *s.* offers made.
    Com'petence, *s.* a moderate sufficiency.
22. Ostenta'tion, *s.* a boast, outward show.
26. Bal'lotting Urns, *s.* urns in which the lots were contained which were to decide any proposed question.

1. THE year following, the two consuls of the former year, Man'lius and Fa'bius, were *cited* by the tribunes to appear before the people. The Agra'rian law, which had been proposed some time before, for equally dividing the lands of the commonwealth among the people, was the object invariably pursued, and they were accused of having made unjustifiable delays in putting it off.

2. The Agra'rian law was a grant the senate could not think of making to the people. The consuls therefore, made many delays and excuses; till at length they were once more obliged to have recourse to a dictator *; and

* Cincinna'tus was chosen consul only, in the room of Pub'lius Vale'rius, who died during his consulship. He was afterwards appointed dictator, in the war with the Æ'qui and Vol'sci.—*Editor.*

they fixed upon Quin'tus Cincinna'tus, a man who had, for some time, given up all views of ambition, and retired to his little farm, where the deputies of the senate found him holding the plough, and dressed in the mean attire of a labouring husbandman. 3. He appeared but little elevated with the addresses of ceremony, and the pompous habits they brought him; and, upon declaring to him the senate's pleasure, he testified rather a concern that his aid should be wanted. He naturally preferred the charms of a country retirement, to the fatiguing splendours of office, and only said to his wife, as they were leading him away, "I fear, my Attil'ia, that for this year, our little fields must remain unsown." 4. Then, taking a tender leave, he departed for the city, where both parties were strongly enflamed against each other. However, he resolved to side with neither; but, by a strict attention to the interests of his country, instead of gaining the confidence of faction, to seize the esteem of all. 5. Thus, by threats and well timed submission, he prevailed upon the tribunes to put off their law for a time, and conducted himself so as to be a terror to the multitude whenever they refused to enlist; and their greatest encourager whenever their submission deserved it. 6. Having, by these means, restored that tranquillity to the people, which he so much loved himself, he again gave up the splendours of ambition, to enjoy it with a greater relish in his little farm.

7. Cincinna'tus had not long retired from his office, U. C. 295. when a fresh *exigence* of the state once more required his assistance; and Æ'qui and the Vol'sci who, though always worsted, were still for renewing the war, made new inroads into the territories of Rome. 8. Minu'tius, one of the consuls who succeeded Cincinna'tus, was sent to oppose them; but being naturally timid, and rather more afraid of being conquered than desirous of victory, his army was driven into a *defile* between two

mountains, from which, except through the enemy, there was no *egress*. 9. This, however, the Æ'qui had the precaution to fortify, by which the Roman army was so *hemmed* in on every side, that nothing remained but submission to the enemy, famine, or immediate death. 10. Some knights, who found means of getting away privately through the enemy's camp, were the first that brought the account of this disaster to Rome. 11. Nothing could exceed the *consternation* of all ranks of people when informed of it: the senate at first thought of the other consul; but not having sufficient experience of his abilities, they unanimously turned their eyes upon Cincin'natus, and resolved to make him dictator. 12. Cincin'natus, the only person on whom Rome could now place her whole dependence, was found, as before, by the messengers of the senate, labouring in his field with cheerful industry. 15. He was at first astonished at the ensigns of unbounded power, with which the deputies came to invest him; but still more at the approach of the principal of the senate, who came out to attend him. 14. A dignity so unlooked for, however, had no effect upon the simplicity or integrity of his manners; and, being now possessed of absolute power, and called upon to nominate his master of the horse, he chose a poor man named Tarquit'ius, one who, like himself, despised riches, when they led to dishonour. Thus the saving a great nation was devolved upon a husbandman taken from the plough, and an obscure centinel found among the dregs of the army *. 15. Upon entering the city, the dictator put on a serene look, and entreated all those who were able to bear arms, to repair before sun-set to the Cam'pus

* Though Tarquit'ius was poor, and served as a private centinel, he was a patrician by birth, and of uncommon valour. Cincinna'tus, therefore, did justice to his merit, and notwithstanding his poverty, raised him to that high station.

Mar'tius (the place where the levies were made) with necessary arms, and provisions for five days. 16. He put himself at the head of these, and, marching all night with great expedition, arrived early the next day within sight of the enemy. Upon his approach, he ordered his soldiers to raise a loud shout, to apprise the consul's army of the relief that was at hand. 17. The Æ'qui were not a little amazed when they saw themselves between two enemies; but still more when they perceived Cincinna'tus making the strongest *entrenchments* beyond them, to prevent their escape, and enclosing them as they had enclosed the consul. 18. To prevent this, a furious combat ensued; but the Æ'qui, being attacked on both sides, and unable longer to resist or fly, begged a *cessation* of arms. 19. They offered the dictator his own terms; he gave them their lives, and obliged them in token of servitude, to pass under the yoke, which was two spears set upright, and another across, in the form of a gallows, beneath which the vanquished were to march. Their captains and generals he made prisoners of war, being reserved to adorn his triumph. 20. As for the plunder of the enemy's camp, that he gave entirely up to his own soldiers, without reserving any part for himself, or permitting those of the delivered army to have a share. 21. Thus having rescued a Roman army from *inevitable* destruction, having defeated a powerful enemy, having taken and fortified their city, and still more, having refused any part of the spoil, he resigned his dictatorship, after having enjoyed it but fourteen days. The senate would have enriched him, but he declined their *proffers*, choosing to retire once more to his farm and his cottage, content with *competence* and fame *.

* About this time, the number of the tribunes was increased from five to ten.

22. But this repose from foreign invasion did not lessen the tumults of the city within. The clamours for the Agra'rian law still continued, and still more fiercely, when Sic'cius Denta'tus, a plebe'ian, advanced in years, but of an admirable person and military deportment, came forward to enumerate his hardships and his merits. This old soldier made no scruple of extolling the various achievements of his youth; indeed his merits more than supported his *ostentation*. 23. He had served his country in the wars forty years; he had been an officer thirty, first a centurion, and then a tribune; he had fought one hundred and twenty battles, in which, by the force of his single arm, he had saved a multitude of lives; he had gained fourteen civic *, three mural †, and eight golden crowns; besides eighty-three chains, sixty bracelets, eighteen gilt spears, and twenty-three horse-trappings, whereof nine were for killing the enemy in single combat; moreover, he had received forty-five wounds in front, and none behind. 24. These were his honours; yet, notwithstanding all these, he had never received any share of those lands which were won from the enemy, but continued to drag on a life of poverty and contempt, while others were possessed of those very territories which his valour had won, without any merit to deserve them, or ever having contributed to the conquest ‡. 25. A case of so much hardship had a strong effect upon the multitude; they unanimously demanded that the law might be passed, and that such merit should not go unrewarded.

---

* A civic crown, among the Romans, was made of oaken leaves, and given to those who had saved the life of a citizen.

† A mural crown was an honorary reward, given by the ancient Romans to the soldiers who first scaled the walls of the enemy's city.

‡ "These military toys," said he, "are the only rewards I have hitherto received. No lands, no share of the conquered countries. Usurpers, without any title but that of a patrician extraction, possess them. Is this to be endured? Shall they alone possess the fruits of our conquests? The purchase of our blood?"

It was in vain that some of the senators rose up to speak against it, their voices were drowned by the cries of the people. 26. When reason, therefore, could no longer be heard, passion, as usual succeeded; and the young patricians, running furiously into the throng, broke the *balloting urns*, and dispersed the multitude that offered to oppose them. 27. For this they were some time after fined by the tribunes*; their resolution, however, for the present, put off the Agrarian law.

Questions for Examination.

1. What happened the following year?
2. Was this law passed, and what measures did the senate adopt?
3. What effect had this new dignity on Cincinnatus?
4. How did he conduct himself?
5. Were his measures successful?
6. Did Cincinnatus continue in office?
7. Was he permitted to continue in retirement?
8. What was the exigence that required his return to office?
9. What prevented the Romans from forcing their way through?
10. How was this news received at Rome?
11. Whom did they resolve to appoint dictator?
12. How was Cincinnatus employed when the messenger arrived?
13. What was his behaviour on the occasion?
14. How was he affected by this exaltation?
15. What were his first measures?
16. What followed?
17. How were the enemy affected by his approach?
18. What was the consequence?
19. What were the terms of peace?
20. What became of the plunder?
21. What were his rewards for this important service?
22. Was domestic tranquillity the consequence of foreign conquest?
23. What were these achievements?
24. How was he rewarded?
25. What was the consequence of his appeal to the people?
26. Did the people obtain their demand?
27. How was this outrage punished?

---

* They were afterwards reimbursed the amount of their fines by the voluntary contributions of the senate.

CHAPTER II.

SECT. I.

From the Creation of the Decemviri, to the Extinction of that Office.—U. C. 302.

1. Fluc'tuating, *part.* changing, wavering.
Respire, *v.* to breathe.
Ar'bitrary, *a.* tyrannic, despotic, without regard to any law.
4. Depop'ulated, *v.* unpeopled, laid waste.
9. Decem'viri, *s.* (from the Latin words *decem*, ten, and *viri*, men,) ten magistrates, chosen annually at Rome, to govern the commonwealth, and to make laws.
12. Rapa'city, *s.* covetousness, extortion.
13. Proscrip'tion, *s.* confiscation of goods, a doom to death.
17. Depo'sed, *v.* removed from office.
21. Achil'les, *s.* (pro. *Akilles*), the son of Pe'leus, king of Thrace, a Grecian hero, who signalized himself at the siege of Troy, and was killed by Paris with an arrow.
29. Detest'able, *a.* hateful, odious.

1. THE commonwealth of Rome had now, for nearly sixty years, been *fluctuating* between the contending orders that composed it, till at length, each side, as if weary, was willing to *respire* a while from the mutual exertions of its claims. The citizens, of every rank, began to complain of the *arbitrary* decisions of their magistrates, and wished to be guided by a written body of laws, which, being known, might prevent wrongs, as well as punish them. 2. In this both the senate and the people concurred, as hoping that such laws would put an end to the commotions that so long had harassed the state. 3. It was thereupon agreed that ambassadors should be sent to the Greek cities in Italy, and to Athens, to bring home such laws from thence, as, by experience, had been found most equitable and useful. For this purpose three senators, Posthu'mus, Sulpi'cius, and

Man'lius, were fixed upon, and gallies assigned to convoy them, agreeably to the majesty of the Roman people. 4. While they were upon this commission abroad, a dreadful plague *depopulated* the city at home, and supplied the interval of their absence with other anxiety than that of wishes for their return. 5. In about a year the plague ceased, and the ambassadors returned, bringing home a body of laws, collected from the most civilized states of Greece and Italy, which, being afterwards formed into ten tables, and two more being added, made that celebrated code called The Laws of the Twelve Tables *.

6. The ambassadors were no sooner returned, than the tribunes required that a body of men should be chosen to digest their new laws into proper form, and to give weight to the execution of them. 7. After long debate, whether this choice should not be made from the people, as well as the patricians, it was at last agreed that ten of the principal senators should be elected, whose power, continuing for a year, should be equal to that of kings and consuls, and that without any appeal. 8. Thus the whole constitution of the state at once took a new form, and a dreadful experiment was about to be tried, of governing one nation by laws formed from the manners and customs of another.

9. These *Decemviri* being now invested with absolute power, agreed to take the reins of government by turns, each to administer justice for a day. 10. For the first year they wrought with extreme application: and their work being finished, it was expected that they would be content to give up their office; but, having known the charms of power, they were unwilling to resign: they pretended that some laws were yet wanting to complete

---

* These laws were engraven on brass, and hung up in the most conspicuous part of the Forum.

their design, and entreated the senate for a continuance in office; which request was readily granted.

11. But they soon threw off the mask of moderation, and, regardless of the approbation of the senate or the people, resolved to continue, against all order, in the decemvirate. 12. A conduct so tyrannical produced discontents, and these were as sure to produce fresh acts of tyranny. The city was become almost a desert, with respect to all who had any thing to lose, and the *rapacity* of the decemvirs was then only discontinued when they wanted fresh subjects to exercise it upon. 13. In this state of slavery, *proscription*, and mutual distrust, not one citizen was found to strike for his country's freedom; these tyrants continued to rule without controul, being constantly guarded, not by the lictors alone, but by a numerous crowd of dependants, clients, and even patricians, whom their vices had confederated round them.

14. In this gloomy situation of the state, the Æqui and Vol'sci, those constant enemies of the Romans, renewed their incursions, and, resolving to profit by the intestine divisions of the people, advanced within about ten miles of Rome.

15. The decemviri being in possession of all the military as well as of the civil power, divided their army into three parts; whereof one continued with Ap'pius in the city, to keep it in awe; the other two were commanded by his colleagues, and were led, one against the Æ'qui, and the other against the Vol'sci. 16. The Roman soldiers had now adopted a method of punishing the generals whom they disliked, by suffering themselves to be vanquished in the field. They put it in practice upon this occasion, and shamefully abandoned their camp upon the approach of the enemy. 17. Never was victorious news more joyfully received at Rome, than the tidings of this defeat; the generals, as is always the case, were blamed for the treachery of their men; some demanded

that they should be *deposed*, others cried out for a dictator to lead the troops to conquest. 18. Among the rest, old Sic'cius Denta'tus, the tribune, spoke his sentiments with his usual openness; and, treating the generals with contempt, pointed out the faults of their discipline in the camp, and their conduct in the field. 19. Ap'pius, in the mean time, was not remiss in observing the disposition of the people. Denta'tus in particular was marked out for vengeance; and, under pretence of doing him particular honour, he was appointed legate, and put at the head of the supplies which were sent from Rome, to reinforce the army. 20. The office of legate was held sacred among the Romans, as in it was united the authority of a general, with the reverence due to the priesthood. 21. Denta'tus, no way suspecting the design, went to the camp with *alacrity*, where he was received with all the external marks of respect. But the generals soon found means of indulging their desire of revenge. He was appointed at the head of a hundred men to go and examine a more commodious place for encampment, as he had very candidly assured the commanders, that their present situation was wrong. 23. The soldiers, however, who were given as his attendants, were assassins; wretches who had long been ministers of the vengeance of the decemviri, and who now engaged to murder him, though with all those apprehensions, which his reputation (for he was called the Roman *Achil'les*) might be supposed to inspire. 24. With these designs they led him into the hollow bosom of a retired mountain, where they began to set upon him behind. 25. Denta'tus too late perceived the treachery of the Decemviri, and was resolved to sell his life as dearly as he could; he therefore set his back against a rock, and defended himself against those who pressed most closely. Though now grown old, he had still the remains of his former valour, and, with his own hand, killed no less than fifteen of the

assailants, and wounded thirty. 26. The assassins now, therefore, terrified at his amazing bravery, showered their javelins upon him at a distance, all which he received in his shield with undaunted resolution. 27. The combat, though so unequal in numbers, was managed, for some time with doubtful success, till at length his assailants bethought themselves of ascending the rock, against which he stood, and pouring down stones upon him from above. 28. This succeeded; the old soldier fell beneath their united efforts; after having shewn, by his death, that he owed to his fortitude, and not his fortune, that he had come off so many times victorious. 29. The decemviri pretended to join in the general sorrow for so brave a man, and decreed him a funeral with the first military honours; but their pretended grief, compared with their known hatred, only rendered them still more *detestable* to the people *.

Questions for Examination.

1. What was at this time the state of the Roman Commonwealth?
2. Was this assented to by the nation at large?
3. What means were adopted for this purpose?
4. What happened during their absence?
5. How long did this calamity last?
6. What steps were taken on the return of the ambassadors?
7. Who were chosen for this purpose?
8. Was this proceeding an important one?
9. In what manner did the decemviri govern?

---

* Previous to this, and soon after his arrival at the camp, an attempt had been made to cut him off, which failed, from his superior bravery and military skill. The consul Romil'rus, being about to engage the enemy in the plain, gave it in charge to Denta'tus to attack their camp, situate on an almost inaccessible rock, but allotted him a force utterly inadequate to the attempt. Denta'tus remonstrated, but at length obeyed, and, contrary to general expectation, took the camp, and, falling on the rear of the main army, contributed greatly to the victory. For this base attempt Romil'ius and Vetu'rius were fined by the senate. (Liv. 1, 3. c. 31).

10. How did they discharge the duties of their office?
11. Did they continue in the conscientious discharge of their duties?
12. What was the consequence of this conduct?
13. Was no patriot to be found bold enough to be a champion in his country's cause?
14. What added to the miseries of the Romans?
15. What steps were taken to oppose them?
16. What was the conduct of the Roman soldiers on this occasion?
17. How was this news received at Rome?
18. Who appeared most conspicuous on this occasion?
19. How was this honest sincerity received?
20. Was the office of legate a respectable one?
21. Did Dentatus suspect treachery?
22. What plan of revenge was adopted?
23. What was the character of his attendants?
24. How did they commence their base design?
25. Was Dentatus aware of their treachery, and what resistance did he make?
26. Did the assassins boldly engage the hero?
27. What new method of attack did they attempt?
28. Was this plan successful?
29. What was the conduct of the decemvir on this occasion?

SECT. II.

1. Atro'cious, *a.* horrid, wicked.
4. Centu'rion, *s.* an officer who commanded a hundred men.
   Espou'se, *v.* to marry.
5. Infrin'ge, *v.* to violate, to break.
   Enac'tor, *s.* the framer or passer of a law.
10. Cred'ible, *a.* worthy of belief.
11. Pater'nity, *s.* the relationship of a father.
14. Sedi"tion, *s.* tumult, commotion.
18. Noto'rious, *a.* publicly known.
22. Acquies'ce, *v.* to submit to, to yield.
29. Predispo'sed, *part.* disposed before.
30. Quell, *v.* to subdue, to put down.
31. Incen'sed, *a.* enraged.
33. Ignomin'iously, *ad.* with marks of contempt, disgracefully.
    Ul'timately, *ad.* in the end.
    Catas'trophe, *s.* event, fatal conclusion.

1. But a transaction still more *atrocious* than the former, served to inspire the citizens with a resolution

to break all measures of obedience, so as at last to restore freedom *.

2. Ap'pius, sitting one day on his tribunal to dispense justice, saw a maiden of exquisite beauty, aged about fifteen, passing to one of the public schools, attended by a matron, her nurse. The charms of the damsel, heightened by all the innocence of virgin modesty, caught his attention, and fired his heart. The day following, as she past, he found her still more beautiful, and his breast still more inflamed. 3. He now therefore resolved to obtain the gratification of his passion, whatever should be the consequence, and found means to inform himself of the virgin's name and family. 4. Her name was Virgin'ia; she was the daughter of Virgin'ius, a *centurion*, then with the army in the field, and had been contracted to Icil'ius, formerly a tribune of the people, who had agreed to marry her at the end of the present campaign.

5. Ap'pius, at first, resolved to break off this match, and to *espouse* her himself; but the laws of the Twelve Tables had forbidden the patricians to intermarry with the plebeians, and he could not *infringe* these, as he was the *enactor* of them †. 6. Nothing therefore remained but a criminal enjoyment, which, as he was long used to the indulgence of his passions, he resolved to obtain. 7. After having vainly tried to corrupt the fidelity of her nurse, he had recourse to another expedient, still more wicked. He fixed upon one Clau'dius, who had long been the minister of his pleasures, to assert

* The Decemviri had, by this time, so strengthened themselves, as they supposed, by filling all the offices of state with their creatures, and by mutually supporting each other, that they ventured to throw off the mask, and announce their intention of perpetuating themselves in the government. Accordingly each Decemviri appeared in the Forum, preceded by twelve lictors bearing the fasces and securis, a sure prognostic of tyranny and injustice. (Liv. iii. c. 38.)

† Besides this, he was already married; and though divorces were allowed by the law, yet no instance of the kind had yet occurred.

that the beautiful maid was his slave, and to refer the cause to Ap'pius's tribunal for decision. 8. Clau'dius behaved exactly according to his instructions; for, taking with him a band of ruffians like himself, he entered into the public school, where Virginia was found among her female companions, and seizing upon her, under pretence that she was the daughter of one of his slaves, was dragging her away, when he was prevented by the people, drawn together by her cries. 9. At length, after the first heat of opposition was over, he led the weeping virgin to the tribunal of Ap'pius, and there plausibly exposed his pretensions. 10. Clau'dius asserted that she was born in his house, of a female slave, who sold her to the wife of Virgin'ius, who had been childless. That he had *credible* evidences to prove the truth of what he had advanced; but that, until they could come together, it was but reasonable the slave should be delivered into his custody, he being her proper master. 11. Ap'pius pretended to be struck with the justice of his claim; he observed, that if the reputed father himself were present, he might indeed be willing to delay the delivery of the maid, but that it was not lawful for him, in the present case, to detain her from her master. He therefore adjudged her to Clau'dius, as his slave, to be kept by him till Virgin'ius should arrive, and be able to prove his *paternity*. 12. This sentence was received with loud clamours and reproaches by the multitude, particularly by the women, who came round the innocent Virgin'ia, desirous to protect her from the judge's fury; while Icil'ius, her lover, boldly opposed the decree, and obliged Clau'dius to take refuge under the tribunal of the decemvir. 13. All things now threatened an open insurrection, when Ap'pius, fearing the event, thought proper to suspend his judgment, under pretence of waiting the arrival of Virgin'ius, who was then about eleven miles from Rome, with the army. 14. The day follow-

ing was fixed for the trial. In the mean time Ap'pius privately sent letters to the general to confine Virgin'ius, as his arrival in town might only serve to kindle *sedition* among the people. 15. These letters *, however, being intercepted by the centurion's friends, they sent him a full relation of the design laid against the liberty and the honour of his only daughter. 16. Virgin'ius, upon this, pretending the death of a near relation, got permission to leave the camp, and hastened to Rome, inspired with indignation and revenge. 17. Accordingly, the next day, to the astonishment of Ap'pius, he appeared before the tribunal, leading his weeping daughter by the hand, both of them habited in deep mourning. 18. Clau'dius, the accuser, began by making his demand. Virgin'ius next spoke in turn: he represented, that his wife married young; had early borne a child; had been seen pregnant by numbers. That, if he had had intentions of adopting a supposititious child, he should have fixed upon a boy rather than a girl; that it was *notorious* to all, that his wife had herself suckled this daughter; and that it was surprising such a claim should be made after a fifteen years' silence; and not till Virgin'ia was become marriageable, and acknowledged to be exquisitely beautiful. 10. While the father spoke this with a stern air, the eyes of all were turned on Virgin'ia, who stood trembling with looks of persuasive eloquence and excessive grief, which added weight to his remonstrances, and excited compassion. 20. The people, satisfied of the cruelty of his case, raised an outcry, expressive of their indignation. 21. Ap'pius, fearing that what had been said might have a dangerous effect upon the multi-

* The messengers sent by the friends of Virgin'ius were more expeditious than those of Ap'pius; and Virgin'ius, setting out for Rome immediately on hearing of his daughter's danger, was fortunate enough to escape two parties which were sent, one from the city, and the other from the camp, to arrest him. (Diod. Sic. l. xii. c. 86, 89; Livy, l. iii. c. 44, 49.)

tude, and under a pretence of being sufficiently instructed in the merits of the cause, with rage interrupted him. "Yes," said he, "my conscience obliges me to declare, that I myself am a witness to the truth of the deposition of Clau'dius. Most of this assembly know that I was left guardian to him. I was early apprized that he had a right to this young slave; but public affairs, and the dissensions of the people, have prevented my doing him justice. However, it is not now too late; and by the power vested in me for the general good, I adjudge Virgin'ia to be the property of Clau'dius, the plaintiff. Go, therefore, lictors, disperse the multitude, and make room for the master to repossess himself of his slave." 22. The lictors, in obedience to his command, drove off the throng that pressed round the tribunal; they seized upon Virgin'ia, and were delivering her up into the hands of Clau'dius; the multitude were terrified, and withdrew; and Virgin'ius, who found that all was over, seemed to *acquiesce* in the sentence. 23. He, however, mildly entreated of Ap'pius to be permitted to take a last farewell of a child whom he had at least considered as his own, and, so satisfied, he would return to his duty with fresh alacrity. 24. Ap'pius granted the favour upon condition that their endearments should pass in his presence. But Virgin'ius was then meditating a dreadful resolution. 25. The crowd made way, and Virgin'ius, with the most poignant anguish, taking his almost expiring daughter in his arms, for a while supported her head upon his breast, and wiped away the tears that trickled down her cheeks. 26. He most tenderly embraced her, and drawing her insensibly to some shops which were on the side of the forum, snatched up a butcher's knife: "My dearest lost child," cried Virgin'ius, "thus, thus alone is it in my power to preserve your honour and your freedom!" So saying, he plunged the weapon into her heart. Then drawing it out, reek-

ing with her blood, he held it up to Ap'pius: "Tyrant," cried he, "by this blood I devote thy head to the infernal gods!" 27. Thus saying, and covered with his daughter's blood, the knife remaining in his hand, threatening destruction to whosoever should oppose him, he ran through the city, wildly calling upon the people to strike for freedom. By the favour of the multitude he then mounted his horse, and rode directly to the camp.

28. He no sooner arrived, followed by a number of his friends, than he informed the army of all that had been done, still holding the bloody knife in his hand. He asked their pardon and the pardon of the gods, for having committed so rash an action, but ascribed it to the dreadful necessity of the times. 29. The army, already *predisposed* to revolt by the murder of Denta'tus, and other acts of tyranny and oppression, immediately with shouts echoed their approbation, and decamping left the generals behind, to take their station once more upon mount Aven'tine, whither they had retired about forty years before *. The other army, which had been to oppose the Sab'ines, felt a like resentment, and came over in large parties to join them.

30. Ap'pius, in the mean time, did all he could to *quell* the disturbances in the city; but finding the tumult incapable of controul, and perceiving that his mortal enemies, Vale'rius and Hora'tius, were the most active in opposition, at first attempted to find safety by flight; nevertheless, being encouraged by Op'pius, who was one of his colleagues, he ventured to assemble the

* Three commissioners were sent by the senate to ask, why they had left the camp, and what was their intent in possessing themselves of mount Aventine. No satisfactory answer being returned, the commissioners departed, and the army proceeded to elect ten commanders, whom they denominated Military Tribunes. Virginius was offered the chief command, which he declined; wishing rather to continue in a private station, till he had avenged his daughter's death. Soon after, the army removed their camp from Mons Aventinus to Mons Sacer.

senate, and urged the punishment of all deserters. 31. The senate, however, were far from giving him the relief he sought for; they foresaw the dangers and miseries that threatened the state, in case of opposing the *incensed* army; they therefore despatched messengers to them, offering to restore their former mode of government. 32. To this proposal all the people joyfully assented, and the army gladly obeying, now returned to the city, if not with the ensigns, at least with the pleasure of a triumphant entry. 33. Ap'pius and Op'pius both died by their own hands in prison *. The other eight decemvirs went into exile; and Clau'dius, the pretended master of Virgin'ia, was ignominiously banished.

Questions for Examination.

1. Did the Romans tamely submit to the tyranny of the decemviri?
2. Relate the particulars of this transaction.
3. What resolution did Appius form?
4. Who was this maiden?
5. What was Appius's first determination?
6. On what did he next resolve?
7. To what means did he have recourse for the accomplishment of his purpose?
8. Did Claudius undertake this base commission?
9. Was the opposition of the people *ultimately* successful?
10. How did Claudius attempt to make good his claims?
11. What was the conduct of Appius on this occasion?
12. How was this sentence received?
13. What consequences were likely to ensue, and how were they averted?
14. Was not this pretence a false one?
15. By what means was his design frustrated?
16. Under what pretence did Virginius obtain leave of absence?
17. What measures did he take on his arrival?
18. How was the trial conducted?
19. How did Virginia support this trying scene?
20. What was the general opinion of the auditors?

---

* So it was reported, but many suspected that both he and Op'pius were privately despatched by order of the tribunes.

21. Did the arguments of Virginius induce Appius to forego his iniquitous design?
22. Were his commands obeyed?
23. What was the request of Virginius?
24. Was this favour granted?
25. Describe this affecting scene.
26. What was the catastrophe?
27. What followed?
28. What use did he make of this dreadful circumstance?
29. What was the effect of his address on the army?
30. How was Appius employed in the mean time?
31. Did the senate second his designs?
32. Did the people accede to this proposal?
33. What was the fate of the tyrants?

SECT. III.

3. Tur'bulent, *a.* violent, tumultuous.
8. Aver'red, *v.* positively asserted.
9. Invec'tives, *s.* railing speeches, abusive expressions.
10. Preconcert'ed, *a.* agreed on beforehand.
11. Fic'kle, *a.* changeable.
Can'didates, *s.* from *candida'tus*, clothed in white, (because they wore white garments,) persons who aspire to any office or post of honour.
14. Depo'sed, *v.* removed from office.
15. Misdemea'nor, *s.* an offence, a crime not very heinous.
21. Dem'agogue, *s.* the leader of a faction, or the head of a rabble.
Asy'lum, *s.* a place of refuge or safety.
22. Par'tisans, *s.* followers, adherents.
24. Impend'ing, *part.* hanging over, approaching.
25. Demol'ished, *v.* destroyed, pulled down.

I. In the mean time, these intestine tumults produced weakness within the state, and confidence in the enemy abroad. The wars with the Æ'qui and the Vol'sci still continued; and, as each year some trifling advantage was obtained over the Romans, they, at last, advanced so
U.C. 309. far, as to make their incursions to the very walls of Rome *. 2. But not the courage only of the

* They were, however, defeated, first by the consul Vale'rius, and next, still more decisively, by the consuls Quinc'tius and Fu'rius.

Romans, their other virtues also, particularly their justice, seemed diminished by these contests.

3. The tribunes of the people now grew more *turbulent;* they proposed two laws; one to permit plebeians to intermarry with the patricians; and the other, to permit them to be admitted to the consulship also. 4. The senators received these proposals with indignation, and seemed resolved to undergo the utmost extremities, rather than submit to enact these laws. However, finding their resistance only increased by the commotions of the state, they, at last, consented to pass that concerning marriages, hoping that this concession would satisfy the people. 5. But they were to be appeased for a very short time only; for, returning to their old custom of refusing to enlist upon the approach of an enemy, the consuls were obliged to hold a private conference with the chief of the senate, where, after many debates, Clau'dius proposed an expedient, as the most probable means of satisfying the people in the present conjuncture. 6. This was to create six or eight governors in the room of consuls, whereof one half at least should be patricians. 7. This project, which was, in fact, granting what the people demanded, pleased the whole meeting, and it was agreed, that the consuls should, contrary to their usual custom, begin by asking the opinion of the youngest senator. 8. Upon assembling the senate, one of the tribunes accused them of holding secret meetings, and managing dangerous designs against the people. The consuls, on the other hand, *averred* their innocence; and, to demonstrate their sincerity, gave leave to any of the younger members of the house to propound their opinions. 9. These remaining silent, such of the older senators, as were known to be popular, began by observing that the people ought to be indulged in their request; that none so well deserved power, as those who were most instrumental in gaining it; and that the city could not be free until all were re-

duced to perfect equality. Clau'dius spoke next, and broke out into bitter *invectives* against the people; asserting that it was his opinion that the law should not pass. 10. This produced some disturbance among the Plebe'ians; at length, Genu'tius proposed, as had been *preconcerted*, that six governors should be annually chosen, with consular authority; three from the senate, and three from the people; and that, when the time of their magistracy should be expired, it would be seen whether they would have the same office continued, or whether the consulship should be established upon its former footing. 11. This project was eagerly embraced by the people; yet, so *fickle* were the multitude, that, though many of the plebeians stood *candidates*, the choice wholly fell upon the patricians who had offered themselves. 12. These new magistrates were called Military Tribunes; they were, at first, but three: and afterwards they were increased to four, and at length to six; they had the power and ensigns of consuls: yet, that power being divided among a number, each singly was of less authority. 13. The first that were chosen continued in office only about three months, the augurs having found something amiss in the ceremonies of their election *.

U.C. 310.

14. The military tribunes being *deposed*, the consuls once more came into office; and in order to lighten the weight of business which they were obliged to sustain, a new office was created; namely, that of Censors †, who were to be chosen every fifth year. 15. Their business was to take an estimate of the number and estates of the people, and to distribute them into their proper classes;

* This was an election subsequent to that mentioned in the preceding note.

† The duty of the censors, at first, was merely to perform the Census, or numbering of the people. It was by degrees that they became *Magistri Morum*, or inspectors and regulators of mens lives and manners.

to inspect into the lives and manners of their fellow citizens; to degrade senators for misconduct; to dismount knights, and to remove plebeians from their tribes into an inferior class, in case of *misdemeanor*. 16. The first censors were Papir'ius and Sempro'nius, both patricians; and from this order censors continued to be elected for nearly a hundred years.

17. This new creation served to restore peace for some time among the orders; and a triumph, gained over the Vol'scians, by Gega'nius, the consul, added to the universal satisfaction that reigned among the people.

18. This calm, however, was but of short continuance; U.C. 313. for, some time after, a famine pressing hard upon the poor, the usual complaints against the rich were renewed; and these, as before, proving ineffectual, produced new seditions. 19. The consuls were accused of neglect, in not having lain in proper quantities of corn: they, however, disregarded the murmurs of the populace, content with using every exertion to supply the pressing necessities *. 20. But, though they did all that could be expected from active magistrates, in procuring provisions, and distributing them to the poor; yet Spu'rious Mæ'lius, a rich knight, who had bought up all the corn of Tuscany, by far outshone them in liberality. 21. This *demagogue*, inflamed with a secret desire of becoming powerful by the contentions in the state, distributed corn in great quantities among the poorer sort each day, till his house became the *asylum* of all such as wished to exchange a life of labour, for one of lazy dependence. 22. When he had thus gained a sufficient number of *partisans*, he procured large quantities of arms to be brought into his house by night, and formed a con-

* They appointed an extraordinary magistrate, under the title of *superintendant of provisions*, and the person named for this office, L. Minutius, an active and prudent man, immediately sent his agents into the neighbouring countries to buy corn; but little, however, was procured, as Mælius had been beforehand with him, (Liv. l. iv. c. 13, 14).

spiracy, by which he was to obtain the command, while some of the tribunes, whom he had found means to corrupt, were to act under him, in seizing upon the liberties of his country. 23. Minu'cius soon discovered the plot, and, informing the senate, they immediately resolved to create a dictator, who should have the power of quelling the conspiracy, without appealing to the people. 24. Cincinna'tus, who was now eighty years old, was chosen once more to rescue his country from *impending* danger. 25. He began by summoning Mæ'lius to appear; who refused to obey. He next sent Ahala, the master of the horse, to compel his attendance; when, meeting him in the forum, Ahala, on his refusal, killed him upon the spot. The dictator applauded the resolution of his officer, and commanded the conspirator's goods to be sold, his house to be *demolished*, and his stores to be distributed among the people.

26. The tribunes of the people were much enraged at the death of Mæ'lius. In order, therefore, to punish the senate at the next election, instead of consuls, they in-
U.C. 315. sisted upon restoring the military tribunes, and the senate were obliged to comply. The next year, however, the government returned to its ancient channel, and consuls were chosen.

Questions for Examination.

1. What was the consequence of these intestine tumults?
2. Was it their courage only that was impaired by them?
3. How did the tribunes conduct themselves?
4. How were these proposals received?
5. Did it answer the desired end?
6. What was this expedient?
7. How was it received?
8. What happened on assembling the senate?
9. Did they avail themselves of this permission, and what farther passed on this occasion?
10. Was his opinion agreeable to the people, and what was the next expedient proposed?
11. Was this plan adopted, and acted upon?

12. What were the name, number, and powers of these new magistrates?
13. How long did they continue in office?
14. What government was substituted?
15. What were the duties of the censors?
16. Who were the first censors?
17. What was the consequence of this new creation?
18. Was this satisfaction lasting?
19. How were the consuls affected by it?
20. Were their exertions successful?
21. What measures did he pursue?
22. What end did he propose by this?
23. By what means was the plot frustrated?
24. Who was chosen dictator?
25. What steps did he take?
26. How were these rigorous measures received?

SECT. IV.

4. Annoy'ed, *v.* molested, injured, disturbed,
5. Depopula'tion, *s.* ruin, destruction of the inhabitants.
6. Protract'ed, *part.* spun out, made to last.
12. Breach, *s.* an opening.
13. Dis'gust, *v.* to offend, to cause dislike.
16. Decoy', *v.* to allure, to entice.
21. Migra'tion, *s.* the act of changing the place of abode, a removal.
22. Detest'ing, *part.* hating, abhorring, lothing.
24. Redoubt'able, *a.* formidable.
26. Sta'ture, *s.* height, tallness.
Emigra'tion, *s.* a change of habitation from one country to another.
31. Complaisan'ce, *s.* civility, politeness.
32. Till, *v.* to cultivate.
33. Despoil'ing, *part.* plundering.
36. Impet'uosity, *s.* violence, fury.
38. Fo'rum, *s.* a place at Rome, where the courts of justice were held, and public business transacted.
39. Exult'ing, *part.* greatly rejoicing.
40. Strat'agem, *s.* an artifice, trick, attempt to deceive.
41. Tu'telar, *a.* guarding, protecting.
Ob'viated, *v.* prevented.
Comport', *v.* to behave.
Note.—Circumvalla'tion and Contravalla'tion, *s.* lines and trenches round a besieged city.

1. The Ve'ians had long been the rivals of Rome, they had even taken the opportunity of internal distresses to

ravage its territories, and had even threatened its ambassadors, sent to complain of these injuries, with outrage. 2. It seemed now therefore determined that the city of Veii, whatever it might cost, should fall; and the Romans accordingly sat down regularly before it, and prepared for a long and painful resistance *. 3. The strength of the place may be inferred from the continuance of the siege, which lasted for ten years; during which time, the army continued encamped round it, lying, in winter, under tents made of the skins of beasts, and, in summer, driving on the operations of the attack †. 4. Various were the successes, and many were the commanders that directed the siege; sometimes all their works were destroyed, and many of their men cut off by sallies from the town; sometimes they were *annoyed* by an army of Veians, who attempted to bring assistance from without ‡. 5. A siege so bloody seemed to threaten *depopulation* to Rome itself, by a continual drain of its forces; so that a law was obliged to be made, for all bachelors to marry the widows of the soldiers who were slain §. 6. Fu'rius Camil'lus was now created dictator, and to him was intrusted the sole power of managing the long *protracted* war. 7. Camil'lus, who, without intrigue or solicitation, had raised himself to the first eminence in the state, had been made one of

* Hitherto the Romans had carefully avoided long sieges, because their troops, serving without pay, could not be kept together a sufficient time. But a law having passed, about this time, allowing pay to the soldiers, they were encouraged to undertake this tedious and difficult enterprize.

† The city of Veii was larger and much more magnificent than Rome, and so eligibly situated, that, after the destruction of the latter by the Gauls, the citizens determined to remove thither. From this they were dissuaded by Camillus.

‡ It was at this siege that the Romans first invented lines of *circumvallation* and *contravallation*; at least, this is the first time we find them mentioned in history.

§ The oracle at Delphi having declared that Veii should not be taken till all the water had run out of the lake of Alba, the senate employed a number of persons to cut a canal, and distribute the water over the fields in trenches. (Liv. l. v. c. 15, 16.) This wonderful work remains to this day.

the censors some time before, and was considered as the head of that office; he was afterwards made a military tribune, and had, in this post, gained several advantages over the enemy. 8. It was his great courage and abilities in the above offices that made him be thought most worthy to serve his country on this pressing occasion. 9. Upon his appointment, numbers of the people flocked to his standard, confident of success under so experienced a commander. 10. Conscious, however, that he was unable to take the city by storm, he, with vast labour, opened a passage under ground, which led into the very midst of the citadel. 11. Certain thus of success, and finding the city incapable of relief, he sent to the senate, desiring, that all who chose to share in the plunder of the Veii, should immediately repair to the army. 12. Then, giving his directions how to enter at the *breach*, the city was instantly filled with his legions, to the amazement and consternation of the besieged, who, but a moment before, had rested in perfect security. 13. Thus, like a second Troy *, was the city of Ve'ii taken, after a ten years siege, and, with its spoils, enriched the conquerors; while Camil'lus himself, transported with the honour of having subdued the rival of his native city, triumphed after the manner of the kings of Rome, having his chariot drawn by four milk-white horses; a distinction which did not fail to *disgust* the majority of the spectators, as they considered those as sacred, and more proper for doing honour to their gods than their generals †.

14. His usual good fortune attended Camil'lus in an-

---

* Troy was a large and strong city in Asia Minor, famous for having withstood the whole power of the Greeks for 10 years.—It was taken at last by stratagem, not by force. Homer has immortalized the siege of this city in his exquisite poem of the Iliad.

† Their displeasure was greatly increased by his demanding a tenth part of the spoils of Veii, to discharge a vow which he had made to Apollo, just before the assault.

other expedition against the Falis'ci. He routed their army, and besieged their capital city Fale'rii, which threatened a long and vigorous resistance. 16. The reduction of this little place would have been scarcely worth mentioning in this scanty page, were it not for an action of the Roman general, that has done him more credit with posterity, than all his other triumphs united. 16. A school-master, who had the care of the children belonging to the principal men in the city, having found means to *decoy* them into the Roman camp, offered to put them into the hands of Camil'lus, as the surest means of inducing the citizens to a speedy surrender. 17. The general, struck with the treachery of a wretch, whose duty it was to protect innocence, and not to betray it, for some time regarded the traitor with a stern silence: but, at last, finding words, "Execrable villain!" cried the noble Roman, "offer thy abominable proposals to creatures like thyself, and not to me; what, though we be the enemies of your city, are there not natural ties that bind all mankind, which should never be broken? There are duties required from us in war, as well as in peace; we fight not against the age of innocence, but against men—men who have used us ill indeed; but yet, whose crimes are virtues, when compared to thine. Against such base arts, let it be my duty to use only the Roman ones—valour and arms." 18. So saying, he ordered him to be stript, his hands to be tied behind him, and, in that ignominious manner, to be whipped into the town by his own scholars. 19. This generous behaviour in Camil'lus effected more than his arms could do; the magistrates of the town submitted to the senate, leaving to Camil'lus the conditions of their surrender: who only fined them a sum of money to satisfy his army, and received them under the protection, and into the alliance, of Rome.

20. Notwithstanding the veneration which the virtues of Camil'lus had excited abroad, they seemed but little

adapted to command the respect of the turbulent tribunes at home, who raised fresh accusations against him every day. 21. To the charge of being an opposer of their intended *emigration* from Rome to Ve'ii *, they added that of his having concealed a part of the plunder of that city, particularly two brazen gates, for his own use; and appointed him a day on which to appear before the people. 22. Camil'lus, finding the multitude exasperated against him upon many accounts, and *detesting* their ingratitude, resolved not to await the ignominy of a trial; but embracing his wife and children, prepared to depart from Rome. 23. He had already passed as far as one of the gates, unattended and unlamented. There he could suppress his indignation no longer, but, turning his face to the Capitol, and lifting up his hands to heaven, he entreated all the gods, that his countrymen might one day be sensible of their injustice and ingratitude. So saying, he passed forward to take refuge at Ar'dea, a town at a little distance from Rome, where he afterwards learned that he had been fined fifteen thousand ases † by the tribunes at home.

24. The tribunes were not a little pleased with their triumph over this great man; but they soon had reason to repent their injustice, and to wish for the assistance of one, who alone was able to protect their country from ruin: for now a more terrible and *redoubtable* enemy than the Romans had ever yet encountered, began to make their appearance. 25. The Gauls, a barbarous nation, had about two centuries before made an irruption from beyond the Alps, and settled in the northen parts of Italy. They had been invited over by the deliciousness of the wines, and the softness of the climate. 26. Wherever they came

* It had been proposed, after the capture of Ve'ii, to divide the senate and the people of Rome into two parts; one of which should inhabit the conquered city. But the proposal, by the influence of Camil'lus, was overruled.

† The *as* was a brass coin, about three farthings of our money.

they dispossessed the original inhabitants, as they were men of superior courage, extraordinary *stature*, fierce in aspect, barbarous in their manners, and prone to *emigration*. 27. A body of these, wild from their original habitations, was now besieging Clu'sium, a city of Etru'ria, under the conduct of Bren'nus, their king. 28. The inhabitants of Clu'sium, frightened at their numbers, and still more at their savage appearance, entreated the assistance, or, at least, the mediation of the Romans. 29. The senate, who had long made it a maxim, never to refuse succour to the distressed, were willing, previously, to send ambassadors to the Gauls, to dissuade them from their enterprize, and to show the injustice of the irruption. 30. Accordingly, three young senators were chosen out of the family of the Fabii, to manage the commission, who seemed more fitted for the field than the cabinet. 81. Bren'nus received them with a degree of *complaisance* that argued but little of the barbarian, and desiring to know the business of their embassy, was answered, according to their instructions, that it was not customary in Italy to make war, but on just grounds of provocation, and that they desired to know what offence the citizens of Clu'sium had given to the king of the Gauls. 32. To this Bren'nus sternly replied, that the rights of valiant men lay in their swords; that the Romans themselves had no right to the many cities they had conquered; and that he had particular reasons of resentment against the people of Clu'sium, as they refused to part with those lands, which they had neither hands to *till*, nor inhabitants to occupy. 33. The Roman ambassadors, who were but little used to bear the language of a conqueror, for a while dissembled their resentment at this haughty reply; but, upon entering the besieged city, instead of acting as ambassadors, and forgetful of their sacred character, they headed the citizens in a sally against the besiegers. In this combat, Fa'bius Ambus'tus killed a Gaul with his

own hand, but was discovered in the act of *despoiling* him of his armour. 34. A conduct so unjust and unbecoming excited the resentment of Bren'nus, who, having made his complaint by an herald to the senate, and, finding no redress *, broke up the siege and marched away with his conquering army directly for Rome. 35. The countries through which the Gauls made their rapid progress, gave up all hopes of safety upon their approach; being terrified at their numbers, the fierceness of their natures, and their dreadful preparations for war. 36. But the rage and *impetuosity* of this wild people were directed solely against Rome. They went on without doing the least injury in their march, breathing vengeance only against the Romans. A terrible engagement soon after ensued, in which the Romans were defeated near the river Al'lia, with the loss of about forty thousand men †.

37. Rome, thus deprived of succour, prepared for every extremity. The inhabitants endeavoured to hide themselves in the neighbouring towns, or resolved to await the conqueror's fury, and end their lives with the ruin of their native city ‡. 38. But, more particularly, the ancient senators and priests, struck with a religious enthusiasm, on this occasion, resolved to devote their lives to atone for the crimes of the people, and, habited in their robes of ceremony, placed themselves in the *Forum*, on their ivory chairs. 39. The Gauls, in the mean time, were giving a loose to their triumph, in sharing and enjoying the plunder of the enemy's camp. Had they immediately marched to Rome, upon gaining the victory, the Capitol had been

* On the contrary, the Romans, to shew their approbation at what their ambassadors had done, instead of delivering them up to Bren'nus, as was demanded, elected them military tribunes.

† This day was from henceforth marked as unlucky in their calendar, and called *Allien'sis*.

‡ Among others, the Vestals fled from the city, carrying with them the two Palladiums and the sacred fire. They took shelter at Caere, a town of Etru'ria, where they continued to celebrate their religious rites: from this circumstance religious rites acquired the name of *ceremonies*.

taken; but they continued two days feasting upon the field of battle, and, with barbarous pleasure, *exulting* amidst their slaughtered enemies. 40. On the third day after this easy victory, Bren'nus appeared with all his forces before the city. He was at first much surprised to find the gates open to receive him, and the walls defenceless; so that he began to impute the unguarded situation of the place to a Roman *stratagem*. After proper precaution, he entered the city, and, marching into the Forum, beheld there the ancient senators sitting in their order, observing a profound silence, unmoved and undaunted. 41. The splendid habits, the majestic gravity, and the venerable looks of these old men, who, in their time, had all borne the highest offices of state, awed the barbarous enemy into reverence; they mistook them for the *tutelar* deities of the place, and began to offer blind adoration; till one, more forward than the rest, putting forth his hand to stroke the beard of Papyr'ius, an insult the noble Roman could not endure, he lifted up his ivory sceptre, and struck the savage to the ground. 42. This proved to be a signal for general slaughter. Papyr'ius fell first, and all the rest shared his fate without mercy or distinction *. The fierce invaders pursued their slaughter for three days successively, sparing neither sex nor age; then, setting fire to the city, burnt every house to the ground.

Questions for Examination.

1. What was the conduct of the Veians?
2. What resolution was adopted in consequence?
3. Was Veii a strong place?

---

* This self-devotion was in consequence of a vow made by these brave old men, which Fa'bius, the pontifex maximus, pronounced in their names. The Romans believed that, by thus devoting themselves to the infernal gods, disorder and confusion were brought among the enemy.

4. Did the besieged make a vigorous resistance?
5. What consequences were likely to ensue, and how were they *obviated?*
6. To whom was the conduct of the war now committed?
7. Who was Camillus?
8. By what means did he attain his present dignity?
9. What was the consequence of his appointment?
10. What plan did he adopt to take the city?
11. How did he next proceed?
12. What followed?
13. What was the consequence of this capture, and how did Camillus *comport* himself?
14. What was Camillus's next exploit?
15. Was this a conquest of importance?
16. Relate the particulars.
17. How was his proposal received?
18. How was the traitor punished?
19. What was the consequence of this conduct?
20. Was Camillus universally respected?
21. What charges were brought against him?
22. Did Camillus abide the event of a trial?
23. Was he resigned to his fate, and whither did he retire?
24. What followed his departure?
25. Who was the enemy?
26. What were the conduct and character of the Gauls?
27. How were they employed at this conjuncture?
28. What measures did the Clusians adopt for their defence?
29. Was their application successful?
30. Who were appointed for this purpose?
31. How were they received?
32. What was the reply of Brennus?
33. What was the conduct of the ambassadors?
34. What was the consequence of this improper conduct?
35. What sensations were excited in the countries through which they passed?
36. Did the Gauls commit any ravages on their march?
37. What measures were adopted at Rome?
38. Who more particularly displayed their devotedness on this occasion?
39. What use did the Gauls make of their victory?
40. What happened on their arrival before the city?
41. What was the effect of this spectacle?
42. What was the consequence of this boldness?

SECT. V.

2. Repel'led, *part.* driven back, successfully resisted.
3. Capitula'tion, *s.* terms or conditions of peace and surrender.
Futil'ity, *s.* vanity, folly.
6. Sen'tinel, *s.* a soldier set to watch.
7. Assail'ants, *s.* those who attack.
8. Celer'ity, *s.* swiftness, speed, haste.
9. Con'gress, *s.* a meeting.
11. Expos'tulate, *v.* to dispute, to argue, to remonstrate.
16. Ven'erable, *a.* deserving of reverence from age.
20. Curb, *v.* to restrain.
22. Lar'gesses, *s.* gifts, presents.
26. Ra'zed, *v.* demolished, destroyed.
28. Impli'cit, *a.* complete, real, undisputing.
Patriot'ism, *s.* a love of one's country.
Note.—Invin'cible, *a.* unconquerable.

1. ALL the hopes of Rome were now placed in the
U.C. } Capitol; every thing without that fortress formed
361. } an extensive scene of misery, desolation, and despair.

2. Bren'nus first summoned it, with threats, to surrender, but in vain; then resolving to besiege it in form, hemmed it round with his army. The Romans, however, *repelled* the attempt with great bravery; despair had supplied them with that perseverance and vigour, which they seemed to want when in prosperity.

3. In the mean while, Bren'nus carried on the siege with extreme ardour. He hoped to starve the garrison into a *capitulation;* but they, sensible of his intent, although in actual want, caused loaves to be thrown into his camp, to convince him of the *futility* of such expectations. 4. His hopes were soon after revived, when some of his soldiers came to inform him, that they had discovered footsteps *, which led up to the rock, by which

* These were the footsteps of Pon'tius Comin'ius, who, with great prudence and bravery, found means to carry a message from Camil'lus to the Romans in the Capitol, and to return with the appointment of dictator for Camil'lus.

they supposed the Capitol might be surprised. 5. Accordingly, a chosen body of his men were ordered by night upon this dangerous service, which, with great labour and difficulty, they almost effected. 6. They were got upon the very wall: the Roman *sentinel* was fast asleep; their dogs within gave no signal, and all promised an instant victory, when the garrison was awakened by the gabbling of some sacred geese, that had been kept in the temple of Juno. 7. The besieged soon perceived the imminence of their danger, and each, snatching the weapon that first presented itself, ran to oppose the *assailants*. 8. M. Man'lius, a patrician of acknowledged bravery, was the first who opposed the foe, and inspired courage by his example. He boldly mounted the rampart, and, at one effort, threw two Gauls headlong down the precipice; his companions soon came to his assistance, and the walls were cleared of the enemy with a most incredible *celerity* *.

9. From this time the hopes of the barbarians began to decline, and Bren'nus wished for an opportunity of raising the siege with credit†. His soldiers had often conferences with the besieged while upon duty, and proposals for an accommodation were wished for by the common men, before the chiefs thought of a *congress*. At length, the commanders on both sides came to an agreement, that the Gauls should immediately quit the city and territories,

---

* As a reward for this essential service, every soldier gave Man'lius a small quantity of corn and a little measure of wine, out of his scanty allowance; a present of no mean value in their then distressed situation. On the other hand, the captain of the guard, who ought to have kept the sentinels to their duty, was thrown headlong from the Capitol. In memory of this event, a goose was annually carried in triumph on a soft litter, finely adorned; whilst dogs were held in abhorrence, and one impaled every year on a branch of elder.

† As the Gauls suffered the bodies of the Romans, who were slain in their frequent encounters, to lay unburied, the stench of their putrefaction occasioned a plague to break out, which carried off great numbers of the army of Brennus.

upon being paid a thousand pounds weight of gold. 10. This agreement being confirmed by oath on either side, the gold was brought forth. But, upon weighing, the Gauls fraudulently attempted to kick the beam, of which the Romans complaining, Bren'nus insultingly cast his sword and belt into the scale, crying out, that the only portion of the vanquished was to suffer. 11. By this reply, the Romans saw that they were at the victor's mercy; and knew it was in vain to *expostulate* against any conditions he should be pleased to impose. 12. But, while they were thus debating upon the payment, it was told them, that Camil'lus *, their old general, was at the head of a large army, hastening to their relief, and entering the gates of Rome. 13. Camil'lus actually appeared soon after, and entering the place of controversy, with the air of one who was resolved not to suffer imposition, demanded the cause of the contest; of which being informed, he ordered the gold to be taken and carried back to the Capitol: "For it has ever been," cried he, "the manner with us Romans, to ransom our country, not with gold, but with iron; it is I only that am to make peace, as being the dictator of Rome, and my sword alone shall purchase it." 14. Upon this a battle ensued, the Gauls were entirely routed, and such a slaughter followed, that the Roman territories were soon cleared of their formidable invaders. Thus, by the bravery of Camil'lus was Rome delivered from its enemy.

15. The city being one continued heap of ruins, except the Capitol, and the greatest number of its former inhabitants having gone to take refuge in Ve'ii, the tribunes of the people urged for the removal of the poor remains of Rome to that city, where they might have houses to shelter, and walls to defend them. 16. On this occasion

* Camil'lus had previously, with the assistance of the Ar'deans, defeated a body of the Gauls. This success had tended to inspirit the Romans, and to render them less afraid to encounter an enemy whom they had hitherto considered as *invincible*.

Camil'lus attempted to appease them, with all the arts of persuasion; observing, that it was unworthy of them, both as Romans and as men, to desert the *venerable seat* of their ancestors, where they had been encouraged by repeated marks of Divine approbation, in order to inhabit a city which they had conquered, and which wanted even the good fortune of defending itself. 17. By these, and such like remonstrances, he prevailed upon the people to go contentedly to work; and Rome soon began to rise from its ashes *.

18. We have already seen the bravery of Man'lius in defending the Capitol, and saving the last remains of Rome. For this, the people were by no means ungrateful. They built him a house near the place where his valour was so conspicuous, and appointed him a public fund for his support. 19. But he aspired at being more than equal to Camil'lus, and to be sovereign of Rome. With this view he laboured to ingratiate himself with the populace, paid their debts, and railed at the patricians, whom he called their oppressors. 20. The senate was not ignorant of his speeches or his designs, and created Corne'lius Cos'sus dictator, with a view to *curb* the ambition of Man'lius. 21. The dictator soon called Man'lius to an account for his conduct. Man'lius, however, was too much the darling of the populace to be affected by the power of Cos'sus, who was obliged to lay down his office, and Man'lius was carried from confinement in triumph through the city. 22. This success only served to inflame his ambition. He now began to talk of a division of the lands among the people, insinuated that there should be no distinctions in the state; and, to give weight to his discourses, always appeared at the head of a large body of the dregs of the people, whom *largesses* had made his followers. 23. The city being thus filled with sedition

* So little taste, however, for order and beauty, did those display, who had the direction of the works, that the city, when rebuilt, was even less regular than in the time of Romulus.

and clamour, the senate had recourse to another expedient, which was, to oppose the power of Camil'lus to that of the demagogue. Camil'lus accordingly, being made one of the military tribunes, appointed Man'lius a day to answer for his life. 24. The place in which he was tried was near the Capitol, whither, when he was accused of sedition, and of aspiring at sovereignty, he turned his eyes, and pointing to that edifice, put them in mind of what he had there done for his country *. 55. The multitude, whose compassion or whose justice seldom springs from rational motives, refused to condemn him, so long as he pleaded in sight of the Capitol; but when he was brought from thence to the Pe'teline grove, where the Capitol was no longer in view, they condemned him to be thrown headlong from the Tarpe'ian rock. 26. Thus, the place which had been the theatre of his glory, became that of his punishment and infamy. His house, in which his conspiracies had been secretly carried on, and which had been built as the reward of his valour, was ordered to be *razed* to the ground, and his family were forbidden ever after to assume the name of Man'lius.

27. Thus the Romans went gradually forward, with a mixture of turbulence and superstition within their walls, and successful enterprizes without †.

* Man'lius omitted nothing that was likely to move his judges to compassion; he appeared in deep mourning; he produced above four hundred plebeians, whose debts he had paid; he shewed the people thirty suits of armour, the spoils of thirty enemies, whom he had killed in single combat; he had been honoured with one mural and eight civic crowns, and been seven-and thirty times rewarded for his extraordinary valour: the people, unwilling either to acquit or condemn, put off his trial from day to day, but at length determined as in the text. Scarcely, however, was Man'lius dead, when his loss was generally lamented, and a plague, which soon followed, was ascribed to the anger of Jupiter against the authors of his death. (Plut. in Camillo.)

† The principal of these were, their wars with the Vol'sci, Prænes'tines *, the Latins, the Veliterni †, and the Gauls; the

* The inhabitants of Præneste, a town of Latium, about 21 miles from Rome.

† The inhabitants of Velitræ, an ancient town of Latium, on the Appian road, 20 miles E. of Rome.

28. With what *implicit* obedience they submitted to their pontiffs, and how far they might be impelled to encounter even death itself, at their command, will evidently appear from the behaviour of Cur'tius, about this time.

U. C. 392. Upon the opening of a gulf in the forum, which the augurs affirmed would never close till the most precious things in Rome were thrown into it, this heroic man, clad in complete armour, and mounted on horseback, boldly leaped into the midst, declaring, that nothing was more truly valuable than *patriotism* and military virtue.

29. The gulf, say the historians, closed immediately upon this, and Cur'tius was seen no more *.

U. C. 396. 30. This year died the great Camil'lus, deservedly regretted by all. He was styled a second Romulus, the first having founded, and he restored the city. He is said never to have fought a battle without gaining a victory; never to have besieged a city without taking it. He was a zealous patriot, ever ready to dismiss his just resentments for the affronts he received, when the necessities of his country required his services.

Questions for Examination.

1. What was the state of Rome at this period?
2. What was the next step taken by Brennus, and how did it succeed?
3. In what manner was the siege carried on?
4. Did he consider the attempt as hopeless?
5. What advantage did he take of this information?
6. Was the attempt successful?
7. What was the consequence?

---

chief domestic occurrence was, the law which permitted one of the consuls to be chosen from among the plebeians; this concession was not obtained by that order without much opposition, tumult, and confusion. L. Sextius was first plebeian consul.

* Some judicious writers, however, acknowledge, that the chasm was afterwards filled up with earth and rubbish. (Livy, l. 7, c. 6. Val. Maximus, l. 5, c. 6, et alii.)

8. Was there any particular instance of valour?
9. What effect had this failure on the mind of Brennus?
10. In what manner was this agreement carried into execution?
11. What inference did the Romans draw from this insolent speech?
12. What agreeable news did they now hear?
13. Was this information correct?
14. What followed?
15. What was the first measure proposed after this deliverance?
16. Was this proposal carried into effect?
17. Were his remonstrances successful?
18. Was the bravery of Manlius rewarded?
19. Was he content with these favours?
20. What measures were taken to oppose his designs?
21. Was this expedient attended with success?
22. What was the conduct of Manlius after this?
23. What farther measures were taken to punish his ambition?
24. What defence did he set up?
25. Was his plea successful?
26. What is remarkable in his punishment?
27. How did the Roman affairs proceed at this time?
28. Relate a memorable instance of the obedience paid by the Romans to their pontiffs or priests?
29. What was the consequence of this heroic act?
30. What happened this year, and what was the character of Camillus?

CHAPTER XIII.

SECT. I.

From the Wars with the Samnites, and those with Pyrrhus, to the beginning of the first Punic War; when the Romans began to extend their Conquests beyond Italy.

3. Gigan'tic, *a.* very large, like a giant.
5. Athlet'ic, *a.* strong, vigorous.
8. Unwa'rily, *ad.* incautiously, unawares.
9. Mu'tinying, *part.* rising against lawful authority.
12. Hos'tile, *a.* as an enemy.
13. Defec'tion, *s.* a revolt, a falling away.
18. Intim'idated, *part.* rendered afraid.

21. Deplo'rable, *a.* lamentable, sad.
Alter'native, *s.* choice.
22. Man'date, *s.* a command.
Execra'tions, *s.* curses.
23. Animos'ity, *s.* extreme hatred, rage.
29. Car'nage, *s.* slaughter, havoc.

1. The Romans had triumphed over the Sab'ines, the Etru'rians, the Latins, the Her'nici, the Æ'qui, and the Vol'sci; and now began to look for greater conquests *. They accordingly turned their arms against the Sam'nites, a people descended from the Sab'ines, and inhabiting a large tract of southern Italy, which, at this day, makes a considerable part of the kingdom of Naples †. 2. Vale'rius Cor'vus, and Corne'lius were the two consuls, to whose care it first fell to manage this dreadful contention between the rivals.

3. Vale'rius was one of the greatest commanders of his time; he was surnamed Cor'vus, from a strange circumstance of being assisted by a crow in a single combat, in which he killed a Gaul of *gigantic* stature. 4. To his colleague's care it was consigned to lead an army to Sam'nium, the enemy's capital, while Cor'vus was sent to relieve Cap'ua, the capital of the Capin'ians. 5. Never was a captain more fitted for command than he. To a habit naturally robust and *athletic*, he joined the gentlest manners; he was the fiercest, and yet the most good-natured man in the army; and, while the meanest sentinel was his companion, no man kept them more strictly to their duty; but to complete his character, he constantly

* About this time, (A. U. 415: A. C. 333.) ambassadors arrived from Carthage, to conclude an alliance with the Romans.

† The occasion of the war was this: the Sam'nites having attacked the Campa'nians, the latter threw themselves upon the protection of the Romans. The Romans immediately sent ambassadors to the Sam'nites, requesting them to desist from hostilities against a people under the protection of Rome; this the Sam'nites haughtily refused, in consequence of which, war was immediately declared against them. (Liv. l. 7. c. 31, 32.)

endeavoured to preserve his dignity by the same arts by which he gained it. 6. Such soldiers as the Romans then were, hardened by their late adversity, and led on by such a general, were unconquerable. The Samnites were the bravest men they ever had yet encountered, and the contention between the two nations was managed on both sides with the most determined resolution. 7. But the fortune of Rome prevailed; the Samnites at length fled, averring, that they were not able to withstand the fierce looks, and the fire-darting eyes of the Romans. 8. Cornelius, however, was not at first so fortunate; for having *unwarily* led his army into a defile, he was in danger of being cut off, had not Decius possessed himself of a hill which commanded the enemy; so that the Samnites, being attacked on both sides, were defeated with great slaughter; not less than thirty thousand of them being left dead upon the field.

9. Some time after this victory, the forces stationed at Capua *mutinying* *, compelled Quintius, an eminent old soldier, to be their leader; and, conducted by their rage, more than their general, came within six miles of the city. 10. So terrible an enemy, almost at the gates, not a little alarmed the senate, who immediately created Valerius dictator, and sent him forth with an army to oppose them. 11. The two armies were now drawn up against each other, while fathers and sons beheld themselves prepared to engage in opposite causes. 12. Any other general than Corvus would, perhaps, have brought this civil war to extremity; but he, knowing his influence among the soldiery, instead of going forward to meet the mutineers in an *hostile* manner, went with the most cordial friendship to embrace, and expostulate with his old acquaint-

* Delighted with the charming climate, and the pleasures of Capua, these soldiers formed a design of destroying the inhabitants, and settling in the city; but the plot having been discovered and frustrated by the vigilance of the officers, gave occasion to this mutiny.

ances. 13. His conduct had the desired effect. Quin'tius, as their speaker, solicited no more than to have their *defection* from their duty forgiven; and for himself, as he was innocent of their conspiracy, he had no reason to solicit pardon for offences. 14. Thus, this defection, which threatened danger to Rome, was repaired by the prudence and moderation of a general, whose ambition it was to be gentle to his friends, and formidable only to his enemies.

15. A war between the Romans and Latins followed soon after. 19. As their habits, arms, and language were the same, the exactest discipline was necessary, to prevent confusion in the engagement. Orders, therefore, were issued, that no soldier should leave his ranks upon pain of death. 17. With these injunctions, both armies were drawn out and ready, when Me'tius, the general of the enemy's cavalry, pushed forward from his lines, and challenged any knight in the Roman army to single combat. 18. For some time there was a general pause, no soldier daring to disobey his orders, till Ti'tus Man'lius, son of the consul Man'lius, burning with shame to see the whole body of the Romans *intimidated*, boldly advanced against his adversary. 19. The soldiers, on both sides, for a while suspended the general engagement, to be spectators of this fierce encounter. The two champions drove their horses against each other with great violence: Me'tius wounded his adversary's horse in the neck; but Man'lius, with better fortune, killed that of Me'tius. The Latin general, fallen to the ground, for a while attempted to support himself upon his shield; but the Roman followed his blows, and laid him dead, as he was endeavouring to rise; then, despoiling him of his armour, returned in triumph to his father's tent, where he was preparing for, and giving orders relative to, the engagement. 20. However he might have been applauded by his fellow-soldiers, being as yet doubtful what reception he should find with his

father, he came with hesitation, to lay the enemy's spoils at his feet, and with a modest air insinuated, that what he had done was entirely from a spirit of hereditary virtue. 21. Alas! he was soon dreadfully made sensible of his error; when his father, turning away, ordered him to be led publicly forth before his army. Being brought forward, the consul, with a stern countenance, and yet with tears, spoke as follows: "Ti'tus Man'lius, as thou hast regarded neither the dignity of the consulship, nor the commands of a father; as thou hast destroyed military discipline, and set a pattern of disobedience by thy example, thou hast reduced me to the *deplorable* extremity of sacrificing my son or my country. But let us not hesitate in this dreadful *alternative;* a thousand lives were well lost in such a cause; nor do I think, that thou thyself wilt refuse to die, when thy country is to reap the advantage of thy sufferings. Lictor, bind him, and let his death be our future example." 22. At this unnatural *mandate* the whole army was struck with horror; fear, for a while, kept them in suspense; but when they saw their young champion's head struck off, and his blood streaming upon the ground, they could no longer contain their *execrations*, and their groans. His dead body was carried forth without the camp, and, being adorned with the spoils of the vanquished enemy, was buried with all the pomp of military solemnity.

23. In the mean time, the battle began with mutual fury; and as the two armies had often fought under the same leaders, they combated with all the *animosity* of a civil war. The Latins chiefly depended on bodily strength; the Romans on their invincible courage and conduct. 24. Forces so nearly matched, seemed only to want the aid of their deities to turn the scale of victory; and in fact the augurs had foretold, that whatever part of the Roman army should be distressed, the commander of that part should devote himself for his country, and die as a

sacrifice to the immortal gods. Man'lius commanded the right wing, and De'cius the left. 25. Both sides fought with doubtful success, as their courage was equal; but, after a time, the left wing of the Roman army began to give ground. 26. It was then that De'cius resolved to devote himself for his country; and to offer his own life, as an atonement to save his army *.

27. Thus determined, he called out to Man'lius with a loud voice, and demanded his instructions, as he was the chief pontiff, how to devote himself, and what form of words he should use. 28. By his directions, therefore, being clothed in a long robe, his head covered, and his arms stretched forward, standing upon a javelin, he devoted himself to the celestial and infernal gods, for the safety of Rome. Then arming himself, and mounting his horse, he drove furiously into the midst of the enemy, striking terror and consternation wherever he came, till he fell covered with wounds. 29. In the mean time the Roman army considered his devoting himself in this manner, as an assurance of success; nor was the superstition of the Latins less powerfully influenced by his resolution; a total rout began to ensue: the Romans pressed them on every side, and so great was the *carnage*, that scarcely a fourth part of the enemy survived the defeat.

Questions for Examination.

1. Against whom did the Romans next turn their arms?
2. Who were appointed commanders in this war?
3. Who was Valerius?
4. What separate commands were entrusted to the consuls?
5. What was the character of Valerius?
6. What was the character of the hostile armies?
7. To whom did the advantage belong?

---

* Livy says, (l. 8. c. 6.) that the two consuls had a dream the night preceding the battle, in which a man of a gigantic stature appeared to them, and assured them, that the victory was decreed to that army whose general should devote himself to the Dii Manes, or Infernal Gods.

8. Was not the division under Cornelius led into a difficulty, and how was it extricated?
9. What important event next occurred?
10. How were the senate affected by their approach?
11. What are the peculiar evils attendant on civil wars?
12. What steps did Corvus take on this occasion?
13. What was the consequence of this mildness?
14. What reflection may be drawn from this incident?
15. What was the next occurrence of note?
16. What precautions were necessary in this war?
17. In what way was the discipline of the Romans put to the proof?
18. Was his challenge disregarded?
19. Relate the particulars of the combat?
20. What reception did he expect from his father?
21. What was the consequence of this rashness?
22. How was this sentence received by the army?
23. Did a battle ensue?
24. What was wanting to insure the victory?
25. To whom did success incline?
26. What heroic act turned the scale in favour of the Romans?
27. In what way did he do this?
28. What followed?
29. What effect had this sacrifice on the hostile armies?

SECT. II.

U. C. 431.

6. Confed'eracy, *s.* a league, an alliance.
7. Retriev'ing, *part.* recovering.
9. Tran'sitory, *a.* short, not lasting.
   Diminu'tion, *s.* a lessening.
12. Predeces'sor, *s.* an ancestor, one going before.
14. Disper'sed, *v.* scattered.
22. Ford'able, *a.* not too deep to be passed on foot.
23. Reinfor'ced, *v.* strengthened by the addition of fresh troops.
24. Phal'anx, *s.* a body of men drawn up in a wedge-like form, with their spears protruded, and their shields closely locked together.
   Le'gion, *s.* a body of 6,100 foot, divided into ten cohorts and fifty-five companies, and 726 cavalry generally attached to the infantry, but sometimes detached on separate service.
30. Nego'ciate, *v.* to treat for, to manage.

1. BUT a signal disgrace which the Romans sustained about this time, in their contest with the Samnites, made a pause in their usual good fortune, and turned the scale

for a while in the enemy's favour *. 2. The senate having denied the Samnites peace, Pon'tius, their general, was resolved to gain by stratagem, what he had frequently lost by force. 3. Accordingly, leading his army into the neighbourhood of a defile, called Clau'dium, and taking possession of all its outlets, he sent ten of his soldiers, habited like shepherds, with directions to throw themselves into the way which the Romans were to march. 4. Exactly to his wishes, the Roman consul, Posthu'mius, met them, and taking them for what they appeared, demanded the route the Samnite army had taken: they, with seeming indifference replied, that they were gone to Luce'ria, a town in Apu'lia, and were then actually besieging it. 5. The Roman general, not suspecting the stratagem that was laid against him, marched directly by the shortest road, which lay through the defile, to relieve that city; and was not undeceived till he saw his army surrounded, and blocked up on every side †. 6. Pon'tius, thus having the Romans entirely in his power, first obliged the army to pass under the yoke, after having stript them of all but their under garments. He then stipulated, that they should wholly quit the territories of the Samnites, and that they should continue to live upon the terms of their former

* An additional instance of the severity with which military discipline was maintained among the Romans, happened a short time previous to this: L. Papir'ius Cursor, the dictator, having occasion to quit the army and repair to Rome, strictly forbade Q. Fa'bius Rullia'nus, his master of the horse, to venture a battle in his absence. This order Fa'bius disobeyed, and gained a complete victory. Instead, however, of finding success, a palliation of his offence, he was immediately condemned by the stern dictator to expiate his breach of discipline by death. In spite of the mutinous disposition of the army; in spite of the intercessions and threats, both of the senate and people, Papir'ius persisted in his resolution: but what menaces and powerful interposition could not obtain, was granted to the prayers and tears of the criminal's relatives; and Fa'bius lived to fill some of the highest offices of the state, with honour to himself and infinite advantage to his country. (Liv. l. 8. c. 30. 35.)

† This gives but an indifferent idea of the military skill of those ages.

confederacy. 7. The Romans were constrained to submit to this ignominious treaty, and marched into Cap'ua disarmed, half naked, and burning with a desire of *retrieving* their lost honour. 8. When the army arrived at Rome, the whole city was most sensibly afflicted at their shameful return; nothing but grief and resentment were to be seen, and the whole city was put into mourning.

9. This was a *transitory* calamity; the state had suffered a diminution of its glory, but not of its power *. The war was carried on as usual, for many years; the power of the Samnites declining every day, while that of the Romans gained fresh vigour from every victory. 10. Under the conduct of Papir'ius Cur'sor, repeated triumphs were gained. Fa'bius Max'imus also had his share in the glory of conquering the Samnites; and De'cius, the son of that Decius whom we saw devoting himself for his country about forty years before, followed the example of his noble father, and, rushing into the midst of the enemy, saved the lives of his countrymen with the loss of his own †.

11. The Samnites being driven to the most extreme distress, and unable to defend themselves, were obliged to call in the assistance of a foreign power, and have recourse to Pyr'rhus, king of Epi'rus ‡, to save them from impending ruin. 12. Pyr'rhus, a man of great courage, ambition, and power, who had always kept the example of Alexan'der,

---

* It appears, however, to have suffered a diminution of its honour on this occasion, by breaking every article of the treaty of peace extorted from Posthu'mius. As some atonement for this breach of faith, they delivered Posthu'mius, and those who signed the treaty, into the hands of the Sam'nites, to do with them as they thought fit; but this generous people instantly set them at liberty. (Liv. l. 9, c. 8—11.)

† U. C. 447. About this time Appius Claudius, the censor, constructed an aqueduct, seven miles long, for supplying Rome with water, and that famous road from Rome to Capua, which still remains, the admiration of all Europe.

‡ Epi'rus, a country situate between Macedonia, Achaia, and the Ionian sea. (Strabo.)

his great *predecessor*, before his eyes, promised to come to their assistance; and, in the mean time, dispatched a body of three thousand men, under the command of Cin'eas, an experienced soldier, and a scholar of the great orator Demos'thenes*. 13. Nor did he himself remain long behind, but soon after put to sea with three thousand horse, twenty thousand foot, and twenty elephants, in which the commanders of that time began to place very great confidence. 14. However, only a small part of this great armament arrived in Italy with him; for many of his ships were *dispersed*, and some were totally lost, in a storm.

15. Upon his arrival at Taren'tum †, his first care was to reform the people whom he came to succour. Observing a total dissoluteness of manners in this luxurious city, and that the inhabitants were rather occupied with the pleasures of bathing, feasting, and dancing, than the care of preparing for war, he gave orders to have all their places of public entertainment shut up, and that they should be restrained in such amusements as rendered soldiers unfit for battle. 16. In the mean time the Romans did all which prudence could suggest, to oppose so formidable an enemy: and the consul Læ'vinus was sent with a numerous force to interrupt his progress. 17. Pyr'rhus, though his whole army was not yet arrived, drew out to meet him; but previously sent an ambassador, desiring to be permitted to mediate between the Romans and the people of Tarentum. 18. To this Læ'vinus answered, that *he neither esteemed him as a mediator, nor feared him as an enemy:* and then leading the ambassador through the Roman camp, desired him to observe diligently what he saw, and to report the result to his master.

---

* Demos'thenes, famous for his bold and nervous style of oratory, flourished at Athens about 320 years before the Christian era.

† Taren'tum, now Taren'to, was a town of Calabria, in Italy, situate on a bay of the same name, near the mouth of the river Gale'sus: it was celebrated for its fine harbour. (Strabo.)

19. In consequence of this, both armies approaching, pitched their tents in sight of each other, upon the opposite banks of the river Ly'ris. Pyr'rhus was always extremely careful in directing the situation of his own camp, and in observing that of the enemy. 20. Walking along the banks of the river, and surveying the Roman method of encamping, he was heard to observe that these barbarians seemed to be no way barbarous, and that he should too soon find their actions equal to their resolution. 21. In the mean time he placed a body of men in readiness to oppose the Romans, in case they should attempt to ford the stream before his whole army was brought together. 22. Things turned out according to his expectations; the consul, with an impetuosity that marked his inexperience, gave orders for passing the river where it was *fordable;* and the advanced guard, having attempted to oppose him in vain, was obliged to retire to the whole body of the army. 23. Pyr'rhus being apprised of the enemy's attempt, at first hoped to cut off their cavalry, before they could be *reinforced* by the foot, which were not as yet got over; and led on in person a chosen body of horse against them. 24. The Roman legions having, with much difficulty, advanced across the river, the engagement became general; the Greeks fought with a consciousness of their former fame, and the Romans with a desire of gaining fresh glory: mankind had seldom seen two such differently disciplined armies opposed to each other; nor is it to this day determined whether the Greek *phalanx*, or the Roman *legion*, were preferable. 25. The combat was long in suspense; the Romans had seven times repulsed the enemy, and were as often driven back themselves; but at length, while the success seemed doubtful, Pyr'rhus sent his elephants into the midst of the engagement, and these turned the scale of victory in his favour. 26. The Romans, who had never before encountered creatures of such magnitude, were terrified

not only at their intrepid fierceness, but at the castles that were fastened on their backs, filled with armed men. 27. It was then that Pyr'rhus saw the day was his own; and, sending his Thessalian cavalry to charge the enemy in disorder, the rout became general. A dreadful slaughter of the Romans ensued, fifteen thousand men being killed on the spot, and eighteen hundred taken prisoners. 28. Nor were the conquerors in a much better state than the vanquished, Pyr'rhus himself being wounded, and thirteen thousand of his forces slain. Night coming on, put an end to the slaughter on both sides, and Pyr'rhus was heard to exclaim, that one such victory more would ruin his whole army. 29. The next day, as he walked to view the field of battle, he could not help regarding with admiration the bodies of the Romans who were slain. Upon seeing them all with their wounds in front, their countenances even in death, marked with noble resolution, and a sternness that awed him into respect, he was heard to cry out, in the true spirit of a military adventurer, "Oh! with what ease could I conquer the world, had I the Romans for soldiers, or had they me for their king!"

30. Pyr'rhus, after this victory, was still unwilling to drive them to an extremity, and considering that it was best to treat with an humbled enemy, he resolved to send his friend Cin'eas *, the orator, to *negociate* a peace; of whom he often asserted, that he had won more towns by the eloquence of Cin'eas, than by his own arms. 31. But Cin'eas, with all his art, found the Romans incapable of being seduced, either by private bribery, or public persuasion; with a haughtiness little expected from a vanquished enemy, they insisted that Pyr'rhus should evacuate Italy, previous to a commencement of a treaty of peace.

* Cin'eas is said to have possessed so retentive a memory, that, the day after his arrival at Rome, he could salute every senator and knight by name.

Questions for Examination.

1. Were the Romans uniformly successful?
2. What occasioned this disaster?
3. By what means did he effect it?
4. What followed?
5. Was the Roman general deceived by this stratagem?
6. What advantage did the Samnite commander take of the situation of the Romans?
7. Were these terms accepted?
8. How was this news received at Rome?
9. Did this event put an end to the war?
10. Who signalized themselves against the Samnites?
11. What measures did the Samnites adopt in this extremity?
12. What was the character of Pyrrhus, and what effort did he make for their relief?
13. Did he follow in person?
14. Did this great force arrive in safety?
15. What was his first care?
16. What measures did the Romans adopt?
17. Did Pyrrhus immediately commence hostilities?
18. What answer was returned?
19. What followed?
20. What opinion did Pyrrhus form of the Romans?
21. What were his first measures?
22. Were his precautions justified?
23. In what way did Pyrrhus resist this attack?
24. What is worthy of observation in this engagement?
25. To whom did the victory fall?
26. How did the elephants decide the victory?
27. What completed the rout?
28. Was this victory cheaply purchased?
29. What were his sensations on viewing the field of battle?
30. Did Pyrrhus follow up his victory?
31. Were the arts of Cineas successful?

SECT. III.

1. Extol'ling, *part.* greatly praising.
8. Pan'ic, *s.* violent fear.
15. Alleg'ing, *part.* affirming, mentioning.
17. Schooled, *part.* trained, instructed.
18. Magnanim'ity, *s.* greatness of mind, bravery, elevation of soul.
27. Cit'adel, *s.* a fortress, a castle.
Invet'erate, *a.* obstinate, not to be appeased.

1. BEING frustrated, therefore, in his expectations, Cin'eas returned to his master, *extolling* both the virtues

and the grandeur of the Romans. The senate, he said, appeared a reverend assembly of demi-gods; and the city, a temple for their reception. 2. Of this Pyr'rhus soon after became sensible, by an embassy from Rome, concerning the ransom and exchange of prisoners. 3. At the head of this venerable deputation was Fabri"cius, an ancient senator, who had long been a pattern to his countrymen of the most extreme poverty, joined to the most cheerful content. 4. Pyr'rhus received this celebrated old man with great kindness; and willing to try how far fame had been just in his favour, offered him rich presents; but the Roman refused. 5. The day after, he was desirous of examining the equality of his temper, and ordered one of his largest elephants to be placed behind the tapestry, which, upon a signal given, being drawn aside, the huge animal raised its trunk above the ambassador's head, making a hideous noise, and using other arts to intimidate him. 6. But Fabri"cius, with an unchanged countenance, smiled upon the king, and told him, that he looked with an equal eye on the terrors of that day, as he had upon the allurements of the *preceding*. 7. Pyr'rhus, pleased to find so much virtue in one he had considered as a barbarian, was willing to grant him the only favour which he knew could make him happy; he released the Roman prisoners, entrusting them to Fabri"cius alone, upon his promise, that, in case the senate were determined to continue the war, he might reclaim them whenever he thought proper *.

8. By this time the Roman army was recovered from its
U.C. 474. late defeat, and Sulpi"cius and De'cius, the consuls for the following year, were placed at its head. 9. The *panic* which had formerly seized it, from the elephants, now began to wear off; and both armies met

* So great an enemy was Fabri"cius to luxury, that all his household utensils were of the meanest materials. He banished from the senate, Corne'lius Rufi'nus, who had been twice consul and dictator, because he kept in his house more than ten pounds weight of silver plate. (Flor. l. 1. c. 18 in notâ.) Such a man was not easily corrupted!

near the city of As'culum, pretty nearly equal in numbers. 10. Here again, after a long and obstinate fight, the Grecian discipline prevailed. The Romans, pressed on every side, particularly by the elephants, were obliged to retire to their camp, leaving six thousand men upon the field of battle. 11. But the enemy had no great reason to boast of their triumph, as they had four thousand slain. Pyr'rhus again observed, to a soldier who was congratulating him upon his victory, "Another such a triumph, and I shall be undone." This battle finished the campaign. 12. The next season began with equal vigour on both sides; Pyr'rhus having received new succours from home. 13. While the two armies were approaching, and yet but a small distance from each other, a letter was brought to old Fabri"cius, the Roman general, from the king's physician, importing that, for a proper reward, he would take him off by poison, and thus rid the Romans of a powerful enemy, and a dangerous war. 14. Fabri"cius felt all the honest indignation at this base proposal, that was consistent with his former character; he communicated it to his colleague, and instantly gave it as his opinion, that Pyr'rhus should be informed of the treachery that was plotted against him. 15. Accordingly, letters were dispatched for that purpose, informing Pyr'rhus of the affair, and *alleging* his unfortunate choice of friends and enemies; that he had trusted and promoted murderers, while he directed his resentment against the generous and brave. 16. Pyr'rhus now began to find that these bold barbarians were, by degrees, *schooled* into refinement, and would not suffer him to be their superior, even in generosity. He received the message with as much amazement at their candour, as indignation at his physician's treachery. "Admirable Fabri"cius!" cried he, "it would be as easy to turn the sun from its course, as thee from the path of honour." 17. Then, making the proper inquiry among his servants, and having discovered

the treason, he ordered his physician to be executed. 18. Not to be outdone in *magnanimity*, he immediatly sent to Rome all his prisoners without ransom, and again desired to negociate a peace; but the Romans still refused, upon any other conditions than had been offered before *.

19. After an interval of two years, Pyr'rhus, having increased his army by new levies, sent one part of it to oppose the march of Len'tulus, while he, with the other, went to attack Cu'rius Denta'tus, before his colleague could come up. 20. His principal aim was to surprise the enemy by night; but unfortunately, passing through woods, and the lights failing him, his men lost their way; so that at the approach of morning he saw himself in the sight of the Roman camp, with the enemy drawn out ready to receive him. The vanguard of both armies soon met, in which the Romans had the advantage. 21. Soon after, a general engagement ensuing, Pyr'rhus, finding the balance of the victory turning still against him, had once more recourse to his elephants. 22. These, however, the Romans were now too well acquainted with, to feel any vain terrors from; and having found that fire was the most effectual means to repel them, they caused a number of balls to be made, composed of flax and rosin, which were lighted and thrown against them as they approached the ranks. 23. The elephants, rendered furious by the flame, and boldly opposed by the soldiers, could no longer be brought on; but ran back on their own army, bearing down their ranks, and filling all places with terror and confusion: thus victory, at length, declared in favour of Rome. 24. Pyr'rhus, in vain, attempted to stop the flight and slaughter of his troops; he lost not only twenty-three thousand of his best soldiers, but his camp was also taken. 25. This served as a new lesson to the Romans, who were ever open to improvement. They had formerly pitched their tents

* They however released an equal number of Tarentine and Samnite prisoners.

without order; but, by this new capture, they were taught to measure out their ground, and fortify the whole with a trench; so that many of their succeeding victories are to be ascribed to their improved method of encamping.

26. Pyr'rhus, thus finding all hopes fruitless, resolved to leave Italy, where he found only desperate enemies, and faithless allies; accordingly, calling together the Taren'tines, he informed them, that he had received assurances from Greece of a speedy assistance, and desiring them to wait the event with tranquillity, the night following he embarked his troops, and returned undisturbed into his native kingdom, with the remains of his shattered forces, leaving a garrison in Taren'tum merely to save appearances: and in this manner ended the war with Pyr'rhus after six years' continuance.

27. As for the poor luxurious Taren'tines, who were the original promoters of the war, they soon began to find a worse enemy in the garrison that was left for their defence, than in the Romans who attacked them from without. The hatred between them and Milo, who commanded their *citadel* for Pyr'rhus, was become so great, that nothing but the fear of their old *inveterate* enemies, the Romans, could equal it. 28. In this distress they applied to the Carthagin'ians, who, with a large fleet, came and blocked up the port of Taren'tum; so that this unfortunate people, once famous through Italy for their refinements and pleasures, now saw themselves contended for by three different armies, without the choice of a conqueror. 29. At length, however, the Romans found means to bring over the garrison to their interest; after which they easily became masters of the city, and demolished its walls, granting the inhabitants liberty and protection.

Questions for Examination.

1. What report did Cineas give of the Romans?
2. By what means did Pyrrhus become convinced of its truth?

3. Who headed this disputation?
4. What reception did he experience?
5. What farther trial was made of his disposition?
6. What effect did this produce in Fabricius?
7. In what way did Pyrrhus evince his satisfaction?
8. In what state was the Roman army at this time?
9. Were the Romans still afraid of the elephants?
10. What was the event of the engagement?
11. Did it cost the enemy dear?
12. Was the war continued?
13. What proposal was made to Fabricius?
14. How was this proposal received?
15. How was this done?
16. What effect had this conduct on Pyrrhus?
17. What followed?
18. What return did he make to the Romans?
19. How was this war carried on?
20. What view had he in this, and how did they succeed?
21. What expedient did Pyrrhus have recourse to, to ensure the victory?
22. Did it succeed?
23. What was the consequence?
24. What loss did Pyrrhus sustain?
25. What advantage did the Romans gain from this victory?
26. What resolution did Pyrrhus form, and how did he effect it?
27. What became of the Tarentines?
28. To whom did they have recourse?
29. How did this terminate?

CHAPTER XIV.

From the beginning of the first Punic War, to the beginning of the second, when the Romans began to grow powerful by Sea.—U. C. 493.

SECT. I.

2. Embroi'ling, *part.* setting at enmity, putting in confusion.
9. Unsurmount'able, *a.* that cannot be overcome.
11. Persever'ance, *s.* constancy.
14. Consum'mate, *a.* perfect, complete, accomplished.
16. Grapple, *v.* to fight close, hand to hand, to lay hold of their ships with grappling irons.
Mer'cenary, *a.* serving for hire.
23. Despon'dence, *s.* dejection, despair.

1. THE Romans having destroyed all rival pretensions at home, began to pant after foreign conquests. 2. The Carthagin'ians were at that time in possession of the greatest part of Sicily, and, like the Romans, only wanted an opportunity of *embroiling* the natives, in order to become masters of the whole island. 3. This opportunity at length offered. Hi'ero, king of Sy'racuse, one of the states of that island, which was as yet unconquered, entreated their aid against the Mam'ertines, a little people of the same country, and they sent him supplies both by sea and land *. 4. The Mam'ertines, on the other hand, to shield off impending ruin, put themselves under the protection of Rome. 5. The Romans, not thinking the Mam'ertines worthy of the name of allies, instead of professing to assist them, boldly declared war against Carthage; alleging as a reason, the assistance which Carthage had lately sent to the southern parts of Italy against the Romans. In this manner a war was declared between two powerful states, both too great to continue patient spectators of each other's increase.

6. Carthage, a colony of the Phœni'cians, was built on the coast of Africa, near the place where Tunis now stands, about a hundred and thirty-seven years before the foundation of Rome. 7. As it had been long growing into power, so it had extended its dominions all along the coasts: but its chief strength lay in its fleets and commerce. 8. Thus circumstanced, these two great powers began what is called the First Punic war. The Carthagin'ians were possessed of gold and silver, which might

* Hi'ero had been, for many years, a firm friend to the Romans; and though their protecting a city which would otherwise have fallen into his hands, occasioned a temporary interruption of that friendship, it was soon resumed, and continued unshaken during the remainder of a long reign. The happy effects of this prudent conduct, were experienced by his subjects; for, while the other states of the island witnessed scenes of carnage and ruin, Sy'racuse enjoyed the sweets of tranquillity and affluence. (Polyb. et alii.)

be exhausted; the Romans were famous for perseverance, patriotism, and poverty, which gathered strength by every defeat.

9. But there seemed to be an *unsurmountable* obstacle to the ambitious views of Rome, as they had no fleet, or at least none that deserved the title; while the Carthagin'ians had the entire command at sea, and kept all the maritime towns in obedience *. 10. In such a situation, under disadvantages which nature seemed to have imposed, any people but the Romans would have rested; but nothing could conquer or intimidate them. 11. A Carthagin'ian vessel happened to be driven on shore, in a storm, and this was sufficient to serve as a model. They began to apply themselves to maritime affairs; and though without shipwrights to build, or seamen to navigate a fleet, they resolved to surmount every obstacle with inflexible *perseverance*. 12. The consul Duil'ius was the first who ventured to sea with his new constructed armament; and, though far inferior to the enemy in the management of his fleet, yet he gained the first naval victory, the Carthagin'ians losing fifty of their ships, and the undisturbed sovereignty of the sea, which they valued more †.

13. But the conquest of Sicily was to be obtained only

* The vessels in which they had hitherto transported their troops, were principally hired from their neighbours the Lo'crians, Taren'tines, &c. It is certain that the Romans had ships of war before this period, but from the little attention they had hitherto paid to naval affairs, they were, probably, badly constructed and ill managed.

† While the heroic conduct of Leon'idas and his little band of Spartans has met with deserved applause in all ages, a similar devotedness for his country in Calpur'nius Flem'ma, a military tribune, has been scarcely noticed: the Consul Calati'nus having carelessly suffered himself to be entrapped by the Carthagin'ians, in a place from whence there was no hope of being extricated, Calpurnius, with 300 resolute men, possessed himself of a neighbouring eminence, and with incredible courage so engaged the attention of the Carthagin'ians, that the Roman army escaped with very little opposition. This band of heroes was slaughtered to a man, and Calpur'nius himself fell, dreadfully wounded, but afterwards recovered of his wounds. He was rewarded with a corona graminis, or crown made of grass.

by humbling the power of Carthage at home. For this reason the senate resolved to carry the war into Africa itself, and accordingly they sent Reg'ulus and Man'lius, with a fleet of three hundred sail, to make the invasion. 14. Reg'ulus was reckoned the most *consummate* warrior that Rome could then produce; and a professed example of frugal severity. His patriotism was still greater than his temperance: all private passions seemed extinguished in him, at least they were swallowed up in one great ruling affection, the love of his country. 15. The two generals set sail with their fleet, which was the greatest that had ever yet left an Italian port, carrying a hundred and forty thousand men. They were met by the Carthagin'ians with a fleet equally powerful, and men more used to the sea. 16. While the fight continued at a distance, the Carthagin'ians seemed successful; but when the Romans came to *grapple* with them, the difference between a *mercenary* army, and one that fought for fame, was apparent. 17. The resolution of the Romans was crowned with success; the enemy's fleet were dispersed, and fifty-four of their vessels taken. 18. The consequence of this victory was an immediate descent upon the coast of Africa, and the capture of the city Clu'pea *; together with twenty thousand men who were made prisoners of war †.

19. The senate being informed of these great successes, and applied to for fresh instructions, commanded Man'lius back to Italy, in order to superintend the Sicilian war; and directed that Reg'ulus should continue in Africa, to prosecute his victories there.

---

* Clu'pea, or Cly'pea, now Aklib'ia, is a town of Africa Proper, 22 miles from the site of Carthage. (Strabo.) It was very conveniently situated to serve as a magazine of arms and provisions for the Romans, and there were several ports near it, to shelter their fleets. (Polyb.)

† While Reg'ulus lay encamped here, near the river Bagra'da, he is said to have slain a monstrous serpent by the help of his battering engines. Its skin, which was 120 feet long, was sent to Rome, and preserved for along time with great care.

20. A battle ensued, in which Carthage was once more defeated, and 17,000 of its best troops were cut off. This fresh victory contributed to throw them into the utmost despair; for more than eighty of their towns submitted to the Romans *. 21. In this distress, the Carthagin'ians, destitute of generals at home, were obliged to send to Lacedæ'mon, offering the command of their armies to Xantip'pus, a general of great experience, who undertook to conduct them.

22. This general began by giving the magistrates proper instructions for levying their men; he assured them that their armies were hitherto overthrown, not by the strength of the enemy, but by the ignorance of their own commanders; he therefore required a ready obedience to his orders, and assured them of an easy victory. 23. The whole city seemed once more revived from *despondence*, by the exhortations of a single stranger; and soon, from hope grew into confidence. 24. This was the spirit the Grecian general wished to excite in them; so that when he saw them thus ripe for the engagement, he joyfully took the field. 25. The Lacedæmo'nian made the most skilful disposition of his forces; he placed his cavalry in the wings; he disposed their elephants at proper intervals, behind the line of the heavy-armed infantry; and, bringing up the light-armed troops before, he ordered them to retire through the line of infantry, after they had discharged their weapons. 26. At length both armies engaged; after a long and obstinate resistance, the Romans were overthrown with dreadful slaughter, the

* To complete their misfortunes, the Numid'ians entered their territory, laid waste their fields, and committed such dreadful devastations, that a severe famine ensued, with all its attendant horrors. At this critical juncture, Reg'ulus, who had advanced to the very gates of the city, sent the Carthagin'ians proposals of peace. The deputies were received with transports of joy till the conditions were known, when they were found so severe, that the senators protested they would rather die a thousand deaths than submit to them.

greatest part of their army destroyed, and Reg'ulus himself taken prisoner *. 27. Several other distresses of the Romans followed soon after. They lost their fleet in a storm †; and Agrigen'tum ‡, their principal town in Sicily, was taken by Karth'alo, the Carthagin'ian general. They built a new fleet, which shared the fate of the former; for the mariners, as yet unacquainted with the Mediterra'nean shores, drove upon quicksands, and soon after the greater part perished in a storm §.

Questions for Examination.

1. Were the Romans content with their successes?
2. What state afforded them an opportunity for this purpose?
3. Were their wishes gratified, and how?
4. What measures did the Mamertines adopt?
5. Did the Romans afford them the assistance they requested?
6. Where was Carthage situated, and when was it built?
7. Was it a powerful state?
8. Had the Romans or the Carthaginians the means most likely to ensure success?
9. Were Rome and Carthage on an equal footing in other respects?
10. Did the Romans attempt to overcome this obstacle?
11. What assisted their endeavours?
12. Who was their first naval commander, and what was his success?
13. What were the means adopted to conquer Sicily?
14. What was the character of Regulus?

---

* Xantip'pus met with a very ungrateful return for the signal services he had rendered the Carthagin'ians, for the seamen who were appointed to conduct him home, had private orders to throw him overboard, lest he should ascribe to himself the honour of this victory.

† A fine army was thus lost; all the riches that had been amassed in Africa were swallowed up by the sea, and the whole coast from Pachi'num to Cameri'na was covered with dead bodies and the wreck of ships, so that history scarcely affords another example of so dreadful a disaster.

‡ Now Girgen'ti. In its flourishing situation it contained 200,000 inhabitants. (Polyb. Strabo.)

§ The Romans, considering these two disasters as indications of the will of the gods that they should not contend by sea, made a decree, that no more than fifty gallies should, for the future, be equipped. This decree, however, did not continue long in force.

15. What was the amount of the force on both sides?
16. On which side did the advantage lie?
17. With whom did the victory remain?
18. What was the consequence of this victory?
19. What were the orders of the senate?
20. What was the next event deserving notice, and its consequences?
21. To what expedient were the Carthaginians obliged to have recourse?
22. What were the first acts of this general?
23. What were the effects his arrival produced?
24. What was the consequence?
25. In what way was the Carthaginian army drawn up?
26. What was the event of the battle?
27. Was this their only disaster?

SECT. II.

1. Solic'itor, *s.* one who solicits, or asks for another.
8. Ter'minate, *v.* to end.
9. Embar'rassment, *s.* perplexity, difficulty.
16. Exhaust'ed, *part.* drained of their resources.
Subscrib'ed, *v.* agreed to, signed.

1. THE Carthagin'ians being thus successful, were desirous of a new treaty for peace, hoping to have better terms than those insisted upon by Reg'ulus *. They supposed that he, whom they had now for four years kept in a dungeon, confined and chained, would be a proper *solicitor*. It was expected, that, being wearied with imprisonment and bondage, he would gladly endeavour to persuade his countrymen to a discontinuance of the war which prolonged his captivity. 2. He was accordingly sent with their ambassadors to Rome, under a promise, previously exacted from him, to return in case of being unsuccessful. He was even given to understand, that his life depended upon the success of his negociation †.

* These are subsequently mentioned.

† Though the Carthagin'ians had been partially successful, their condition fully justified their anxiety for peace. The war had already lasted fourteen years; they had lost their best com-

3. When this old general, together with the ambassadors of Carthage, approached Rome, numbers of his friends came out to meet him, and congratulate him on his return. 4. Their acclamations resounded through the city; but Reg'ulus refused, with settled melancholy, to enter the gates. In vain he was entreated on every side to visit once more his little dwelling, and share in that joy which his return had inspired. He persisted in saying that he was now a slave belonging to the Carthagin'ians, and unfit to partake in the liberal honours of his country. 5. The senate assembling without the walls, as usual, to give audience to the ambassadors, Reg'ulus opened his commission as he had been directed by the Carthagin'ian council, and their ambassadors seconded his proposals. 6. The senate themselves, who were weary of a war which had been protracted above fourteen years, were no way disinclinable to a peace. It only remained for Reg'ulus himself to give his opinion. 7. When it came to his turn to speak, to the surprise of the whole, he gave his voice for continuing the war. 8. So unexpected an advice not a little disturbed the senate: they pitied, as well as admired a man who had used such eloquence against his private interest, and could conclude upon a measure which was to *terminate* in his own ruin. 9. But he soon relieved their *embarrassment* by breaking off the treaty, and by rising, in order to return to his bonds and his confinement. 10. In vain did the senate and his dearest friends entreat his stay; he still repressed their solicitations. Mar'cia, his wife, with her children, vainly entreated to be permitted to see him: he still obstinately persisted in keeping his promise; and though sufficiently apprised of the tortures that awaited his return, without

manders, their elephants, and their fleets; their finances were exhausted, their armies diminished, and the only towns they had now left in Sicily were Lilybæ'um (now Boco) and Drepa'num (now Trapa'ni,) the former of which was invested by the Roman army.

embracing his family, or taking leave of his friends, he departed with the ambassadors for Carthage.

11. Nothing could equal the fury and the disappointment of the Carthagin'ians, when they were informed by their ambassadors that Reg'ulus, instead of hastening a peace, had given his opinion for continuing the war. 12. They accordingly prepared to punish his conduct with the most studied tortures. His eye-lids were cut off, and he was remanded to prison. After some days, he was again brought out from his dark and dismal dungeon, and exposed with his face opposite the burning sun. At last, when malice was fatigued with studying all the arts of torture, he was put into a sort of barrel, stuck full of spikes, and in this painful position he continued till he died *.

13. Both sides now took up arms with more than former animosity. At length the Roman perseverance was crowned with success, one victory followed on the back of another †. Fa'bius Bu'teo, the consul, once more shewed them the way to naval victory, by defeating a large squadron of the enemy's ships; but Luta'tius Cat'ulus gained a victory still more complete, in which the power of Carthage seemed totally destroyed at sea, by the

---

* This cruelty was retaliated by his wife Mar'cia, on some Carthagin'ian captives of the highest quality.

† They met, however, with some sad reverses. P. Clau'dius Pul'cher, engaging Ath'erbal, the commander of the Carthagin'ian fleet, was defeated, with the loss of ninety gallies, eight thousand men killed, and twenty thousand taken prisoners. The loss of this engagement was partly owing to the consul's contemptuous disregard of the auspices held in such veneration by the Romans; for when the sacred chickens refused to feed, (which was considered an ill omen) he threw them, coop and all, into the sea, saying, *if they will not eat, let them drink.* This supposed impiety so disheartened his troops, that they made but a faint resistance to the enemy, and suffered themselves to be cut down like cowards. (Polyb. c. 49. 53.) They likewise lost another fleet in a storm. Of one hundred and twenty gallies, and eight hundred transports laden with stores, not one vessel escaped. (Ibid. l. i. c. 54—56.) After the loss of this fleet, the Roman senate encouraged their subjects to fit out privateers to harass and plunder the enemy.

loss of a hundred and twenty ships *. 14. This loss compelled the Carthagin'ians again to sue for peace, which Rome thought proper to grant; but, still inflexible in its demands, exacted the same conditions which Reg'ulus had formerly offered at the gates of Carthage. 15. These were, that they should lay down a thousand talents of silver, to defray the charge of the war, and should pay two thousand two hundred more † within ten years; that they should quit Sicily, with all such islands as they possessed near it; that they should never make war against the allies of Rome, nor come with any vessels of war within the Roman dominions; and lastly, that all their prisoners and deserters should be delivered up without ransom. 16. To these hard conditions, the Carthagin'ians, now *exhausted*, readily *subscribed*; and thus ended the first Punic war, which had lasted twenty-four years; and in some measure, had drained both nations of their resources ‡. U. C. 513.

Questions for Examination.

1. What measures did the Carthaginians adopt in consequence of these successes?
2. Was Regulus employed for this purpose?
3. How was Regulus received by the Romans?
4. What was the conduct of Regulus on this occasion?
5. How did the negociation commence?
6. Were the Romans inclined for peace?
7. What was the opinion of Regulus?
8. What was the effect of this advice?
9. How did Regulus put an end to their embarrassment?
10. Could he not be prevailed on to remain at Rome?
11. How did the Carthaginians receive an account of his conduct?

---

* The fleet commanded by L. Cat'ulus was built and equipped at the expense of private persons. The ships were far superior in construction to any Rome had ever before sent out. (Zonaras l. 8. c. 6.)

† 437,250*l.* sterling.

‡ The Romans lost seven hundred ships in this war, the Carthagin'ians only five hundred. But Roman perseverance prevailed.

12. In what way did they punish him?
13. With what success was the war continued?
14. What was the consequence of this loss?
15. What were these terms?
16. Were they agreed to?

CHAPTER XV.

From the end of the first Punic War to the end of the second.

SECT. I.

3. Rail'lery, *s.* satirical mirth, jesting.
4. Deri"sion, *s.* contempt, mockery, scorn.
6. Mod'el, *s.* copy, pattern.
Ele'giac, *a.* mournful, sad, solemn.
Pas'toral, *a.* relating to shepherds, rural.
Didac'tic, *a.* perceptive, doctrinal.
7. Intrepid'ity, *s.* courage, boldness, bravery.
8. Restitu'tion, *s.* a restoration of any thing unjustly taken.
9. Ce'ded, *v.* given up to, transferred.
Prohibi"tion, *s.* a forbidding, or hindering.
10. Incur'red, *v.* became liable to, brought on themselves.
13. Evolu'tions, *s.* exercises, manœuvres.
16. Retriev'ed, *v.* recovered, repaired.
22. Sus'tenance, *s.* food.
Antiq'uity, *s.* ancient times, of old.
25. Intim'idate, *v.* to alarm, to frighten, to deter.
Cur'rent, *s.* stream.
Undaun'ted, *a.* bold, courageous, firm.

1. THE war being ended between the Carthagin'ians and Romans, a profound peace ensued, and in about six years after, the temple of Ja'nus was shut for the second time since the foundation of the city *. 2. The Romans being thus in friendship with all nations, had an opportunity of turning to the arts of peace; they now began to have a relish for poetry, the first liberal art which rises in every civilized nation, and the first also that decays.

* The first was in the reign of Numa.

3. Hitherto they had been entertained only with the rude drolleries of their lowest buffoons, they had sports called Fescen'nia, in which a few debauched actors invented their own parts, while *raillery* and indecency supplied the place of humour. 4. To these a composition of a higher kind succeeded, called satire; a sort of dramatic poem, in which the characters of the great were particularly pointed out, and made an object of *derision* to the vulgar. 5. After these, came tragedy and comedy, which were borrowed from the Greeks: indeed, the first dramatic poet of Rome, whose name was Liv'ius Andro- ni'cus, was by birth a Grecian. 6. The instant { U.C. 514. these finer kinds of composition appeared, this great people rejected their former impurities with disdain. From thenceforward they laboured upon the Grecian *model;* and, though they were never able to rival their masters in dramatic composition, they soon surpassed them in many of the more soothing kinds of poetry. *Elegiac, pastoral,* and *didactic* compositions began to assume new beauties in the Roman language; and satire, not that rude kind of dialogue already mentioned, but a nobler sort, was all their own *.

7. While they were thus cultivating the arts of peace, they were not unmindful of making fresh preparations for war: intervals of ease seemed to give fresh vigour for new designs, rather than relax their former *intrepidity.* 8. The Illyr'ians were the first people upon whom they tried their strength †. That nation happened to make depredations upon some of the trading subjects of Rome; { U. C. 527. which being complained of to Teuta, the queen of the country, she, instead of granting redress, ordered the ambassadors, who were sent to demand *restitution,* to

* About this time flourished En'nius, who wrote the history of Rome in verse. He was the inventor of the Latin Hexameter. (Vassius.—Valerius Maximus, l. 8. c. 15.)

† Illyr'ium or Illyr'ia, a country bordered on one side by Macedon and Epi'rus, and on the other by the Adriatic sea. (Strabo.)

be murdered. 9. A war ensued, in which the Romans were victorious; most of the Illyr'ic towns were surrendered to the consuls, and a peace at last concluded, by which the greatest part of the country was *ceded* to Rome; a yearly tribute was exacted for the rest, and a *prohibition* added, that the Illyr'ians should not sail beyond the river Lis'sus with more than two barks, and those unarmed.

10. The Gauls were the next people that *incurred* the displeasure of the Romans. 11. A time of peace, when the armies were disbanded, was the proper season for new irruptions; accordingly these barbarians invited fresh forces from beyond the Alps, and entering Etru'ria, wasted all with fire and sword, till they came within about three days' journey of Rome. 12. A prætor and a consul were sent to oppose them, who, now instructed in the improved arts of war, were enabled to surround the Gauls. 13. It was in vain that those hardy troops, who had nothing but courage to protect them, formed two fronts to oppose their adversaries; their naked bodies and undisciplined forces were unable to withstand the shock of any enemy completely armed, and skilled in military *evolutions*. 14. A miserable slaughter ensued, in which forty thousand were killed, and ten thousand taken prisoners *. 15. This victory was followed by another, gained by Marcel'lus, in which he killed Viridoma'rus, their king, with his own hand. 16. These conquests forced them to beg for peace, the conditions of which served greatly to enlarge the empire. Thus the Romans went on with success; *retrieved* their former losses, and only wanted an enemy worthy of their arms to begin a new war †.

* Polybius (l. 2. c. 111.) says, that the troops raised by the republic on this occasion, were eight hundred thousand men; of which two hundred and seventy thousand were Romans or Campanians.

† Deme'trius, who had succeeded Teuta in the government of Illyr'icum, having violated the articles of the late treaty, a Roman army was sent against him, which conquered the remaining part of the kingdom, and obliged Deme'trius to fly into Macedon. (Livius.)

17. The Carthagin'ians had made peace solely because they were no longer able to continue the war. They therefore took the earliest opportunity of breaking the treaty, and besieged Sagun'tum, a city of Spain, which had been in alliance with Rome; and, though desired to desist, prosecuted their operations with vigour*. 18. Ambassadors were sent, in consequence, from Rome to Car'thage, complaining of the infraction of their articles, and required that Han'nibal, the Carthagin'ian general, who had advised this measure, should be delivered up: which being refused, both sides prepared for a second Punic war.

19. The Carthagin'ians trusted the management of it to Han'nibal. 20. This extraordinary man had been made the sworn foe of Rome, almost from his infancy; for, while yet very young, his father brought him before the altar, and obliged him to take an oath, that he would never be in friendship with the Romans, nor desist from opposing their power, until he or they should be no more. 21. On his first appearance in the field, he united in his own person the most masterly method of commanding, with the most perfect obedience to his superiors. Thus he was equally beloved by his generals, and the troops he was appointed to lead. 22. He was possessed of the greatest courage in opposing danger, and the greatest presence of mind in retiring from it. No fatigue was able to subdue his body, nor any misfortune to break his spirit; he was equally patient of heat and cold, and he took *sustenance* merely to content nature, not to delight his appetite. He was the best horseman, and the swiftest runner, of the time. 23. This great general, who is considered as the most skilful commander of *antiquity*, having overran all Spain, and levied a large army composed of various nations, resolved to carry the war into Italy itself, as the

* It appears, however, that the Romans had, by their haughty behaviour, their repeated extortions, and their unjust invasions of Cor'sica and Sardin'ia, given the Car'thagin'ians just cause of complaint.

Romans had before carried it into the dominions of Car'thage. 24. For this purpose, leaving Hanno with a sufficient force to guard his conquests in Spain, he crossed the Pyrene'an mountains into Gaul, with an army of fifty thousand foot, and nine thousand horse. He quickly traversed that country, which was then wild and extensive, and filled with nations that were his declared enemies. 25. In vain its forests and rivers appeared to *intimidate;* in vain the Rhone with its rapid *current,* and its banks covered with enemies, or the Dura branched out into numberless channels, opposed his way; he passed them all with *undaunted* spirit, and in ten days arrived at the foot of the Alps, over which he was to explore a new passage into Italy. 26. It was in the midst of winter, when this astonishing project was undertaken. The season added new horrors to the scene. The prodigious height and tremendous steepness of these mountains, capped with snow; the people barbarous and fierce, dressed in skins, with long and shaggy hair; presented a picture that impressed the beholders with astonishment and terror. 27. But nothing was capable of subduing the courage of the Carthagin'ian general. At the end of fifteen days, spent in crossing the Alps, he found himself in the plains of Italy, with about half his army; the other half having died of cold, or been cut off by the natives *.

Questions for Examination.

1. What was the consequence of the conclusion of the first Punic War?
2. What advantage did the Romans derive from this interval of peace?
3. What species of entertainment had they hitherto enjoyed?
4. What succeeded these low buffooneries?
5. What was the next species, and from whom was it borrowed?

---

* Some historians assert, that Han'nibal caused the rocks to be made red hot, and then softened with vinegar; but the story is too absurd to be credited.

6. Did their former amusements still continue to please?
7. Were the Romans attentive only to the arts of peace?
8. Who first incurred their resentment, and what was their offence?
9. What was the consequence?
10. Who next incurred the displeasure of the Romans?
11. What was their offence, and what favourable opportunity did they choose?
12. What steps were taken to oppose them?
13. Did the Gauls make any effectual resistance?
14. What was the result of the battle?
15. Did this victory decide the contest?
16. What advantages occurred to the Romans from this war?
17. Were the Carthaginians sincere in their overture for peace?
18. What was the consequence of this refusal?
19. To whom was the conduct of the war committed by the Carthaginians?
20. What rendered Hannibal particularly eligible to this post?
21. Was he a favourite with the army?
22. Describe his corporeal and mental qualifications.
23. What resolution did he adopt?
24. What measures did he take for that purpose?
25. Was he not deterred by the dangers of the way?
26. What rendered this passage peculiarly difficult?
27. Did these horrors render the attempt unsuccessful?

SECT. II.

2. Alac'rity, *s.* cheerfulness, readiness.
7. Op'ponents, *s.* adversaries, enemies.
9. Allay'ed, *v.* quieted, abated.
11. Ha"rassing, *part.* wearying, annoying.
Inacces'sible, *a.* not to be approached, or reached.
12. Imprac'ticable, *a.* impossible, not to be done.
Ex'tricate, *v.* to set free, to disentangle.
13. Ex'igence, *s.* difficulty, distress.
19. Com'petent, *a.* sufficient, equal to the occasion.

1. As soon as it was known at Rome, that Han'nibal, at the head of an immense army, was crossing the Alps, the senate sent Scip'io to oppose him; but he was obliged to retreat with considerable loss. 2. In the mean time, Han'nibal, thus victorious, took the most prudent precautions to increase his army; giving orders always to

spare the possessions of the Gauls, while depredations were committed upon those of Rome; and this so pleased that simple people, that they declared for him in great numbers, and flocked to his standard with *alacrity* *.

3. The second battle was fought upon the banks of the river Tre'bia. 4. The Carthagin'ian general, being apprised of the Roman impetuosity, of which he availed himself in almost every engagement, had sent off a thousand horse, each with a foot soldier behind, to cross the river, to ravage the enemy's country, and provoke them to engage. The Romans quickly routed this force. Seeming to be defeated, they took to the river; and were as eagerly pursued by Sempro'nius, the consul †. No sooner had his army attained the opposite bank, than he perceived himself half conquered, his men being fatigued with wading up to their arm-pits, and quite benumbed by the intense coldness of the water. 5. A total rout ensued; twenty-six thousand of the Romans were either killed by the enemy, or drowned in attempting to repass the river. A body of ten thousand men were all that survived; who, finding themselves enclosed on every side, broke desperately through the enemy's ranks, and fought, retreating, till they found shelter in the city of Placentia ‡.

---

* About two thousand foot and two hundred horse of those Gauls who served in Scip'io's army, in the night, when all was quiet in the Roman camp, entered the tents next them, murdered the Romans while they were asleep, and cutting off their heads, went over to Han'nibal, who, contrary to true magnanimity, gave them a kind reception.

† Scip'io, his colleague, was then ill of a wound received in the former battle.

‡ Now Placenza, a town of Italy, at the confluence of the Trebia and the Po. (Livius.)—After this victory, Han'nibal determined to penetrate farther into Italy. The route he chose was through the Fens, as being shorter and less likely to be occupied by the enemy, than any other. But the hardships his army encountered are almost incredible, being obliged to march three or four days and nights through mud and water, without sleep or rest. Many of the beasts were left dead in the mud, and the hoofs came off the feet of many horses.

6. The third defeat the Romans sustained was at the lake of Thrasime'ne, near to which was a chain of mountains, and, between these and the lake, a narrow passage leading to a valley that was embosomed in hills. It was upon these hills that Han'nibal disposed his best troops, and it was into this valley that Flamin'ius, the Roman general, led his men to attack him. 7. A disposition every way so favourable for the Carthagin'ians, was also assisted by accident; for a mist rising from the lake, kept the Romans from seeing their enemies; while the army upon the mountains, being above its influence, saw the whole disposition of their *opponents*. 8. The fortune of the day was such as might be expected from the conduct of the two generals. The Roman army was slaughtered, almost before they could perceive the enemy that destroyed them. About fifteen thousand Romans, with Flamin'ius himself, fell in the valley, and six thousand more were obliged to yield themselves prisoners of war.

9. Upon the news of this defeat, after the general consternation was *allayed*, the senate resolved to elect a commander with absolute authority, in whom they might repose their last and greatest expectations. 10. The choice fell upon Fa'bius Max'imus, a man of great courage, with a happy mixture of caution. 11. He was apprised that the only way to humble the Carthagin'ians at such a distance from home, was rather by *harassing* than fighting. For this purpose, he always encamped upon the highest grounds, *inaccessible* by the enemies' cavalry. Whenever they moved, he watched their motions, straitened their quarters, and cut off their provisions *.

12. By these arts, Fa'bius had actually, at one time,

* Though this was the most judicious conduct that Fa'bius could have adopted, and such as, if followed, would have effectually destroyed Hannibal's army, yet it met with the disapprobation of the senate and the people, who had not sufficient wisdom to perceive its propriety.

enclosed Han'nibal among mountains, where it was impossible to winter; and from which it was almost *impracticable* to *extricate* his army without imminent danger *. 13. In this *exigence*, nothing but one of those stratagems of war, which only men of great abilities invent, could save him. 14. He ordered a number of small faggots and lighted torches to be tied to the horns of two thousand oxen, which should be driven towards the enemy. These, tossing their heads, and running up the sides of the mountain, seemed to fill the whole neighbouring forest with fire; while the sentinels that were placed to guard the approaches to the mountain, seeing such a number of flames advancing towards their posts, fled in consternation, supposing the whole body of the enemy was in arms to overwhelm them. 15. By this stratagem, Han'nibal drew off his army, and escaped through the defiles that led beneath the hills, though with considerable damage to his rear.

16. Fa'bius, still pursuing the same judicious measures, followed Han'nibal in all his movements, but at length received a letter from the senate, recalling him to Rome, on pretence of a solemn sacrifice, requiring his presence. 17. On his departure from the army, he strictly charged Minu'tius, his general of the horse, not to hazard an engagement in his absence. This command he disobeyed, and Fa'bius expressed his determination to punish so flagrant a breach of military discipline. 18. The senate, however, favouring Minu'tius, gave him an equal authority with the dictator. 19. On the arrival of Fa'bius at the camp, he divided the army with Minu'tius, and each

* Han'nibal had ordered his guides to conduct him to Cas'inum, but from the imperfect manner in which he spoke the Roman language, they understood him to mean Casil'inum. On entering the defile, Han'nibal, who fancied himself betrayed, ordered one of the guides to be scourged, and crucified as a warning to the rest. (Plut. Liv.)

pursued his own separate plan. 20. By artful management, Han'nibal soon brought the troops of the latter to an engagement, and they would have been cut off to a man, had not Fa'bius sacrificed his private resentment to the public good, and hastened to the relief of his colleague. 21. By their united forces, Han'nibal was repulsed, and Minu'tius, conscious of his rashness, resigned the supreme command into the hands of the dictator.

22. On the expiration of his year of office, Fa'bius resigned, and Teren'tius Var'ro was chosen to the command. 23. Var'ro was a man sprung from the dregs of the people, with nothing but confidence and riches to recommend him. 24. With him was joined Æmil'ius Pau'lus, of a disposition entirely opposite; experienced in the field, cautious in action, and impressed with a thorough contempt for the abilities of his plebeian colleague.

25. The Romans finding themselves enabled to bring a *competent* force into the field, being almost ninety thousand strong, now again resolved to meet Han'nibal, who was at this time encamped near the village of Can'næ *, with a wind in his rear, that, for a certain season, blows constantly one way, which raising great clouds of dust from the parched plains behind, he knew must greatly distress an approaching enemy. In this situation he waited the coming of the Romans with an army of forty thousand foot, and half that number of cavalry. 26. The consuls soon appeared to his wish, dividing their forces into two parts, and agreeing to take the command each day by turns. 27. On the first day of their arrival, Æmil'ius was entirely averse to engaging. The next day, however, it being Var'ro's turn to command, he,

* Cannæ was originally a city of Apulia (Polybius,) but having been razed by the Romans, was at this time a poor village (Livius, Appian, Florus;) it was afterwards rebuilt. (Plinius.)

without asking his colleague's concurrence, gave the signal for battle: and passing the river Au'fidus, that lay between both armies, put his forces in array. 27. The battle began with the light-armed infantry; the horse engaged soon after; but the cavalry being unable to stand against those of Numid'ia, the legions came up to reinforce them. It was then that the conflict became general; the Roman soldiers endeavoured, in vain, to penetrate the centre, where the Gauls and Spaniards fought; which Han'nibal observing, ordered part of those troops to give way, and to permit the Romans to embosom themselves within a chosen body of his Africans, whom he had placed on their wings, so as to surround them: upon that a terrible slaughter of the Romans ensued, fatigued with repeated attacks of the Africans, who were fresh and vigorous. 28. At last the rout became general in every part of the Roman army; the boastings of Var'ro were now no longer heard: while Æmil'ius, who had been wounded by a slinger, feebly led on his body of horse, and did all that could be done to make head against the enemy. 29. Unable to sit on horseback, he was forced to dismount. It was in these deplorable circumstances, that one Len'tulus, a *tribune* of the army, flying from the enemy, who at some distance pursued him, met Æmil'ius, sitting upon a stone, covered with blood and wounds, and waiting for the coming up of the pursuers. 30. "Æmil'ius," cried the generous tribune, "you, at least, are guiltless of this day's slaughter; take my horse, and fly." "I thank thee, Len'tulus," cried the dying consul, "all is over, my part is chosen. Go, and tell the senate to fortify Rome against the approach of the conqueror. Tell Fa'bius, that Æmil'ius, while living, ever remembered his advice; and, now dying, approves it." 31. While he was yet speaking, the enemy approached; and Len'tulus at some distance saw the consul expire, feebly fighting

in the midst of hundreds. 32. In this battle the Romans lost fifty thousand men, and so many knights that it is said Han'nibal sent three bushels of gold rings to Carthage, which those of this order wore on their fingers *.

Questions for Examination.

1. What measures were adopted by the Romans?
2. What precautions did Hannibal take?
3. Where was the next battle fought?
4. What was the stratagem employed by Hannibal?
5. What followed?
6. Where was the next engagement?
7. Was this a judicious disposition of the Roman general?
8. What was the result?
9. What expedient did the senate adopt on this occasion?
10. Who was chosen to his office?
11. What method of fighting did he adopt?
12. What was the success of this plan?
13. Was his situation hopeless?
14. Describe his stratagem and its consequences.
15. Did it answer his purpose?
16. Was Fabius continued in office?
23. Who was Varro?
24. Who was his colleague, and what was his character?
25. What resolution did the Romans adopt, and in what situation was Hannibal?
26. What arrangement was made by the consuls?
27. What was the conduct of these commanders?
28. Describe the battle.
29. What was the result?
30. What happened to him after this?
31. What passed between the consul and the tribune?
32. What was the fate of Æmilius?
33. Was the loss of the Romans severe?

---

* Had Han'nibal made the best use of his victory, and marched directly to Rome, he might, in all probability, have put an end to the war, and to the Roman state at once. But this great commander, though he knew how to conquer, did not know how to improve his victories.

SECT. III.

1. Consterna'tion, *s.* fear, astonishment.
2. Reprima'nd, *v.* reprove, to blame.
5. Vet'erans, *s.* old soldiers, experienced warriors.
7. Accu'mulated, *part.* added, increased, heaped up.
8. Feint, *s.* a pretence.
13. Fatig'ued, *part.* wearied.
14. Mathemati''cian, *s.* a person versed in the mathematics.
17. Complex'ion, *s.* former appearance.
    Procon'sul, *s.* a Roman officer, who governed a province with consular authority.
18. Re''quisite, *a.* necessary.
24. Infa'tuated, *part.* deprived of understanding.
26. Explore, *v.* to examine.

1. When the first *consternation* was abated after this dreadful blow, the senate came to a resolution to create a dictator, in order to give strength to their government. 2. A short time after Var'ro arrived, having left behind him the wretched remains of his army *. As he had been the principal cause of the late calamity, it was natural to suppose, that the senate would severely *reprimand* the rashness of his conduct. But far otherwise! The Romans went out in multitudes to meet him; and the senate returned him thanks, that he had not despaired of the safety of Rome. 3. Fa'bius, who was considered as the shield, and Marcel'lus, as the sword of Rome, were appointed to lead the armies; and, though Han'nibal once more offered them peace, they refused it, but upon condition that he should quit Italy—a measure similar to that they had formerly insisted upon from Pyr'rhus.

4. Han'nibal finding the impossibility of marching di-

* The terms of the surrender were, that each Roman should pay a sum equal to 9*l.* 7*s.* 9*d.* for his ransom. (Liv. l. xxii. c. 51.) The senate, however, refused to ransom them, and they were compelled by Han'nibal to fight as gladiators, for the diversion of his troops. (Liv. l. xxiii. c. 58.)

rectly to Rome, or willing to give his forces rest after so mighty a victory, led them to Cap'ua *, where he resolved to winter. 5. This city had long been considered as the nurse of luxury, and the corrupter of all military virtue. 6. Here a new scene of pleasure opened to his barbarian troops: they at once gave themselves up to intoxication; and from being hardy *veterans*, became infirm rioters †.

7. Hitherto we have found this great man successful; but now we are to reverse the picture, and survey him struggling with *accumulated* misfortunes, and, at last, sinking beneath them.

8. His first loss was at the siege of Nola ‡, where Marcel'lus, the prætor, made a successful sally. He some time after attempted to raise the siege of Cap'ua, attacked the Romans in their trenches, and was repulsed with considerable loss. He then made a *feint* to besiege Rome, but finding a superior army ready to receive him, was obliged to retire. 9. For years after he fought with various success; Marcel'lus, his opponent, sometimes gaining, and sometimes losing the advantage, without coming to any decisive engagement.

10. The senate of Carthage at length came to a resolution of sending his brother As'drubal to his assistance, with a body of forces drawn out of Spain. 11. As'drubal's march being made known to the consuls Liv'ius and Nero, they went against him with great expedition; and, surrounding him in a place into which he was led by the treachery of his guides, they cut his whole army to

---

* Cap'ua was a very ancient city, and the capital of Campania. It rivalled Rome for opulence, and was usually enumerated with Rome and Carthage as the three great cities. (Florus, l. i. c. 16.)

† While the affairs of the Romans succeeded so ill in Italy, their troops, under the command of the two Scipios, obtained great advantages in Spain, thus making some amends for the disasters at home. (Liv. l. xxiii. c. 26, 27.)

‡ Nola, an ancient town of Campa'nia, remarkable for being the place where Augustus died. (Suet. in Aug.)

pieces. 12. Han'nibal had long expected these succours with impatience; and the very night on which he had been assured of his brother's arrival, Nero ordered As'drubal's head to be cut off, and thrown into his brother's camp. 13. The Carthagin'ian general now began to perceive the downfall of Car'thage; and with a sigh observed to those about him, that fortune seemed *fatigued* with granting her favours.

14. In the mean time, the Roman arms seemed to be favoured in other parts; Marcel'lus took the city of Syr'acuse, in Sicily, defended by the machines and the fires of Archime'des*, the *mathematician*. 15. The inhabitants were put to the sword, and among the rest, Archime'des himself, who was found, by a Roman soldier, meditating in his study. 16. Marcel'lus, the general, was not a little grieved at his death. A love of literature at that time began to prevail among the higher ranks at Rome. Marcel'lus ordered Archime'des to be honourably buried, and a tomb to be erected to his memory.

17. As to their fortunes in Spain, though for a while doubtful, they soon recovered their *complexion* under the conduct of Scip'io Africa'nus, who sued for the office of *proconsul* to that kingdom, at a time when every one else was willing to decline it. 18. Scip'io was now more than twenty-four years old; had all the qualifications *requisite* for forming a great general, and a good man; he united courage with tenderness, was superior to Han'nibal in the arts of peace, and almost his equal in those of war. 19. His father had been killed in Spain, so that he seemed to have an hereditary claim to attack that country. He therefore appeared irresistible, obtaining

* This great man was equal to an army for the defence of the place. He invented engines which threw enormous stones against the Romans, hoisted their ships in the air, and then dashed them against the rocks beneath, and dismounted their battering engines.

many great victories, yet subduing more by his generosity, mildness, and benevolent disposition, than by the force of arms *.

20. He returned with an army from the conquest of Spain, and was made consul at the age of twenty-nine. It was at first supposed he intended meeting Han'nibal in Italy, and that he would attempt driving him from thence; but he had formed a wiser plan, which was, to carry the war into Africa; and, while the Carthaginians kept an army near Rome, to make them tremble for their own capital.

21. Scip'io was not long in Africa without employment; Han'no opposed him, but was defeated and slain. Sy'phax, the usurper of Numid'ia, led up a large army against him. 22. The Roman general, for a time, declined fighting, till finding an opportunity, he set fire to the enemy's tents, and attacking them in the midst of the confusion, killed forty thousand, and took six thousand prisoners.

23. The Carthagin'ians, terrified at their repeated defeats, and at the fame of Scip'io's successes, determined to recal Han'nibal, their great champion, out of Italy, in order to oppose the Romans at home. Deputies were accordingly dispatched, with a positive command for him to return and oppose the Roman general, who at that time threatened Carthage with a siege. Nothing could exceed the regret and disappointment of Hannibal; but

* During his command in Spain, a circumstance occurred which has contributed more to the fame and glory of Scipio, than all his military exploits. At the taking of New Carthage, a lady of extraordinary beauty was brought to Scipio, who found himself greatly affected by her charms. Understanding, however, that she was betrothed to a Celtibe'rian prince, named Allu'cius, he generously resolved to conquer his rising passion, and sending for her lover, restored her without any other recompence than requesting his friendship to the republic. Her parents had brought a large sum of money for her ransom, which they earnestly entreated Scipio to accept; but he generously bestowed it on Allu'cius, as the portion of his bride. (Liv. l. xxvi. c. 50.)

he obeyed the orders of his *infatuated* country with the submission of the meanest soldier; and took leave of Italy with tears, after having kept possession of its most beautiful parts above fifteen years.

25. Upon his arrival at Lep'tis, in Africa, he set out for Adume'tum, and at last approached Za'ma, a city about seventy-five miles from Carthage. 26. Scip'io, in the mean time, led his army to meet him, joined by Massinis'sa, with six thousand horse; and to shew his rival how little he feared his approach, sent back the spies which were sent to *explore* his camp, having previously shewn them the whole, with directions to inform Han'nibal of what they had seen. 27. The Carthagin'ian general, conscious of his inferiority, endeavoured to discontinue the war by negociation; and desired a meeting with Scip'io, to confer upon terms of peace; to which the Roman general assented. 28. But after a long conference, both sides parting dissatisfied, they returned to their camps, to prepare for deciding the controversy by the sword. 29. Never was a more memorable battle fought, whether we regard the generals, the armies, the two states that contended, or the empire that was in dispute. The disposition Han'nibal made of his men, is said to be superior to any even of his former arrangements. 30. The battle began with the elephants, on the side of the Carthagin'ians; which being terrified at the cries of the Romans, and wounded by the slingers and archers, turned upon their drivers, and caused much confusion in both wings of their army, where the cavalry were placed. 31. Being thus deprived of the assistance of the horse, in which their greatest strength consisted, the heavy infantry joined on both sides; but the Romans being stronger of body, the Carthagin'ians gave ground. 32. In the mean time Massinis'sa, who had been in pursuit of their cavalry, returning and attacking them in the rear, completed their defeat. A total rout ensued,

twenty thousand men were killed, and as many were taken prisoners. 33. Han'nibal, who had done all that a great and undaunted general could perform, fled with a small body of horse to Adrume'tum; fortune seeming to delight in confounding his ability, his valour, and experience*.

34. This victory brought on a peace. The Carthagin'ians, by Han'nibal's advice, submitted to the conditions which the Romans dictated, not as rivals, but as sovereigns. 35. By this treaty, the Carthagin'ians were obliged to quit Spain, and all the islands in the Mediterra'nean. They were bound to pay ten thousand talents in fifty years; to give hostages for the delivery of their ships and their elephants: to restore to Massinis'sa all the territories that had been taken from him; and not to make war in Africa but by the permission of the Romans. Thus ended the second Punic war, seventeen years after it had begun.

Questions for Examination.

1. By what measures did the senate attempt to retrieve this disaster?
2. Did Varro venture to return, and what was his reception?
3. Who were appointed to carry on the war?
4. What was Hannibal's next step?
5. What was the character of this city?
6. What was the consequence to the Carthaginian army?
7. Was Hannibal uniformly successful?
8. What was his first reverse?
9. What happened to him afterwards?
10. What resolution did the senate of Carthage adopt?
11. Did he effect a junction with his brother?
12. Was Hannibal apprized of these intended succours?
13. What inference did Hannibal draw from this?
14. Were the Romans successful in other parts?

---

* The celerity of this flight is almost as wonderful as the courage and conduct displayed in the battle. Adrume'tum was nearly two hundred miles from the scene of action, yet he reached it in two days with his shattered forces.

15. What was the fate of its inhabitants?
16. Was his loss deplored?
17. What was the success of the Romans in Spain?
18. What was the character of Scipio?
19. What rendered him particularly eligible for this command?
20. Were his exploits confined to Spain?
21. Had he any formidable opposition to encounter?
22. What was the conduct of Scipio?
23. What measures did the Carthaginians have recourse to on this occasion?
24. Was Hannibal pleased at his recal?
25. Whither did he repair on his arrival in Africa?
26. What was the conduct of Scipio?
27. Was Hannibal desirous of continuing hostilities?
28. What was the result?
29. Was the battle of consequence?
30. How did it commence?
31. What followed?
32. What completed the defeat of the Carthaginians?
33. What became of Hannibal?
34. What was the result of the victory?
35. What were the conditions of the treaty?

CHAPTER XVI.

Inci'ted, *part.* urged on, induced.
Control'ling, *part.* checking, influencing.
9. Fidel'ity, *s.* faithfulness.
10. Extort'ed, *part.* gained by force.
12. Projec'ting, *part.* forming, contriving.
14. Vindic'tive, *a.* revengeful.
Concil'iate, *v.* to gain, procure, get.
15. Impla'cably, *ad.* with constant enmity, maliciously.
18. Rash'ness, *s.* foolish contempt of danger, thoughtlessness.
O'vertures, *s.* proposals, offers.
20. Incur'sions, *s.* hasty inroads into an enemy's country.
28. Vol'untarily, *ad.* willingly.

1. While the Romans were engaged with Hannibal, they carried on also a vigorous war against Philip *, king

* This Philip was the tenth in succession from Alexander, and a powerful prince in Greece.

of Ma"cedon, not a little *incited* thereto by the prayers of the Athe'nians; who from once *controlling* the power of Persia, were now unable to defend themselves. The Rho'dians, with At'talus, king of Per'gamus, also entered into the confederacy against Philip *. 2. He was more than once defeated by Galba, the consul. He attempted to besiege Athens, but the Romans obliged him to raise the siege. He tried to take possession of the Straits of Thermop'ylæ, but was driven from thence by Quin'tus Flamin'ius, with great slaughter. He attempted to take refuge in Thes'saly, where he was again defeated, with considerable loss, and obliged to beg a peace, upon condition of paying a thousand talents. 3. Peace with Philip gave the Romans an opportunity of shewing their generosity, by restoring liberty to Greece †.

4. Anti'ochus, king of Syria, was next brought to submit to the Roman arms: after embassies on the one side and on the other, hostilities were commenced against him, five years after the conclusion of the Macedo'nian war. 5. After many mistakes and great misconduct, he attempted to obtain a peace, by offering to quit all his places in Europe, and such in Asia as professed alliance to Rome. 6. But it was now too late; Scip'io perceived his own superiority, and was resolved to avail himself of it. 7. Anti'ochus, thus driven into resistance, for some time retreated before the enemy, till, being pressed hard, near the city of Magnesia ‡, he was forced to draw out his men, to the number of seventy thousand foot, and twelve thousand horse.

8. Scip'io opposed him with forces as much inferior in

* About this time, Fu'rius, the prætor, obtained a great victory over the Gauls, who had revolted, and slew 30,000 of them.

† Some have considered this as rather an act of policy than generosity, as the Grecian states, by their contentions among each other, fell in a short time completely under the Roman dominion.

‡ Now Gurelhizar, a town of Asia Minor, about fifteen miles from Ephesus.

number, as they were superior in courage and discipline. Anti'ochus, therefore, was in a short time entirely defeated; his own chariots, armed with scythes, being driven back upon his men, contributed much to his overthrow. 9. Being thus reduced to the last extremity, he was glad to procure peace from the Romans, upon their own terms; which were to pay fifteen thousand talents; to quit his possessions in Europe, and in Asia, on the hither side of Mount Tau'rus *; to give twenty hostages, as pledges of his *fidelity;* and to deliver up Han'nibal, the inveterate enemy of Rome, who had taken refuge at his court.

10. In the mean time Han'nibal, whose destruction was one of the articles of this *extorted* treaty, endeavoured to avoid the threatened ruin. 11. This consummate general had long been a wanderer, and an exile from his ungrateful country. He had taken refuge at the court of Anti'ochus, who, at first, gave him a sincere welcome, and made him admiral of his fleet, in which station he shewed his usual skill in stratagem. 12. But he soon sunk in the Syrian's esteem, for *projecting* schemes, which that monarch had neither genius to understand, nor talents to execute. 13. Sure, therefore, to find no safety or protection, he departed by stealth; and, after wandering for a time among petty states, who had neither power nor generosity to protect him, he took refuge at the court of Bru'sias, king of Bythin'ia. 14. In the mean time the Romans, with a *vindictive* spirit, utterly unworthy of them, sent Æmil'ius, one of their most celebrated generals, to demand him of this king; who, fearing the resentment of Rome, and willing to *conciliate* their friendship by this breach of hospitality, ordered a guard to be placed upon Han'nibal, with an

* The extremity of a chain of mountains, the most extensive in Asia. That part called Mount Taurus is in Cilicia.

intent to deliver him up. 15. The poor old general, thus *implacably* persecuted from one country to another, and finding every method of safety cut off, determined to die. He therefore desired one of his followers to bring him poison; and, drinking it, he expired as he had lived, with intrepid bravery *.

16. A second Macedo'nian war was soon after proclaimed against Per'seus, the son of that Philip, who had been obliged to beg peace of the Romans. 17. Per'seus, in order to secure the crown, had murdered his brother Deme'trius; and, upon the death of his father, pleased with the hopes of imaginary triumphs, made war against Rome. 18. During the course of this war, which continued about three years, opportunities were offered him of cutting off the Roman army; but being ignorant how to take advantage of their *rashness*, he spent the time in empty *overtures* for peace. 19. At length, Æmil'ius gave him a decisive overthrow. He attempted to procure safety by flying into Crete; but being abandoned by all, he was obliged to surrender himself, and to grace the splendid triumph of the Roman general †. { U. C. 513.

20. About this time, Massinis'sa, the Numidi'an, having made some *incursions* into a territory claimed by the Carthagin'ians, they attempted to repel the invasion. 21. This brought on a war between that monarch and them; while the Romans, who pretended to consider this conduct of theirs as an infraction of this treaty, sent to make a complaint. 22. The ambassadors who were employed upon this occasion, finding the city very rich and flourishing, from the long interval of peace which

* Before he expired, he justly upbraided the Romans with their degeneracy; their ancestors having honourably *prevented* the murder of Pyr'rhus, their mortal enemy, while they had basely desired Bru'sias to destroy his guest and friend.

† From this time Macedon became a Roman province.

it had now enjoyed for nearly fifty years, either from motives of avarice to possess its plunder, or from fear of its growing greatness, insisted much on the necessity of a war, which was soon after proclaimed, and the consuls set out with a thorough resolution utterly to demolish Carthage *.

23. The wretched Carthagin'ians, finding that the conquerors would not desist from making demands, while the vanquished had any thing to give, attempted to soften the victors by submission; but they received orders to leave the city, which was to be levelled with ground. 24. This severe command they received with all the distress of a despairing people: they implored for a respite from such a hard sentence; they used tears and lamentations; but finding the consuls inexorable, they departed with a gloomy resolution, prepared to suffer the utmost extremities, and fight to the last for their seat of empire †.

25. Those vessels, therefore, of gold and silver, which their luxury had taken such pride in, were converted into

---

* The territory thus invaded by Massinis'sa was Tysca, a rich province, undoubtedly belonging to the Carthagin'ians. One of the ambassadors sent from Rome was the celebrated Cato, the Censor, who, whatever his virtues may have been, appears to have imbibed an inveterate hatred to Carthage. For, on whatever subject he debated in the senate, he never failed to conclude in these words, "I am also of opinion that Carthage should be destroyed." The war, however, which had broken out in Spain, and the bad success of the Roman arms in that quarter, for some time delayed the fate of that devoted city; and it might, perhaps, have stood much longer, had not some seditious demagogues incited the populace to insult the Roman ambassador, and to banish those senators who voted for peace. (Appian. Plut. Liv.)

† To account for this apparent pusillanimity of the Carthagin'ians, it is necessary to observe, that they had suffered repeated defeats in their war with Massinis'sa; and that fifty thousand of their troops, after having been blocked up in their camp till from want they were obliged to submit to the most humiliating conditions, were inhumanly massacred by Gulus'sa, the son of the Numid'ian king. The Romans chose this distressing juncture to declare war against them. (Appian in Punic.)

arms *. The women parted also with their ornaments, and even cut off their hair to be converted into strings for the bowmen. As'drubal, who had been lately condemned for opposing the Romans, was now taken from prison to head their army; and such preparations were made, that when the consuls came before the city, which they expected to find an easy conquest, they met with such resistance as quite dispirited their forces, and shook their resolution. 26. Several engagements were fought before the walls, with disadvantage to the assailants; so that the siege would have been discontinued, had not Scip'io Æmilia'nus, the adopted son of Africa'nus, who was now appointed to command it, used as much skill to save his forces after a defeat, as to inspire them with fresh hopes of a victory. 27. But all his arts would have failed, had he not found means to seduce Phar'nes, the master of the Carthagin'ian horse, who came over to his side. The unhappy townsmen soon saw the enemy make nearer approaches; the wall which led to the haven was quickly demolished; soon after the forum itself was taken, which offered to the conquerors a deplorable spectacle of houses nodding to their fall, heaps of men lying dead, hundreds of the wounded struggling to emerge from the carnage around them, and deploring their own and their country's ruin. The citadel soon after surrendered at discretion. 28. All now but the temple was subdued, and that was defended by deserters from the Roman army, and those who had been most forward to undertake the war. These expected no mercy, and finding their condition desperate, set fire to the building, and *voluntarily* perished in the flames †. This was the end of

* As one proof of their sincere desire for peace, the Carthagin'ians had previously delivered up to the Romans all their arms and warlike engines, of which they possessed prodigious magazines; thus leaving themselves still more defenceless than before.

† Among the number of those who perished in this conflagration, was the wife of As'drubal, the Carthagin'ian commander, who had meanly surrendered to the Romans. After uttering the

one of the most renowned cities in the world, for arts, opulence, and extent of dominion; it had rivalled Rome for above a hundred years, and, at one time, was thought to have the superiority *.

29 The conquest of Carthage was soon followed by many others. The same year Corinth, one of the noblest cities of Greece, was levelled to the ground. Scip'io also having laid siege to Numan'tia, the strongest city in Spain, the wretched inhabitants, to avoid falling into the hands of the enemy, fired the city over their own heads; and all, to a man, expired in the flames †. Thus Spain became a Roman province, and was governed thenceforward by two annual prætors.

Questions for Examination.

1. With whom were the Romans at war besides Carthage, and who assisted in it?
2. What was the success of Philip in this war?
3. What was the consequence of peace with Philip?
4. Who next fell under the displeasure of the Romans?
5. What was the result?
6. Were his offers accepted?
7. Did Antiochus boldly face the Romans?
8. What were the strength and character of the Roman army, and what the result of the battle?
9. Was he able to make further resistance?
10. Was Hannibal delivered up?
11. What occasioned Hannibal to put himself in the power of Antiochus?
12. Was this kindness lasting?
13. Whither did he next betake himself?
14. Was he in safety at this court?
15. How did Hannibal escape his persecution?
16. Against whom did the Romans next direct their arms?

---

most bitter imprecations against her husband, whom she saw standing below, for his cowardice, she stabbed her two children, and then leaped into the flames.

* It was 24 miles in compass, and continued burning 17 days.

† This war in Spain had been carried on by one Viria'thus, originally a shepherd, but afterwards an able general. He was treacherously murdered.

17. What occasioned it?
18. Was Perseus a skilful general?
19. What was the result of the war?
20. What farther happened about this time?
21. What was the consequence?
22. Was this misunderstanding peaceably accommodated?
23. By what means did the Carthaginians endeavour to avert their fate?
24. Did they obey these orders?
25. What extraordinary efforts were made for the defence of the city?
26. Were the Romans successful in their attempts?
27. Describe the progress of the siege.
28. Was the city now completely in the power of the Romans?
29. What other conquests were made by the Romans?

CHAPTER XVII.

From the Destruction of Carthage, to the end of the Sedition of the Gracchi.—U. C. 621.

SECT. I.

1. Invert'ed, *part.* changed.
6. Ir'ritated, *part.* provoked, exasperated.
8. Uten'sils, *s.* instruments, tools.
10. Harang'ues, *s.* speeches, orations.
11. Di'adem, *s.* crown, an emblem of royalty.
14. Ex'pedite, *v.* to facilitate, to hasten.
18. Quæs'torship, *s.* the first office any person could bear in the commonwealth; it gave a right to sit in the senate.
20. Indig'nity, *s.* affront, disgrace, insult.
21. Major'ity, *s.* the greater number.
25. Inspec'tion, *s.* an examination, a looking into.
27. Insid'iously, *ad.* treacherously, slily.

1. THE Romans being now left without a rival, the triumphs and the spoils of Asia introduced a taste for splendid expence; and this produced avarice and *inverted* ambition. 2. The two Gracchi* were the first who saw this strange corruption among the great, and resolved to repress it, by renewing the Licinian law, which had enact-

* The Grac'chi were the sons of T. Sempro'nius Grac'chus, by Corne'lia or Sempro'nia, daughter of Scip'io Africa'nus.

ed, that no person in the state should possess above five hundred acres of land. 3. Tibe'rius Grac'chus, the elder of the two, was, both for the advantages of his person, and the qualities of his mind, very different from Scip'io, of whom he was the grandson. He seemed more ambitious of power than desirous of glory; his compassion for the oppressed was equal to his animosity against the oppressors; but unhappily his passions, rather than his reason, operated even in his pursuits of virtue; and these always drove him beyond the line of duty. 4. This was the disposition of the elder Grac'chus, who found the lower order of people ready to second all his proposals. 5. The above law, though at first carried on with proper moderation, greatly disgusted the rich, who endeavoured to persuade the people that the proposer only aimed at disturbing the government, and throwing all things into confusion. 6. But Grac'chus, who was a man of the greatest eloquence of his time, easily wiped off these impressions from the minds of the people, already *irritated* with their wrongs; and at length the law was passed.

7. The death of At'talus, king of Per'gamus *, furnished Grac'chus with a new opportunity of gratifying the meaner part of the people at the expence of the great. 8. This king had by his last will made the Romans his heirs; and it was now proposed, that the money so left should be divided among the poor, in order to furnish them with proper *utensils* for cultivating the lands which became theirs by the late law of partition. 9. This caused still greater disturbances than before, and the senate assembled upon the occasion, in order to concert the most proper methods of securing these riches to themselves, which they now valued above the safety of the common-

* Per'gamus was a celebrated empire in Asia Minor, with a capital of the same name, (now Ber'gamo,) famous for its extensive library, afterwards removed to Alexan'dria by Cleopa'tra; and for parchment having been first invented there. (Plin. —Strabo.—Liv.

wealth. 10. They had numerous dependents, who were willing to give up liberty for plenty and ease: these, therefore, were commanded to be in readiness, to intimidate the people, who expected no such opposition; and who were now attending to the *harangues* of Grac'chus in the Capitol. 11. Here, as a clamour was raised by the clients of the great on one side, and by the favourers of the law on the other, Grac'chus found his speech entirely interrupted, and begged in vain to be attended to; till at last, raising his hand to his head, to intimate that his life was in danger, the partisans of the senate gave out that he wanted a *diadem*. 12. In consequence of this, a universal uproar spread itself through all ranks of people; the corrupt part of the senate were of opinion that the consul should defend the commonwealth by force of arms; but this prudent magistrate declining such violence, Scip'io Na'sica, kinsman to Grac'chus, immediately rose up, and, preparing himself for the contest, desired that all who would defend the dignity and authority of the laws, should follow him. 13. Upon this, attended by a large body of senators and clients armed with clubs, he went directly to the Capitol, striking down all who ventured to resist.

14. Tibe'rius Grac'chus, perceiving by the tumult that his life was in danger, endeavoured to fly; and throwing away his robe, to *expedite* his escape, attempted to get through the throng; but happening to fall over a person already on the ground, Sature'ius, one of his colleagues in the tribuneship, who was of the opposite faction, struck him dead with a piece of a seat; and not less than three hundred of his hearers shared the same fate, being killed in the tumult. 15. Nor did the vengeance of the senate rest here, but extended to numbers of those who seemed to espouse his cause; many of them were put to death, many were banished, and nothing was omitted to inspire the people with an abhorrence of his pretended crimes.

Soon after the death of Grac'chus, a rebellion broke out in Sicily among the slaves, who, exasperated by the cruelties exercised upon them by their masters, revolted, and having seized En'na*, chose one Eu'nus for their king. This new monarch gained considerable advantages over the Romans, took the strong city of Tauromin'ium, and protracted the war upwards of six years. At length he was completely defeated by the consul Rupil'ius, his followers slaughtered or executed: as for Eu'nus, he died in prison. (Diodorus.—Plutarch.)

16. Ca'ius Grac'chus was but twenty-one upon the death of Tibe'rius his brother; and as he was too young to be much dreaded by the great, so he was at first unwilling to incur their resentment, by aims beyond his reach; he therefore lived in retirement, unseen and forgotten. 17. But, while he thus seemed desirous of avoiding popularity, he was employed in his solitude in the study of eloquence, which was the surest means to obtain it. 18. At length, when he thought himself qualified to serve his country, he offered himself a candidate for the *quæstorship* to the army in Sardin'ia, which he easily obtained. His valour, affability, and temperance in this office were remarked by all. 19. The king of Numid'ia, sending a present of corn to the Romans, ordered his ambassadors to say, that it was a tribute to the virtues of Ca'ius Grac'chus. 20. This the senate treated with scorn, and ordered the ambassadors to be treated with contempt, as ignorant barbarians; which so inflamed the resentment of young Grac'chus, that he immediately came from the army, to complain of the *indignity* thrown upon his reputation, and to offer himself for the tribuneship of the people. 21. It was then that this youth, who had been hitherto neglected, proved a more formidable enemy than even his brother had been. Notwithstanding the warmest op-

* Now Castro Janni, in the centre of Sicily, near which is the beautiful plain whence Pros'erpine was said to have been carried off by Plu'to.

position from the senate, he was declared tribune, by a very large *majority;* and he now prepared for the career which his brother had run before him.

22. His first effort was to have Popil'ius, one of the most inveterate of his brother's enemies, cited before the people; but rather than stand the event of a trial, he chose to go into voluntary banishment. 23. He next procured an edict, granting the freedom of the city to the inhabitants of La'tium, and soon after to all the people on the hither side of the Alps. 24. He afterwards fixed the price of corn at a moderate standard, and procured a monthly distribution of it among the people. 25. He then proceeded to an *inspection* into the late corruptions of the senate; in which the whole body being convicted of bribery, extortion, and the sale of offices, (for at that time a total degeneracy seemed to have taken place,) a law was made, transferring the power of judging corrupt magistrates from the senate to the knights, which made a great alteration in the constitution.

26. Grac'chus, by these means, being grown not only popular, but powerful, was become an object at which the senate aimed all their resentment. 27. But he soon found the populace a faithless and unsteady support. They began to withdraw all their confidence from him, and to place it upon Dru'sus, a man *insidiously* set up against him by the senate. 28. It was in vain that he revived the Licin'ian law in their favour, and called up several of the inhabitants of the different towns of Italy to his support; the senate ordered all to depart from Rome, and even sent one stranger to prison whom Grac'chus had invited to live with him, and honoured with his table and friendship. 29. To this *indignity* was shortly after added a disgrace of a more fatal tendency: for, standing for the tribuneship a third time, he was rejected. It was supposed that the officers, whose duty it was to make the return, were bribed to reject him, though fairly chosen.

Questions for Examination.

1. What consequences followed this great prosperity?
2. Who first resolved to repress this strange corruption?
3. What was the character of Tiberius Gracchus?
4. Had he any influence with the people?
5. How was the Licinian law received?
6. Did the people believe them?
7. What furthered his views?
8. What advantages occurred to the Romans by his death?
9. What was the effect of this will?
10. What measures did they adopt for this purpose?
11. What was the consequence of their interference?
12. Was this insinuation believed?
13. Did Scipio use violence?
14. What was the fate of Gracchus and his friends?
15. Were his enemies satisfied with this vengeance?
16. What became of Caius Gracchus in the mean time?
17. Was he really desirous of avoiding popularity?
18. In what way did he bring himself into notice?
19. What proof of esteem was given him?
20. How was this compliment received?
21. What was the consequence of this resentment?
22. What was his first effort?
23. What was his next act?
24. What was the next?
25. What followed?
26. What was the consequence of these acts?
27. Did he find steady friends?
28. Were his measures of precaution successful?
29. What farther indignities did he experience?

SECT. II.

3. Recrim'ination, *s.* return of abuse, an accusation retorted back.
5. Con'troversy, *s.* matter in dispute.
16. Extra'neous, *a.* foreign, strange.
17. Promulga'tion, *s.* publication, the act of making known.
19. Ve'nal, *a.* mercenary, those whose services may be purchased.
20. Aristoc'racy, *s.* the government by the nobles only.
22. Concurr'ed, *v.* agreed.
Av'arice, *s.* covetousness.

1. It was now seen that the fate of Grac'chus was resolved on. Opim'ius, the consul, was not contented with the protection of the senate, the knights, and a numerous retinue of slaves and clients; he ordered a body of Can'dians, that were mercenaries in the Roman service, to follow and attend him. 2. Thus guarded, and conscious of the superiority of his forces, he insulted Grac'chus wherever he met him, doing all in his power to produce a quarrel, in which he might have a pretence for dispatching his enemy in the fray. 3. Grac'chus avoided all *recrimination*, and, as if apprized of the consul's designs, would not even wear any kind of arms for his defence. 4. His friend Fulvius Flac'cus, however, a zealous tribune, was not so remiss, but resolved to oppose party against party, and for this purpose brought up several countrymen to Rome, who came under pretence of desiring employment. 5. When the day for determining the controversy was arrived, the two parties, early in the morning, attended at the Capitol, where while the consul was sacrificing, according to custom, one of the lictors taking up the entrails of the beast that was slain, in order to remove them, could not forbear crying out to Flac'cus and his party, "Make way, ye factious citizens, for honest men." 6. This insult so provoked the party to whom it was addressed, that they instantly fell upon him, and pierced him to death with the instruments they used in writing, which they then happened to have in their hands. 7. This murder caused a great disturbance in the assembly. Grac'chus, who saw the consequences that were likely to ensue, reprimanded his party for giving his enemies such advantage over him; and now prepared to lead his followers to Mount Av'entine*. 8. It

* As he was leaving his house for that purpose, his wife, who tenderly loved both her husband and her country, bathed in tears, and holding in her arms their only son, earnestly besought him not to risk a life so precious, by confiding in an unsteady rabble.

was there he learned, that a proclamation had been made by the consuls, that whosoever should bring either his head, or that of Flac'cus, should receive its weight in gold as a reward. 9. It was to no purpose that he sent the youngest son of Flac'cus, who was yet a child, with proposals for an accommodation. The senate and the consuls, who were sensible of their superiority, rejected all his offers, and resolved to punish his offence with nothing less than death; and they offered pardon also to all who should leave him immediately. 10. This produced the desired effect; the people fell from him by degrees, and left him with very inferior forces. 11. In the mean time, Opim'ius, the consul, who thirsted for slaughter, leading his forces up to Mount Av'entine, fell in among the crowd with ungovernable fury. A terrible slaughter of the scarcely resisting multitude ensued, and not less than three thousand citizens were slain upon the spot. 12. Flac'cus attempted to find shelter in a ruinous cottage; but, being discovered, was slain, with his eldest son. Grac'chus, at first, retired to the temple of Dian'a, where he resolved to die by his own hand, but was prevented by two of his faithful friends and followers, Pompo'nius and Lucin'ius, who forced him to seek safety by flight. Thence he made the best of his way to cross a bridge that led from the city, still attended by his two generous friends, and a Grecian slave, whose name was Philoc'rates. 13. But his pursuers still pressed upon him from behind, and when come to the foot of the bridge, he was obliged to turn and face the enemy. His two friends were soon slain, defending him against the crowd; and he was forced to take refuge, with his slave, in a grove beyond the Ti'ber, which had long been dedicated to the furies. 14. Here, finding himself surrounded on every side, and no way left of escaping, he prevailed upon his slave to dispatch him. The slave immediately after killed him-

self, and fell down upon the body of his beloved master. The pursuers coming up, cut off the head of Grac'chus, and placed it for a while as a trophy on a spear. 15. Soon after, one Septimule'ius * carried it home, and taking out the brain, artfully filled it with lead, in order to increase its weight, and then received of the consul seventeen pounds of gold as his recompence.

16. Thus died Ca'ius Grac'chus †. He is usually impeached by historians, as guilty of sedition; but from what we see of his character, the disturbance of public tranquillity was rather owing to his opposers than to him; so that, instead of calling the tumults of that time the sedition of the Grac'chi, we should rather call them the sedition of the senate against the Grac'chi; since the efforts of the latter were made in vindication of a law to which the senate had assented; and the designs of the former were supported by an *extraneous* armed power from the country, that had never before meddled in the business of legislation, and whose introduction gave a most irrecoverable blow to the constitution. 17. Whether the Grac'chi were actuated by motives of ambition or of patriotism, in the *promulgation* of the laws, it is impossible to determine; but from what appears, justice was on their side, and all injury on that of the senate. 18. In fact, this body was now changed from that venerable assembly, which we have seen overthrowing Pyr'rhus and Han'nibal, as much by their virtues as their arms. They were now only to be distinguished from the rest of the people by their superior luxuries; and ruled the commonwealth by the weight of an authority gained from

* This man had professed great friendship for Caius Gracchus.

† Such was the severity of the consul Opim'ius, that not content with the death of Grac'chus, and the slaughter of above three thousand of his adherents on Mount Aventine, he imprisoned and condemned to die all the friends of that unfortunate man whom he could discover. Even the tender age of young Ful'vius Flac'cus did not screen him from the consul's vengeance; and Licin'ia, the wife of Gracchus, was deprived of her dowry.

riches and mercenary dependents. 19. The *venal* and the base were attached to them from motives of self-interest; and they who still ventured to be independent, were borne down, and entirely lost in an infamous majority. 20. In short, the empire at this period came under the government of a hateful *aristocracy;* the tribunes, who were formerly accounted protectors of the people, becoming rich themselves, and having no longer opposite interests from those of the senate, concurred in their oppressions; for the struggle was not now between patricians and plebeians, who only nominally differed, but between the rich and the poor. 21. The lower orders of the state being by these means reduced to a degree of hopeless subjection, instead of looking after liberty, only sought for a leader; while the rich, with all the suspicion of tyrants, terrified at the slightest appearance of opposition, entrusted men with uncontrollable power, from whom they had not strength to withdraw it when the danger was over. 22. Thus both parties of the state *concurred* in giving up their freedom; the fears of the senate first made the dictator, and the hatred of the people kept him in his office. Nothing can be more dreadful to a thinking mind than the government of Rome from this period, till it found refuge under the protection of Augus'tus.

Questions for Examination.

1. What appearances now threatened the life of Gracchus?
2. How did he commence hostilities?
3. How did Gracchus attempt to divert the storm?
4. Were his friends equally prudent?
5. What unhappy incident increased the animosity?
6. How was this insult revenged?
7. What was the consequence of this outrage?
8. What news did he hear on his arrival?
9. Did he attempt to conciliate his enemies, and were his attempts successful?
10. Was this offer accepted?

11. What was the conduct of the consul?
12. What was the fate of the chiefs?
13. Did Gracchus effect his escape?
14. Did he fall into the hands of his enemies?
15. What artifice did *avarice* contrive?
16. Was the conduct of Gracchus deserving of praise or blame?
17. By what motives were the Gracchi supposed to be actuated?
18. What was the character of the senate at this period?
19. What was the character of their adherents?
20. What was the nature of the government?
21. What concurred to perpetuate this tyranny?

CHAPTER XVIII.

SECT. I.

From the Sedition of Gracchus, to the perpetual Dictatorship of Sylla, which was the first step towards the ruin of the Commmonwealth. U. C. 634.

6. Repri'sals, *s.* something seized by way of retaliation for robbery or injury.
Aggres'sion, *s.* a first attack, cause of offence.
9. Clem'ency, *s.* mercy, kindness.
14. Participa'tion, *s.* a sharing.
16. Em'issaries, *s.* persons sent on private messages, secret agents.
17. Vi''gilance, *s.* watchfulness.
21. Spe'cious, *a.* showy, plausible, artful.
24. Conspic'uous, *a.* easy to be seen, plain.
27. Suf'frages, *s.* votes.
31. Tumul'tuary, *a.* irregular, confused.
Propi''tiate, *v.* to render favourable.

1. WHILE the Romans were in this state of deplorable corruption at home, they nevertheless were very successful in their transactions with foreign powers.

2. Among other victories, a signal one was gained over Jugur'tha, king of Numid'ia*. He was grandson to

* One of the most remarkable of these victories was that obtained over the Averni, a nation inhabiting that part of Gaul

Massinis'sa, who sided with Rome against Han'nibal, and educated with the two young princes, who were left to inherit the kingdom. 3. Being superior in abilities to both, and greatly in favour with the people, he murdered Hiemp'sal, the eldest son, but Adher'bal, the younger, escaped, and fled to the Romans for succour. 4. Jugur'tha, sensible how much avarice and injustice had crept into the senate, sent his ambassadors to Rome with large presents, which so successfully prevailed, that the senate decreed him half the kingdom, thus acquired by murder and usurpation, and sent ten commissioners to divide it between him and Adher'bal. 5. The commissioners, of whom Opim'ius, the enemy of Grac'chus, was one, willing to follow the example which the senate had set them, were also bribed to bestow the richest and most populous parts of that kingdom upon the usurper. 6. But Jugur'tha resolved to possess himself of the whole; and willing to give a colour to his ambition, he only made, in the beginning, incursions in order to provoke *reprisals*, which he knew how to convert into seeming *aggression*. 7. This scheme failing, he resolved to throw off the mask; and besieging Adher'bal, in Cir'ta, his capital, he at length got him into his power, and murdered him. 8. The Roman people, who had still some generosity remaining, unanimously complained of this treachery, and procured a decree, that Jugur'tha should be summoned in person before them, to give an account of all such as had accepted bribes. 9. Jugur'tha made no difficulty of throwing himself upon the *clemency* of Rome; but not giving the people satisfaction, he had

---

now called Auvergne; they were defeated by Fa'bius Max'imus, with the loss of one hundred and twenty thousand men, either killed or drowned in the Rhone. (Flor. l. iii. c. 2.) Bitultick, their king, was taken prisoner by a base stratagem, and kept in captivity the remainder of his days. So unmindful were the senate of all the laws of honour and probity when they militated against their interest.

orders to depart the city*. 10. In the mean time, Alba'nus, the consul, was sent with an army to follow him; who, giving up the direction of it to Au'lus, his brother, a person who was every way unqualified for the command, the Romans were compelled to hazard a battle upon disadvantageous terms; and the whole army, to avoid being cut to pieces, was obliged to pass under the yoke.

11. In this condition, Metel'lus, the succeeding consul, found affairs upon his arrival in Numid'ia; officers in whom the soldiers had no confidence, an army without discipline, and an enemy ever watchful and intriguing. 12. However, by his great attention to business, and by integrity that shuddered at corruption, he soon began to retrieve the affairs of Rome, and the credit of the army. In the space of two years, Jugur'tha was overthrown in several battles, forced out of his own dominions, and constrained to beg a peace. 13. Thus all things promised Metel'lus a happy termination of the war, but he was frustrated in his expectations by the intrigues of Ca'ius Ma'rius, his lieutenant, who came in to reap that harvest of glory which the other's industry had sown. 14. Ca'ius Ma'rius was born in a village near Apin'ium, of poor parents, who gained their living by their labour. As he had been bred up in a *participation* of their toils, his manners were as rude as his countenance was frightful. He was a man of extraordinary stature, incomparable strength, and undaunted bravery.

15. When Metel'lus was obliged to solicit at Rome for a continuance of his command, Ma'rius, whose ambition knew no bounds, was resolved to obtain it for himself, and thus gain all the glory of putting an end to the war. 16. To that end he privately inveighed against Metel'lus by his *emissaries* at Rome, and having excited a spirit of

* So astonished was Jugur'tha at the mercenary disposition discovered by the Romans, that he is said to have exclaimed, on leaving the city, "Oh, Rome! thou wouldst thyself be sold, could a chapman be found to purchase thee."

discontent against him, he had leave granted him to go there to stand for the consulship, which he obtained, contrary to the expectation and interest of the nobles.

17. Ma'rius, being thus invested with the supreme power of managing the war, shewed himself every way fit for the commission. His *vigilance* was equal to his valour, and he quickly made himself master of the cities which Jugur'tha had yet remaining in Numid'ia *. 18. This unfortunate prince, finding himself unable to make opposition singly, was obliged to have recourse for assistance to Boc'chus, king of Maurita'nia, to whose daughter he was married. A battle soon after ensued, in which the Numid'ians surprised the Roman camp by night, and gained a temporary advantage. However, it was but of short continuance, for Ma'rius soon after overthrew them in two signal engagements, in one of which, not less than ninety thousand of the African army were slain. 19. Boc'chus now finding the Romans too powerful to be resisted, did not think it expedient to hazard his own crown, to protect that of his ally; he therefore determined to make peace, upon whatever conditions he might obtain it; and accordingly sent to Rome, imploring protection. 20. The senate received the ambassadors with their usual haughtiness, and, without complying with their request, granted the suppliant, not their friendship, but their pardon. Notwithstanding, after some time, he was given to understand, that the delivering up of Jugur'tha to the Romans,

* It has been said with great truth, that "the wicked have no friends." Jugur'tha experienced this: Bomil'car, who professed the warmest attachment to Jugur'tha, was gained over by the pro-consul Metel'lus to persuade his master, that submission to the Romans was absolutely necessary. Jugur'tha accordingly sent an embassy to the pro-consul, professing his readiness to submit to any terms. Upon this he was required to send to the Romans 200,000 pounds weight of silver, all his elephants, a certain number of horses and arms, and all deserters. The king complied exactly with these hard conditions; but after thus weakening his resources, he found himself still obliged to continue the war, or submit to such farther impositions as would have endangered, not only his crown, but his life.

would, in some measure, conciliate their favour, and soften their resentment. 21. At first, the pride of Boc'chus struggled against such a proposal; but a few interviews with Syl'la reconciled him to this treacherous measure, and Jugur'tha was given up, being drawn into an ambuscade by the *specious* pretences of his ally, who deluded him by desiring a conference; and being made a prisoner, he was loaded with chains, and carried by Ma'rius to Rome, a deplorable instance of blasted ambition. 22. He did not long survive his overthrow, being condemned by the senate to be starved to death in prison, a short time after he had been made to adorn the triumph of the conqueror *.

23. Ma'rius, by this and two succeeding victories over the Gauls, having become very formidable to distant nations in war, became soon after much more dangerous to his fellow-citizens in peace. 24. The strength which he had given to the popular party every day grew more *conspicuous*, and the Italians, being frustrated by the intrigues of the senate, in their aims of gaining the freedom of Rome, resolved upon obtaining by force, what was refused them as a favour. This gave rise to the Social War, in which most of the States of Italy entered into a confederacy against Rome, in order to obtain a redress of their grievances.

25. After a lapse of two years, this war having continued to rage with doubtful success, the senate began to reflect that, whether conquered or conquerors, the power of the Romans was in danger of being destroyed. 26. To soften therefore their compliance by degrees, they began by giving the freedom of the city to such of the Italian states as had not revolted. They then offered it to such as would lay down their arms. 27. This unexpected bounty had its effect; the allies, with mutual distrust, offered

* Never did any one more deservedly suffer than this treacherous and cruel man.

each a separate treaty: the senate took them one by one into favour; but gave the freedom of the city in such a manner, that, not being empowered to vote until all the other tribes had given their *suffrages*, they had very little weight in the constitution.

28. This destructive war being concluded, the senate began to think of turning their arms against Mithrida'tes, the most powerful and warlike monarch of the east *. 29. For this expedition Ma'rius had long been preparing, but Syl'la had interest enough to get himself appointed to the expedition. Ma'rius, however, tried all his arts with the people to get his appointment reversed; and the command of the army, intended to oppose Mithrida'tes, was ordered to be transferred from Syl'la to Ma'rius. 30. In consequence of this, Ma'rius immediately sent officers from Rome, to take the command in his name. But instead of being obeyed, the officers were slain, and Syl'la was entreated by his army to lead them directly to take signal vengeance upon all his enemies at Rome.

31. Accordingly, his soldiers entered the city sword in hand, as a place taken by storm. Ma'rius and Sulpi"cius, at the head of a *tumultuary* body of their partisans, attempted to oppose their entrance; and the citizens themselves, who feared the sackage of the place, threw down stones and tiles from the houses upon the intruders. 32. So unequal a conflict lasted longer than could have been expected; at length Ma'rius and his party were obliged to seek safety by flight, after having vainly offered liberty to the slaves who would assist them.

---

* This king incurred the resentment of the Romans by making war on some of their allies, and by putting Op'pius and Aquil'ius to death. Upbraiding the Romans with their avarice and corruption, he caused melted gold to be poured down the throat of the latter.

Questions for Examination.

1. Was this internal degeneracy accompanied by ill success abroad?
2. What signal victory did they obtain, and who was Jugurtha?
3. By what means did he obtain the crown?
4. How did he *propitiate* the Romans?
5. How did these commissioners discharge their trust?
6. Was Jugurtha satisfied with this allotment?
7. Did this answer his purpose?
8. Did the Romans suffer this treachery to pass unpunished?
9. Did Jugurtha obey this summons?
10. Were hostilities commenced against him, and what was the result?
11. What was the condition of the army when Metellus assumed the command?
12. Did this deplorable state continue?
13. Did Metellus enjoy the fruits of his victories?
14. Who was Caius Marius?
15. What resolution did he adopt?
16. By what artifices did he succeed in his design?
17. What was the conduct of Marius in his new command?
18. To whom did Jugurtha have recourse in his extremity?
19. Did Bocchus continue to befriend Jugurtha?
20. Was his request complied with?
21. Did Bocchus submit to this condition?
22. What became of Jugurtha after this?
23. How did Marius conduct himself after his victories?
24. What was the consequence of his attempts at popularity?
25. Was this war of long continuance?
26. What measures did the senate adopt to end it?
27. What was the consequence of this measure?
28. Against whom did the senate next turn their arms?
29. Who was appointed to command this expedition?
30. What was the consequence of this order?
31. Did Sylla comply with their request?
32. What was the issue of the contest?

SECT. II.

2. Quag'mire, *s.* a bog, a deep miry place.
4. Cim'brian, *s.* a native of Cimbria, now Denmark.
   Presump'tion, *s.* great boldness.
6. Præt'or, *s.* the governor of a province.

9. Inhos'pitable, *a.* unkind to strangers, unfriendly.
12. Obnox'ious, *a.* offensive, disagreeable.
13. Propi''tiate, *v.* to soften, to subdue.
14. Sa'tiated, *v.* satisfied, glutted.
Ab'rogated, *v.* repealed, annulled.
19. Suspen'sion, *s.* a cessation, or laying aside for a time.
Parti''cipate, *v.* to share.
21. Subordina'tion, *s.* a command, discipline.
25. Convo'ked, *v.* called together, assembled.
27. Proscri'bed, *v.* condemned to death.
Intermis'sion, *s.* a pause or rest.
28. Perpetu ity, *s.* a continuance.
29. Capri''cious, *a.* whimsical, fanciful.
30. Abdica'tion, *s.* a resigning or giving up.
Note.—Glad'iator, *s.* a man destined to afford amusement to the Romans by fighting in the public theatre.

1. SYL'LA now finding himself master of the city, began by modelling the laws, so as to favour his outrages; while Ma'rius, driven out of Rome, and declared a public enemy, at the age of seventy, was obliged to save himself, unattended and on foot, from the pursuits of those who sought his life *. 2. After having wandered for some time in this deplorable condition, he found every day his dangers increase, and his pursuers making nearer advances. In this distress he concealed himself in the marshes of Mintur'næ †, where he continued a night up to the chin in a *quagmire*. 3. At break of day he left this dismal place, and made towards the sea-side, in hopes of finding a ship to facilitate his escape; but being known and discovered by some of the inhabitants, he was conducted to a neighbouring town with a halter round his neck, without clothes, and covered with mud; and in this condition was sent to prison. 4. The governor of the place, willing to conform to the orders of the senate, soon after sent a *Cim'brian*

* Sulpi''cius being betrayed by one of his slaves, he had his head struck off, and fixed on a stake over against the rostra. The treacherous slave was rewarded with his freedom and a sum of money, and then thrown headlong from the Tarpe'ian rock. (Valerius Maximus)

† A town of Campa'nia, between Sinues'sa and Formiæ. (Strabo.)

slave to despatch him; but the barbarian no sooner entered the dungeon for this purpose, but he stopped short, intimidated by the dreadful visage and awful voice of the fallen general, who sternly demanded if he had the *presumption* to kill Ca'ius Ma'rius? The slave, unable to reply, threw down his sword, and rushing back from the prison, cried out, that he found it impossible to kill him! 5. The governor, considering the fear of the slave as an omen in the unhappy exile's favour, gave him his freedom; and, commending him to his fortune, provided him with a ship to convey him from Italy. 6. He was forced by a tempest on the coast of Sicily. A Roman quæstor, who happened to be there, resolved to seize him; and he lost sixteen of his crew, who were killed in their endeavours to cover his retreat to the ship. He afterwards landed in Africa, near Carthage, and, overwhelmed with melancholy, sat himself down amongst the ruins of that desolate place. He soon, however, had orders from the *prætor* to retire. 7. Ma'rius, who remembered his having once served this very man in necessity, could not suppress his indignation at finding ingratitude every where; and, preparing to obey, bid the messenger tell his master, that he had seen Ma'rius sitting among the ruins of Carthage; intimating the greatness of his fall by the desolation that was around him. 8. He once more embarked, and not knowing where to land without encountering an enemy, he spent the winter at sea, expecting every hour the return of a messenger from his son, whom he had sent to solicit protection from the African prince Mandras'tal. 9. After long expectation, instead of the messenger, his son himself arrived, having escaped from the *inhospitable* court of that monarch, where he had been kept, not as a friend, but as a prisoner, and had returned just time enough to prevent his father from sharing the same fate.

10. In this situation, they were informed that Cin'na, one of their party who had remained at Rome, had put

himself at the head of a large army, collected out of the Italian states, who had espoused his cause. Nor was it long before they joined their forces at the gates of Rome. Syl'la was at that time absent in his command against Mithrida'tes. 11. Cin'na marched into the city; but Ma'rius stopped, and refused to enter, alleging, that having been banished by a public decree, it was necessary to have another to authorise his return *. It was thus that he desired to give his meditated cruelties the appearance of justice; and while he was about to destroy thousands, to pretend an implicit veneration for the laws. 12. An assembly of the people being called, they began to reverse his banishment; but they had scarcely gone through three of the tribes, when, incapable of restraining his desire of revenge, he entered the city at the head of his guards, and massacred all who had been *obnoxious* to him, without remorse or pity. 13. Several who sought to *propitiate* the tyrant's rage, were murdered by his command in his presence; many even of those who had never offended him were put to death; and, at last, even his own officers never approached him but with terror†. 14. Having in this manner satiated his revenge, he next *abrogated* all the laws which were enacted by his rival, and then made himself consul with Cin'na. 15. Thus gratified in his two favourite passions, vengeance and ambition, having once saved his country, and now deluged it with blood; at last, as if willing to crown the pile of slaughter which he had made, with his own body, he died the month after, not without suspicion of having hastened his end.

* With an affectation of the greatest humility he wore only an old and tattered dress, suffering his hair and beard to continue rough and uncombed; and walked with a slow pace, like a man oppressed with his misfortunes: but under the disguise of that mournful countenance, something so fierce appeared in his looks, that he inspired terror rather than compassion. (Plutarch in Mario.)

† He gave his guards an order, that whoever came to salute him, and was not answered with the like civility, should be immediately massacred. (Plut. in Mario.) Many who came to make their court to the tyrant were thus cut in pieces.

16. In the mean time, these accounts were brought to Syl'la, who had been sent against Mithrida'tes, and who was performing many signal exploits against him; hastily concluding a peace, therefore, he returned home to take vengeance on his enemies at Rome.

17. Nothing could intimidate Cin'na from attempting to repel his opponent *. Being joined by Car'bo, (now elected in the room of Vale'rius, who had been slain) together with young Ma'rius, who inherited all the abilities and the ambition of his father, he determined to send over part of the forces he had raised in Dalma'tia to oppose Syl'la before he entered Italy. Some troops were accordingly embarked; but being dispersed by a storm, the others that had not yet put to sea, absolutely refused to go. 18. Upon this, Cin'na, quite furious at their disobedience, rushed forward to persuade them to their duty. In the mean time one of the most mutinous of the soldiers being struck by an officer, returned the blow, and was apprehended for his crime. This ill-timed severity produced a tumult and a mutiny through the whole army; and, while Cin'na did all he could to appease it, he was run through the body by one of the crowd.

19. Scip'io, the consul, who commanded against Syl'la, was soon after allured by proposals for a treaty; but a *suspension* of arms being agreed upon, Syl'la's soldiers went into the opposite camp, displaying those riches which they had acquired in their expeditions, and offering to *participate* with their fellow-citizens, in case they changed their party. 20. In consequence of this, the whole army declared unanimously for Syl'la; and Scip'io scarcely knew that he was forsaken and deposed till he was informed of it by a party of the enemy, who entering his tent, made him and his son prisoners.

21. In this manner both factions, exasperated to the

* To strengthen his interest, he married his daughter Corne'lia about this time to Julius Cæsar, afterwards so famous.

highest degree, and expecting no mercy on either part, gave vent to their fury in several engagements. The forces on the side of young Ma'rius, who now succeeded his father in command, were the most numerous, but those of Syl'la better united, and more under *subordination*. 22. Car'bo, who commanded for Ma'rius in the field, sent eight legions to Prænes'te, to relieve his colleague, but they were met by Pompey, afterwards surnamed the Great, in a defile, who slew many of them, and dispersed the rest. Car'bo soon after engaged Metel'lus, but was overcome, with the loss of ten thousand slain, and six thousand taken prisoners*. 23. In consequence, Urba'nus, one of the consuls, killed himself, and Car'bo fled to Africa, where, after wandering a long time, he was at last delivered up to Pompey, who, to please Syl'la, ordered him to be beheaded †. 24. Syl'la, now become undisputed master of his country, entered Rome at the head of his army. Happy, had he supported in peace the glory which he had acquired in war; or, had he ceased to live when he ceased to conquer!

25. Eight thousand men, who had escaped the general carnage, surrendered themselves to the conqueror; he ordered them to be put into the Vil'la Pub'lica, a large house in the Cam'pus Mar'tius; and, at the same time, *convoked* the senate; there, without discovering the least emotion, he spoke with great fluency of his own exploits, and, in the mean time, gave private directions that all those wretches whom he had confined, should be slain. 26. The senate, amazed at the horrid outcries of the sufferers, at first thought that the city was given up to

---

* The news of this defeat so exasperated young Ma'rius, that he sent orders to Ju'nius Bru'tus, then prætor at Rome, to put all Syl'la's friends to death. (Appian.) This order was executed with the utmost cruelty, and probably contributed to those dreadful scenes of carnage which soon after followed.

† Young Ma'rius destroyed himself, and his head was afterwards, by Sylla's order, exposed in the forum.

plunder; but Syl'la, with an unembarrassed air, informed them, that it was only some criminals who were punished by his order, and that the senate ought not to make themselves uneasy at their fate. 27. The day after, he *proscribed* forty senators, and sixteen hundred knights; and, after an *intermission* of two days, forty senators more, with an infinite number of the richest citizens.

28. He next resolved to invest himself with the dictatorship, and that for a *perpetuity;* and, thus uniting all civil as well as military power in his own person, he thought he might thence give an air of justice to every oppression.

29. Thus he continued to govern with *capricious* tyranny, none daring to resist his power, until, contrary to the expectations of all mankind, he laid down the dictatorship, after having held it not quite three years *.

30. After this, he retired into the country, and abandoned himself to debauchery; but he did not long survive his *abdication;* he was seized with a horrible distemper †, and died a loathsome and mortifying object, and a melancholy proof of the futility of human ambition ‡.

---

* It is remarkable, that though on his laying down the dictatorship, the forum was full of those whom his cruelties had rendered his most bitter enemies; no one presumed to molest him, except one young man, who followed him to his house with the most scurrilous abuse. Syl'la did not deign him an answer, but turning to the few friends who accompanied him, "This usage," said he, "will, for the future, deter any man from laying down the sovereign power, if he once gets it into his hands."

† Morbus Pediculosus.

‡ Two events, important in the history of Rome, occurred about this time. Serto'rius, a Roman general, in Spain, had rebelled against the government of Syl'la, and defeated every army sent against him, till Pompey took the command; and even then the result appeared doubtful, till Serto'rius being assassinated by his own officers, put an end to the war.

Spar'tacus, a *gladiator*, having escaped from confinement, and assembled a number of his followers, commenced what is called the second Servile War. His army gradually increasing, he became a formidable enemy to the Roman state; overthrew the prætors and consuls sent against him; but was at length defeated by Cras'sus, and the remains of his army cut in pieces by Pompey, who met them on hisreturn from Spain.

Questions for Examination.

1. What were the first acts of Sylla, and what became of Marius?
2. Did he effect his escape?
3. What happened to him after this?
4. What farther misfortunes awaited him?
5. What effect had this circumstance on the governor?
6. What befel him afterwards?
7. What was the conduct of Marius on this occasion?
8. Whither did he next betake himself?
9. Did the expected messenger arrive?
10. What sudden reverse of fortune happened to Marius?
11. What was the conduct of these commanders?
12. Did Marius preserve this appearance of moderation?
13. Who were the objects of his vengeance?
14. What was his next step?
15. Did he long enjoy the power he had thus regained?
16. What was the conduct of Sylla on this occasion?
17. What opposition did he experience?
18. What was the fate of Cinna?
19. By what means was Scipio's opposition overcome?
20. What effect was produced by this offer?

CHAPTER XIX.

From the perpetual Dictatorship of Sylla, to the Triumvirate of Cæsar, Pompey, and Crassus.—U.C. 680.

1. Dissen'sions, *s.* contentions, quarrels.
3. Ab'rogate, *v.* to repeal, annul, abolish.
6. Profer'red, *v.* offered for consideration.
8. Ter'minate, *v.* to put an end to.
10. Project'ed, *v.* contrived.
11. Prof'ligate, *a.* abandoned, wicked.
Insa'tiable, *a.* greedy beyond measure.
15. Punc'tual, *a.* exact.
18. Confront'ed, *v.* opposed.
Vindica'tion, *s.* defence, a clearing of character?

1. UPON the death of Syl'la, the jealousies of Pompey and Cras'sus, the two most powerful men in the empire,

began to excite fresh *dissensions*. Pompey was the most beloved general, but Cras'sus the richest man in Rome.

2. The first opportunity that was offered of discovering their mutual jealousy, was upon disbanding their troops. Neither chose to begin; so that the most fatal consequences were likely to arise from their dissension. At length Cras'sus, stifling his resentment, laid down his command; and the other followed his example immediately after. 3. The next trial between them was, who should be foremost in obtaining the favour of the people. Cras'sus entertained the populace at a thousand tables, distributed corn to the families of the poor, and fed the greatest part of the citizens for nearly three months. Pompey, on the other hand, laboured to *abrogate* the laws made against the authority of the people by Syl'la; restored to the knights the power of judging, which had been formerly granted them by Grac'chus; and gave back to the tribunes all their former privileges. 4. Thus each gave his private aims an appearance of zeal for the public good; so that what was in reality ambition in both, took with one the name of liberality, with the other that of a love of freedom.

5. An expedition, in which Pompey cleared the Mediterranean, which was infested by pirates, having added greatly to his reputation, the tribunes of the people hoped it would be easy to advance their favourite still higher. 6. Man'lius, therefore, one of the number, *preferred* a law, that all the armies of the empire, the government of Asia, and the management of the war, which was renewed against Mithrida'tes, should be committed to Pompey alone. The law passed with little opposition, and the decree was confirmed.

7. Being thus appointed to the command of that important war, he departed for Asia. 8. Mithrida'tes had been obliged by Lucul'lus to take refuge in Lesser Arme'nia, and thither that general was preparing to follow

him, when his whole army abandoned him ; so that it remained for Pompey to *terminate* the war, which he effected with great ease and expedition, adding a large extent of dominion to the Roman empire, and returning to Rome in triumph at the head of his conquering army.

9. But the victories of Pompey rather served to heighten the glory than to increase the power of Rome ; they made it a more glaring object of ambition, and exposed its liberties to greater danger. Those liberties indeed seemed devoted to ruin on every side; for, even while he was pursuing his conquests abroad, Rome was at the verge of ruin from a conspiracy at home. 10. This conspiracy was *projected* and carried on by Ser'gius Cat'iline, a patrician by birth, who resolved to build his own power on the downfall of his country. 11. He was singularly formed, both by art and nature, to conduct a conspiracy; he was possessed of courage equal to the most desperate attempts, and of eloquence to give a colour to his ambition: ruined in his fortunes, *profligate* in his manners, vigilant in pursuing his aims; he was *insatiable* after wealth, only with a view to lavish it on his guilty pleasures. 12. Cat'iline, having contracted debts in consequence of such an ill-spent life, was resolved to extricate himself from them by any means however unlawful. Accordingly, he assembled about thirty of his debauched associates, and informed them of his aims, his hopes, and his settled plan of operations. 13. It was resolved among them, that a general insurrection should be raised throughout Italy, the different parts of which he assigned to different leaders. Rome was to be fired at several places at once; and Cat'iline, at the head of an army raised in Etru'ria, was, in the general confusion, to possess himself of the city, and massacre all the senators. Len'tulus, one of his profligate assistants, who had been prætor or judge in the city, was to preside in their general councils: Cethe'gus, a man who sacrificed the possession of great present power to

the hopes of gratifying his revenge against Ci″cero *, was to direct the massacre through the city; and Cas'sius was to conduct those who fired it.

14. But the vigilance of Ci″cero being the chief obstacle to their designs, Cat'iline was very desirous to see him taken off before he left Rome; upon which two knights of the company undertook to kill him the next morning in his bed, in an early visit on pretence of business. 15. But the meeting was no sooner over, than Ci″cero had information of all that passed in it; for by the intrigues of a woman named Ful'via, he had gained over Cu'rius, her lover, one of the conspirators, to send him a punctual account of all their deliberations. 16. Having taken proper precautions to guard himself against the designs of his morning visitors, who were *punctual* to the appointment, he next took care to provide for the defence of the city; when, assembling the senate, he consulted what was best to be done in such a time of danger. 17. The first step taken was to offer considerable rewards for farther discoveries, and then to prepare for the defence of the state. 18. Cat'iline, to shew how well he could dissemble, or justify any crime, went boldly to the senate, declaring his innocence †; but, when *confronted* by the eloquence of Ci″cero, he hastily withdrew, declaring aloud, that since he was denied a *vindication* of himself, and driven headlong into rebellion by his enemies, he would extinguish the flame which was raised about him in universal ruin. 19. After a short conference with Len'tulus and Cethe'gus,

---

* Ci″cero, the first of Roman orators, as Demos'thenes was of the Greek, was born at Arpin'ium, a town of the Vol'sci, and studied under the most celebrated orators and philosophers of Greece. His style of eloquence was copious, highly ornamented, and addressed more to the passions than the judgment of his hearers. He was consul at the time of Cat'iline's conspiracy; and, for his eminent services in detecting and frustrating it, was honoured with the title of Pater Patriæ.

† On his entrance, those senators near whom he attempted to seat himself, quitting their places, left him quite alone.

he left Rome by night, with a small retinue, to hasten towards Etru'ria, where Man'lius, one of the conspirators, was raising an army to support him *.

20. In the mean time, Ci''cero took proper precautions to secure all those of the conspiracy who remained in Rome. Len'tulus, Cethe'gus, Cas'sius, and several others, were put into confinement; and soon after strangled in prison.

21. While his associates were put to death in the city, Cat'iline had raised an army of twelve thousand men, of which a fourth part only were completely armed, the rest being furnished with such weapons as chance afforded; darts, lances, and clubs. 22. He refused, at first, to enlist slaves, who flocked to him in great numbers, trusting to the strength of the conspiracy; but upon the approach of the consul, who was sent against him, and upon the arrival of the news that his confederates were put to death, the face of affairs altered. 23. His first attempt, therefore, was by long marches to make his escape over the Appenines into Gaul; but in this his hopes were disappointed; all the passes being guarded by an army superior to his own. 24. Being thus hemmed in on every side, and seeing all things desperate, with nothing left him but either to die or conquer, he resolved to make one vigorous effort against that army which pursued him. Anto'nius, the consul, being sick, the command devolved upon Petrei'us, who, after a fierce and bloody action, in which he lost a considerable part of his best troops, put Cat'iline's forces to the rout, and destroyed his whole army †.

25. The extinction of this conspiracy seemed only to leave an open theatre for the ambition of the great men to display itself in. Pompey was now returned in triumph

* On his arrival, he assumed all the ensignia of a supreme magistrate, being preceded by lictors carrying the axes and fasces.

† Cat'iline himself, finding his affairs desperate, threw himself into the midst of the enemy, and there found the death he sought. (Sallust.)

from conquering the East, as he had before been victorious in Europe and Africa.

26. Cras'sus was the richest man in Rome, and next to Pompey possessed the greatest authority; his party in the senate was even stronger than that of his rival, and the envy raised against him was less. He and Pompey had long been disunited by an opposition of interests and of characters; however, it was from a continuance of their mutual jealousies that the state was, in some measure, to expect its future safety. 27. It was in this situation of things that Julius Cæsar, who had lately gone prætor into Spain, and had returned with great riches and glory, resolved to convert their mutual jealousy to his own advantage. 28. This celebrated man was descended from popular and illustrious ancestors. He warmly espoused the side of the people, and shortly after the death of Syl'la, procured the recal of those whom Syl'la had banished. He had all along declared for the populace against the senate, and became their most favourite magistrate. 29. This consummate statesman began by offering his services to Pompey, promising to assist him in getting all his acts passed notwithstanding the senate's opposition. Pompey, pleased at the acquisition of a person of so much merit, readily granted him his confidence and protection. 30. He next applied to Cras'sus, who from former connexions, was disposed to become still more nearly his friend. 31. At length, finding them not averse to an union of interests, he took an opportunity of bringing them together; and, remonstrating with them on the advantages, as well as necessity, of a reconciliation, he had art enough to persuade them to forget former animosities. 32. A combination was thus formed, by which they agreed that nothing should be done in the commonwealth without their mutual concurrence and approbation. This was called the first Trium'virate, by

which we find the constitution weakened by a new interest, which had not hitherto taken place, very different from that of the senate or the people, and yet dependent on both.

Questions for Examination.

1. What followed on the death of Sylla?
2. What first discovered their mutual jealousy?
3. What was the next trial between them?
4. Under what pretences did they hide their real views?
5. What farther raised the reputation of Pompey?
6. What means were had recourse to for this purpose?
7—8. What was the state of the war in Asia?
9. What were the consequences of Pompey's victories?
10. Who was the author, and what was the object of this conspiracy?
11. What was the character of Catiline?
12. What occasioned this conspiracy?
13. How was it to be carried into execution?
14. What was the chief obstacle to its accomplishment, and how was this obstacle to be removed?
15. Was Cicero informed of their proceedings?
16. What precautions did he take in consequence?
17. What was the first step taken?
18. What was the conduct of Catiline on this occasion?
19. Did he continue in Rome?
20. Did the other conspirators escape?
21. How was Catiline employed in the mean time?
22. Had he a fair prospect of success?
23. Did he boldly face his opponents?
24. What followed?
25. Did the extinction of this conspiracy give peace to Rome?
26. Who were the contending parties, and what was the consequence of this dissension?
27. Who profited by these jealousies?
28. Who was Julius Cæsar, and by what means did he acquire popularity?
29. What was his first step towards power?
30. To whom did he next apply?
31. What consequence resulted from his application?
32. What agreement was entered into by them, and what were they called?

CHAPTER XX.

SECT. I.

From the beginning of the first Triumvirate, to the Death of Pompey.—U. C. 694.

1. Confed'erates, *s.* allies, associates, accomplices.
4. Ingra'tiating, *part.* getting into favour.
6. Sa'tiated, *part.* glutted, full beyond desire.
7. Com'pensate, *v.* to make amends.
13. Stim'ulated, *part.* excited, urged on.
15. Hos'tages, *s.* persons delivered as security for the performance of conditions.
16. Co'op'erated, *v.* laboured jointly.
17. Leth'argy, *s.* supineness, inactivity.
19. Skir'mish, *s.* slight encounter, a battle between detached parts of the hostile armies.
20. Thwart, *v.* to cross, to hinder.
22. Allu're, *v.* to entice.
28. Expe'dients, *s.* contrivances, measures.
30. Con'fines, *s.* borders.

1. THE first thing Cæsar did, upon forming the Trium'virate, was to avail himself of the interest of his *confederates* to obtain the consulship. 2. The senate had still some influence left; and though they were obliged to concur in choosing him, yet they gave him for a colleague one Bib'ulus, whom they supposed would be a check upon his power. 3. But the opposition was too strong for even superior abilities to resist; so that Bib'ulus, after a slight attempt in favour of the senate, remained inactive. 4. Cæ'sar began his schemes for empire by *ingratiating* himself with the people; he procured a law for dividing certain lands in Campa'nia among such of the poor citizens as had at least three children. This proposal was just enough in itself, and it was criminal only from the views of the proposer.

5. Having thus strengthened himself at home, he deli-

berated with his confederates about sharing the foreign provinces of the empire. 6. The partition was soon made: Pompey chose Spain; for, being fatigued with conquest, and *satiated* with military fame, he was willing to take his pleasures at Rome. Cras'sus chose Syria; which province, as it had hitherto enriched the generals who had subdued it, would, he hoped, gratify him in this his favourite pursuit. To Cæsar were left the provinces of Gaul; composed of fierce and powerful nations, most of them unsubdued, and the rest only professing a nominal subjection. 7. As this was appointing him rather to conquer than command, the government was granted him for five years; as if by its continuance to *compensate* for its danger.

8. It would be impossible in this narrow compass to enumerate the battles Cæsar fought, and the states he subdued, in his expeditions into Gaul and Britain, which continued eight years. 9. The Helve'tians* were the first that were brought into subjection, with the loss of nearly two hundred thousand men; those who remained after the carnage, were sent by Cæsar in safety to the forests whence they had issued †. 10. The Germans with Ariovis'tus at their head, were next cut off, to the number of eighty thousand; their monarch himself narrowly escaping in a little boat across the Rhine. The Belgæ ‡ suffered such a terrible overthrow, that marshes and rivers were rendered impassable from the heaps of slain. 11. The Ner'vians §, who were the most warlike of those barbarous nations, made head for a short time, and fell

---

* The inhabitants of the country now called Switzerland.

† The Helve'tians finding their country too narrow for their increased population, had determined on emigration. Being denied by Cæsar a passage through his province, hostilities commenced, which terminated as above. (Cæsar de Bel. Gal.)

‡ Inhabitants of the country between the Rhine and the Loire.

§ Inhabitants of the modern province of Hainault.

upon the Romans with such fury, that their army was in danger of being utterly routed; but Cæsar himself hastily catching up a buckler rushed through his troops into the midst of the enemy; by which means he so turned the fate of the day, that the barbarians were all cut off to a man. 12. The Celtic Gauls were next brought under subjection. After them, the Sue'vi, the Mena'pii, and all the nations from the Mediterranean to the British sea. 13. Thence, *stimulated* by the desire of conquest, he crossed over into Britain, upon pretence that the natives had furnished his enemies with continual supplies. 14. Upon approaching the shores, he found them covered with men to oppose his landing, and his forces were in danger of being driven back, till the standard-bearer of the tenth legion boldly leaped ashore, and being well assisted by Cæsar, the natives were put to flight. 15. The Britons, being terrified at Cæsar's power, sent to desire a peace, which was granted them, and some *hostages* delivered. A storm, however, soon after destroying great part of his fleet, they resolved to take advantage of the disaster, and marched against him with a powerful army. But what could naked undisciplined troops do against forces that had been exercised under the greatest generals, and hardened by the conquest of the greatest part of the world? Being overthrown, they were obliged once more to sue for peace. Cæsar granted it, and returned to the Continent.

16. While Cæsar was thus increasing his reputation and riches abroad, Pompey, who remained in Rome, steadily *co-operated* with his ambition, and advanced his interests while he vainly supposed he was forwarding his own. By this means Cæsar was continued five years longer in Gaul. 17. Nor was Pompey roused from his *lethargy* till the fame of that great commander's valour, riches, and humanity, began to make him suspect they would soon eclipse his own. 18. He now therefore did

all in his power to diminish Cæsar's reputation; obliging the magistrates not to publish any letters they received till he had diminished the credit of them, by spreading disadvantageous reports. 19. One or two accidents also helped to widen the separation; namely, the death of Ju'lia *, Pompey's wife, who had not a little contributed to improve the harmony that subsisted between them; and the destruction of Cras'sus, who had conducted the war against the Par'thians with so little prudence, that he suffered them to get the advantage of him in almost every *skirmish;* when incapable of extricating himself he fell a sacrifice to his own rashness, in trusting himself to a perfidious enemy †.

20. Cæsar, who now began to be sensible of the jealousies of Pompey, took occasion to solicit for the consulship, together with a prolongation of his government in Gaul, desirous of trying whether Pompey would *thwart* or promote his pretensions. 21. In this Pompey seemed to be quite inactive; but at the same time privately employed two of his creatures, who alleged in the senate that the laws did not permit a person that was absent to offer himself as a candidate for that high office. 22. Pompey's view in this was to *allure* Cæsar from his government, in order to stand for the consulship in person. 23. Cæsar however perceiving his artifice, chose to remain in his province; convinced that while he headed an army devoted to him, he could give law as well as magistrates to the state.

24. The senate, which was devoted to Pompey because he had for some time attempted to defend them from the encroachments of the people, ordered home the two le-

---

* She was the daughter of Cæsar.

† Cras'sus was inveigled into the power of Sur'ena, the Par'thian general, under the pretence of treating for peace. His head was cut off and sent to Orodes, the king of Par'thia, who poured molten gold down his throat.

gions which were in Cæsar's army, belonging to Pompey; as it was pretended to oppose the Par'thians, but in reality to diminish Cæsar's power. 25. Cæsar saw their motive; but as his plans were not yet ripe for execution, he sent them home in pursuance of the orders of the senate, having previously attached the officers to him by benefits, and the soldiers by bounties. 26. The next step the senate took, was to recal Cæsar from his government, as his time was very near expiring. But Cu'rio, his friend in the senate, proposed that Cæsar should not leave his army till Pompey had set him the example. 27. This for a while perplexed Pompey; however, during the debate one of the senate declaring that Cæsar had passed the Alps, and was marching with his whole army directly towards Rome, the consul, immediately quitting the senate, went with his colleagues to a house where Pompey at that time resided. He there presented him with a sword, commanding him to march against Cæsar, and fight in defence of the commonwealth. 28. Pompey declared he was ready to obey; but with an air of pretended moderation, added that it was only in case more gentle *expedients* could not be employed. 29. Cæsar, who was instructed in all that passed, though he was still in Gaul, was willing to give his aims all the appearance of justice. He agreed to lay down his employment when Pompey should do the same. But the senate rejected his propositions, blindly confident of their power, and relying on the assurances of Pompey. Cæsar, still unwilling to come to an open rupture with the state, at last was content to ask the government of Illyr'ia, with two legions; but this also was refused him. 30. Finding all attempts at an accommodation fruitless, and conscious, if not of the goodness of the cause, at least of the goodness of his troops, he began to draw them down towards the *con-*

fines of Italy; and passing the Alps with his third legion, stopped at Raven'na, whence he once more wrote to the consuls, declaring that he was ready to resign all command in case Pompey would do so. 31. On the other hand, the senate decreed, that Cæsar should lay down his government, and disband his forces within a limited time; and if he refused obedience, that he should be declared an enemy to the commonwealth.

Questions for Examination.

1. What was Cæsar's first act?
2. Was not the consent of the senate necessary?
3. Had Bibulus any controul over Cæsar?
4. How did Cæsar commence his schemes?
5. How did he farther promote his views?
6. How were the provinces allotted?
7—8. Was Cæsar's a desirable allotment?
9. Who were the first that submitted to Cæsar's arms?
10. Who were the next?
11. Who made the most formidable resistance?
12. What other nations were subdued by Cæsar?
13. Did these conquests content him?
14. What opposition did he experience on the British coast?
15. What followed this defeat?
16. In what way were Cæsar's views promoted?
17. Did not Pompey suspect his intentions?
18. When undeceived, what measures did he pursue?
19. What contributed to widen the breach?
20. How did Cæsar ascertain the disposition of Pompey towards him?
21. Did Pompey take an active part?
22. What was Pompey's view in this?
23. Did Cæsar fall into the snare?
24. Which side did the senate favour?
25. Did Cæsar give up the legions?
26. What was the next step they took?
27. What was the consequence of this proposal?
28. Did Pompey obey this command?
29. What was Cæsar's conduct on the occasion?
30. How did he next proceed?
31. What measure did the senate adopt?

SECT. II.

4. Pon'dered, *a.* considered, thought seriously.
5. Prompt'itude, *s.* readiness.
6 Supi'neness, *s.* carelessness, indolence.
Sarcast'ically, *ad.* tauntingly, severely.
8. Bo'ding, *part.* foretelling.
10. Lieutenants, *s.* (pro. *liftenants*) subordinate commanders, officers second in rank.
19. Intel'ligence, *s.* information.
Retar'd, *v.* to hinder, to keep back.
23. Men'ace, *s.* a threat.
24. Vet'eran, *s.* an old experienced soldier.
25. Joco'sely, *ad.* jestingly, good humouredly.
26. Drought, *s.* thirst.
27. Clem'ency, *s.* mercy, kindness.

1. CÆSAR, however, seemed no way disturbed at these violent proceedings; the night before his intended expedition into Italy, he sat down to table cheerfully, conversing with his friends on subjects of literature and philosophy; and apparently disengaged from every ambitious concern. After some time, rising up, he desired the company to make themselves joyous in his absence, and that he would be with them in a moment: in the mean time, having ordered his chariot to be prepared, he immediately set out, attended by a few friends, for Armin'ium, a city upon the confines of Italy, whither he had dispatched a part of his army the morning before. 2. This journey by night, which was very fatiguing, he performed with great diligence, sometimes walking, and sometimes on horseback; till at the break of day he came up with his army, which consisted of about five thousand men, near the Ru'bicon, a little river which separates Italy from Gaul, and which marked the limits of his command. 3. The Romans had ever been taught to consider this river as the sacred boundary of their domestic empire. 4. Cæsar, therefore, when he advanced

at the head of his army to the side of it, stopped short upon the bank, as if impressed with terror at the greatness of his enterprise. He could not pass it without transgressing the laws; he therefore *pondered* for some time in fixed melancholy, looking and debating with himself whether he should venture in. "If I pass this river," said he to one of his generals, "what miseries shall I bring upon my country! and if I now stop short I am undone." 5. After a pause he exclaimed, "Let us go where the gods and the injustice of our enemies call us." Thus saying, and resuming all his former alacrity, he plunged in, crying out, "The die is cast." His soldiers followed him with equal *promptitude;* and having passed the Ru'bicon, quickly arrived at Armin'ium, and made themselves masters of the place without any resistance.

6. This unexpected enterprise excited the utmost terrors in Rome; every one imagining that Cæsar was leading his army to lay the city in ruins. At the same time were to be seen the citizens flying into the country for safety, and the inhabitants of the country coming to seek shelter in the city. 7. In this universal confusion, Pompey felt all that repentance and self-condemnation which must necessarily arise from the remembrance of having advanced his rival to his present pitch of power: wherever he appeared, many of his former friends were ready to tax him with his *supineness,* and *sarcastically* to reproach his ill-grounded presumption. 8. "Where is now," cried Favo'nius, a ridiculous senator of this party, "the army that is to rise at your command? let us see if it will appear by stamping *." Cato reminded him of the many warnings he had given him; which, however, as he was continually *boding* nothing but calamities,

* This alludes to a boasting speech made some time before by Pompey, when he told the senate not to be alarmed at the news of Cæsar's approach, for that he had only to stamp, and an army would rise at his command.

Pompey might very justly be excused from attending to. 9. Being at length wearied with these reproaches, which were offered under colour of advice, he did all that lay in his power to encourage and confirm his followers: he told them that they should not want an army, for that he would be their leader. He confessed indeed, that he had all along mistaken Cæsar's aims, judging only from what they ought to have been: however, if his friends were still inspired with the love of freedom, they might yet enjoy it in whatever place their necessities should happen to conduct them. 10. He let them know that their affairs were in a very promising situation; that his two *lieutenants* were at the head of a very considerable army in Spain, composed of veteran troops that had made a conquest of the East: beside these, there were infinite resources, both in Asia and Africa, together with the succours they were sure to receive from all the kingdoms that were in alliance with Rome. 11. This speech served in some measure to revive the hopes of the confederacy. The greatest part of the senate, his private friends and dependents, with all those who expected to make their fortunes by espousing his cause, agreed to follow him. But being in no capacity to resist Cæsar at Rome, he resolved to lead his forces to Cap'ua; where the two legions that served under Cæsar in Gaul were stationed.

12. Cæsar in the mean time, after having vainly attempted to bring Pompey to an accommodation, resolved to pursue him into Cap'ua, before he could collect his forces. Accordingly, he marched on to take possession of the cities that lay between him and his rival, not regarding Rome, which he knew would fall of course to the conqueror.

Corfin'ium * was the first city that attempted to stop

* Now San Ferino.

the rapidity of his march. It was defended by Domi"tius, who had been appointed by the senate to succeed him in Gaul. Cæsar quickly invested it; and though Domi"tius sent frequently to Pompey, exhorting him to come and raise the siege, he was at last obliged to endeavour to escape privately. 14. His intentions being divulged, the garrison resolved to consult their own safety by delivering him up to the besiegers *. Cæsar readily accepted their offers, but kept his men from immediately entering the town. 15. After some time, Len'tulus the consul, who was one of the besieged, came out to implore forgiveness for himself and the rest of his confederates, putting Cæsar in mind of their ancient friendship, and acknowledging the many favours he had received at his hands. 16. To this, Cæsar, who would not wait the conclusion of his speech, generously replied, that he came into Italy not to injure the liberties of Rome and its citizens, but to restore them. 17. This humane reply being quickly carried into the city, the senators and the knights, with their children, and some officers of the garrison, came out to claim the conqueror's protection, who just glancing at their ingratitude, gave them their liberty, with permission to go wheresoever they should think proper. 18. But while he dismissed the leaders, he took care upon this, as upon all other occasions, to attach the common soldiers to his interest, sensible that he might stand in need of the army; but that while he lived, the army could never stand in need of a commander.

19. Pompey, who was unable to continue in Rome, having *intelligence* of what had passed upon this occasion,

---

* Domi"tius, fearing the resentment of the conqueror, ordered one of his slaves, who acted as his physician, to give him a dose of poison. On experiencing the clemency of Cæsar, he regretted his rashness, but was relieved from his uneasiness by the confession of the slave, that he had merely given him a sleeping draught. (Plutarch.)

retreated to Brundusium*, where he resolved to stand a siege, in order to *retard* the enemy, until the forces of the empire should be united to oppose him. 20. His aim in this succeeded to his wish; and after having employed Cæsar for some time in a fruitless siege, he privately carried his forces over to Dyrrach'ium†, where the consul had levied a body of troops for his assistance. 21. However, though he made good his escape, he was compelled to leave all Italy at the mercy of his rival, without a town or an army that had strength to oppose his progress.

22. Cæsar, who could not follow Pompey for want of shipping, went back to Rome to take possession of the public treasures, which his opponent, by a most unaccountable oversight, had neglected to take with him. 23. Upon his coming up to the door of the treasury, Metel'lus, the tribune who guarded it, refused to let him pass; but Cæsar, with emotion, laying his hand upon his sword, threatened to strike him dead: "Know, young man," cried he, "it is easier to do this than say it." This *menace* had its effect; Metel'lus retired, and Cæsar took out of the treasury three hundred thousand pounds weight of gold, and an immense quantity of silver.

24. Having thus provided for continuing the war, he departed from Rome, resolved to subdue Pompey's lieutenants, Afra'nius and Petrei'us, who had been long in Spain at the head of a *veteran* army, which had ever been victorious. 25. Cæsar, however, who knew the abilities of its present commanders, *jocosely* said, as he was preparing to march, "I am going to fight an army without

---

* A town of Cala'bria, with an excellent harbour. (Stra'bo.) It is now called Brin'disa.

† Dyrrach'ium, a town on the coast of Illyr'icum, originally called Epidam'num; but being an inauspicious name, it was changed by the Romans to Dyrrach'ium. (Pliny.)—The port of this town answered to that of Brundu'sium, and the passage between both was very ready and expeditious. It was a place of great trade. The people were first called Epidam'nii—[Æ'lian—afterwards Dyrrachi'ni.] (Ci''cero, Liv'y.)

a general, and return to fight a general without an army."

26. The first conflict which he had with Afra'nius and Petrei'us was rather unfavourable It was fought near the city of Ilerda *, and both sides claimed the honour of the victory. But, by various stratagems, he reduced them at last to such extremity of hunger and *drought*, that they were obliged to yield at discretion. 27. *Clemency* was his favourite virtue; he dismissed them all with the kindest professions, and sent them home to Rome loaded with shame, and with obligations to publish his virtues, and confirm the affections of his adherents. 28. Thus in the space of about forty days he became master of Spain, and returned again victorious to Rome. The citizens upon this occasion received him with fresh demonstrations of joy, and created him dictator and consul. But the first of these offices he laid down when he had held it eleven days.

Questions for Examination.

1. Did these hostile proceedings of the senate give Cæsar great uneasiness?
2. Did he accomplish his journey in safety?
3. What rendered this little river of consequence?
4. Did Cæsar pass it without hesitation?
5. How did he determine?
6. What effect was produced at Rome by this enterprise?
7. How was Pompey affected by it?
8. What taunting expressions were used on the occasion?
9. What was Pompey's conduct in reply?
10. How did he represent the state of affairs?
11. What was the consequence of this statement?
12. How was Cæsar employed in the mean while?
13. What city first arrested his progress?
14. Did he succeed in his endeavour?
15. What attempt was made to incline Cæsar to mercy?

---

* Now Lerida, in Catalonia.

16. What was Cæsar's reply?
17. What was the consequence of this reply?
18. Did he dismiss the soldiers likewise?
19. Whither did Pompey retreat, and with what view?
20. Did he succeed in his aims?
21. What was the consequence of his retreat?
22. Did Cæsar follow Pompey?
23. Was he opposed in this attempt?
24. What was his next enterprise?
25. What was Cæsar's opinion of these commanders?
26. Were they easily conquered?
27. What use did he make of his victory?
28. What was the duration of this campaign, and what were its consequences?

SECT. III.

2. Effect'ive, *a.* fit for service, complete.
3. Equiv'alent, *a.* equal in value.
5. O'verture, *s.* proposal, offer.
6. Ammuni'tion, *s.* military stores.
   Depos'ited, *part.* laid up.
12. Intrench, *v.* to fortify by digging a ditch or trench.
13. Redoubts, *s.* the outworks of a fortification, fortresses.
14. An'noy, *v.* to injure.
16. Indefat'igable, *a.* unwearied.
18. Reit'erated, *part.* repeated.
20. Precipita'tion, *s.* headlong haste.
21. Ambusca'de, *s.* a private station in which men lie to surprise others.
22. Deci'sive, *a.* final, conclusive; that settles a matter in dispute.
23. Sca'ling, *part.* mounting the wall.

1. While Cæsar was thus employed, Pompey was active in making preparations in Epi'rus* and Greece to oppose him. 2. All the monarchs of the East had de-

* Epi'rus, a district of north Greece Proper, and constituting part of what was called the Grecian Empire. The Romans reduced Epi'rus to a wilderness, because of the obstinate and frequent revolts of the people. It was famous for its large breed of cattle, (Homer, Virgil, and Ovid;) and also for its fertility. (Homer.)

clared in his favour, and sent very large supplies. He was master of nine *effective* Italian legions, and had a fleet of five hundred large ships, under the conduct of Bib'ulus, an active and experienced commander. Added to these, he was supplied with large sums of money, and all the necessaries for an army, from the tributary provinces round him. 3. He had attacked Antony and Dolabel'la, who commanded for Cæsar in that part of the empire, with such success, that the former was obliged to fly, and the latter was taken prisoner. Crowds of the most distinguished citizens and nobles from Rome came every day to join him. He had at one time above two hundred senators in his camp, among whom were Ci"cero and Ca'to, whose approbation of his cause was *equivalent* to an army.

4. Notwithstanding these preparations, Cæsar shipped off five of his twelve legions at Brundu'sium, and fortunately steered through the midst of his enemies, timing it so well, that he made his passage in one day. 5. Still, however, convinced that the proper time for making proposals for a peace was after gaining advantage, he sent one Ru'fus, whom he had taken prisoner, to effect an accommodation with Pompey, offering to refer all to the senate and people of Rome; but Pompey once more rejected the *overture*, considering the people of Rome too much in Cæsar's interest to be relied on.

6. Pompey had been raising supplies in Macedo'nia when he was first informed of Cæsar's landing upon the coast of Epi'rus: he now resolved immediately to march to Dyrrach'ium, in order to cover that place from Cæsar's attempts, as all his *ammunition* and provisions were *deposited* there. 7. The first place where both armies came in sight of each other was on the opposite banks of the river Ap'sus; and, as both were commanded by the two greatest generals then in the world, the one renowned for his conquest in the East, the other celebrated for his

victories over the Western parts of the empire, a battle was eagerly desired by the soldiers on either side. 8. But neither of the generals were willing to hazard it upon this occasion: Pompey could not rely upon his new levies; and Cæsar would not venture an engagement till he was joined by the rest of his forces.

9. Cæsar had waited some time with extreme impatience for the coming up of the remainder of his army; and even ventured alone in an open fishing-boat to hasten its arrival, but he was driven back by a storm *. 13. However, his disappointment was soon relieved, by an information of the landing of the troops at Apollo'nia †; he therefore decamped in order to meet them; and to prevent Pompey, with his army, from engaging them on their march, as he lay on that side of the river where the succours had been obliged to come on shore.

11. Pompey being compelled to retreat, led his forces to Aspara'gium ‡, where he was sure of being supplied with every thing necessary for his army, by the numerous fleets which he employed along the coasts of Epi'rus: there he pitched his camp upon a tongue of land (as mariners express it) that jutted into the sea, where also was a small shelter for his ships. 12. In this place, being most advantageously situated, he began immediately to *intrench* his camp; which Cæsar perceiving, and finding that he was not likely soon to quit so advantageous a post, began also to intrench behind him. 13. As all beyond Pompey's camp, towards the land side was hilly and

* It was on this occasion that he encouraged the master of the vessel, to whom he had not before made himself known, with these memorable words, "Fear nothing, for thou carriest Cæsar and all his fortunes."

† There were no less than fifteen towns of this name, but the one here mentioned was situated on the Adria'tic, on the coast of Illyr'ium. It was famous for its learning. Its inhabitants were called Apollo'niates. (Ci''cero, Li'vy, Cæ'sar.) It was here that Augus'tus was sent by his great uncle Cæsar, for his education.

‡ A small town and citadel in Greek Illyr'icum, not far from Apollo'nia. (Cæsar.)

steep, Cæsar built redoubts upon the hills, stretching from shore to shore; and then caused lines of communication to be drawn from hill to hill, by which he blocked up the camp of the enemy *. 14. He hoped by this blockade to force his opponent to a battle, which he ardently desired, and which the other with equal industry declined. Thus both sides continued for some time employed in designs and stratagems, the one to *annoy* and the other to defend. 15. Cæsar's men daily carried on their works to straiten the enemy; those of Pompey, having the advantage of numbers, did the same to enlarge themselves, and severely galled the enemy by their slingers and archers. 16. Cæsar, however, was *indefatigable;* he caused blinds or mantelets to be made of skins of beasts, to cover his men while at work; he cut off all the water that supplied the enemy's camp, and the forage from the horses; so that there remained no more subsistence for them. 17. But Pompey at last resolved to break through his lines, and gain some other part of the country more convenient for encampment. Accordingly, having informed himself of the condition of Cæsar's fortifications from some deserters who came over to him, he ordered the light infantry and archers on board his ships, to attack Cæsar's entrenchments by sea, where they were least defended. 18. This was done with such effect, that though Cæsar and his officers used their utmost endeavours to hinder Pompey's designs, yet by means of *reiterated* attempts, he at last effected his purpose of extricating his army from its present camp, and of encamping in another place by the sea, where he had the convenience both of forage and shipping. 19. Cæsar being thus frustrated in his views of blocking up the enemy, and perceiving the loss he had sustained, resolved at last to force Pompey to a battle, though upon disadvantage-

* These lines extended upwards of eighteen miles.

ous terms. 20. The engagement began by attempting to cut off a legion which was posted in a wood; and this brought on a general battle. The conflict was for some time carried on with great ardour, and with equal fortune; but Cæsar's army being entangled in the entrenchments of the old camps lately abandoned, began to fall into disorder; upon which Pompey pressing his advantage, they at last fled with *precipitation*. Great numbers perished in the trenches and on the banks of the river, or were pressed to death by their fellows. 21. Pompey pursued his success to the very camp of Cæsar; but either from surprise, under the suddenness of his victory, or fearful of an *ambuscade*, he withdrew his troops into his own camp, and thus lost an opportunity of completing his victory.

22. After this defeat, which was by no means *decisive*, Cæsar marched, with all his forces united into one body, directly to Gom'phi, a town in the province of Thes'saly. But the news of his defeat at Dyrra'chium had reached this place before him; the inhabitants therefore, who had before promised him obedience, now changed their minds; and, with a degree of baseness equal to their imprudence, shut their gates against him. 23. Cæsar was not to be injured with impunity. Having represented to his soldiers the great advantage of forcing a place so very rich, he ordered the scaling ladders to be got ready: and causing an assault to be made, proceeded with such vigour, that notwithstanding the height of the walls, the town was taken in a few hours. 24. Cæsar left it to be plundered, and, without delaying his march, went forward to Metrop'olis, another town of the same province, which yielded at his approach. By this means he soon became possessed of all Thes'saly, except Laris'sa*, which was garrisoned by Scip'io, with his legion, who commanded for Pompey.

* This city still exists, and bears the same name.

25. During this interval, Pompey's officers continually soliciting their commander to come to a battle, he, at length, resolved to renounce his own judgment, in compliance with those about him; and gave up all schemes of prudence for those dictated by avarice and passion.
26. Advancing, therefore, into Thes'saly, within a few days after the taking of Gom'phi, he drew down upon the plains of Pharsa'lia, where he was joined by Scip'io, his lieutenant and the troops under his command. There, waiting the coming up of Cæsar, he resolved upon engaging; and by a single battle to decide the fate of kingdoms.

Questions for Examination.

1. How was Pompey engaged at this time?
2. What advantages did he possess?
3. What farther contributed to give him hopes of success?
4. Was Cæsar discouraged by these formidable preparations?
5. Was he resolutely bent on hostilities?
6. What was Pompey's first measure?
7. Where did the armies first come in sight of each other?
8. Was an immediate engagement the consequence?
9. Was this junction soon effected?
10. What was the consequence?
11. What was Pompey's next measure?
12. Did he remain long in this place?
13. What means did Cæsar adopt to distress the enemy?
14. What did he promise himself from this measure?
15. How were both armies employed?
16. What was the conduct of Cæsar on the occasion?
17. How did Pompey frustrate his designs?
18. Was he successful in his attempts?
19. What was Cæsar's resolution on the occasion?
20. By what means did he effect this?
21. Did Pompey make the most of his victory?
22. Whither did Cæsar betake himself, and what was the consequence of his defeat?
23. Did he quietly submit to this insult?
24. What revenge did he take?
25. How did Pompey act on this occasion?
26. Where was this great contest about to be decided?

SECT. IV.

7. Struck, *v.* taken down.
13. Re'cent, *a.* late, not long passed.
Detesta'tion, *s.* abhorrence.
14. Seren'ity, *s.* calmness, placidity.
15. Invin'cible, *a.* not to be conquered.
18. Reinforc'ement, *s.* an accession of strength.
Co'horts, *s.* troops of soldiers, each containing about five hundred men.
23. Auxil'iaries, *s.* helpers, assistants.

1. CÆSAR had employed all his art for some time in sounding the inclinations of his men; and finding his army once more resolute and vigorous, he advanced towards the plains of Pharsa'lia, where Pompey was encamped.

2. The approach of two armies, composed of the best and bravest troops in the world, together with the greatness of the prize for which they contended, filled every mind with anxiety, though with different expectations. 3. Pompey's army, being most numerous, turned all their thoughts to the enjoyment of the victory*; Cæsar's considered only the means of obtaining it: Pompey's army depended upon their numbers, and their many generals; Cæsar's upon their discipline, and the conduct of their single commander. 4. Pompey's partisans hoped much from the justice of their cause; Cæsar's alleged the frequent proposals which they had made for peace without effect. Thus the views, hopes, and motives of both, seemed different, whilst their hatred and ambition were the same. 5. Cæsar, who was ever foremost in offering battle, led out his army to meet the enemy; but Pompey either sus-

* So confident were they of success, that Domi"tius, Spin'ther and Scip'io, contended which should succeed Cæsar as Pontifex Maximus; others sent to Rome to hire such houses as were suitable to the offices they expected to enjoy after the victory. (Appian, Plutarch.)

pecting his troops, or dreading the event, kept his advantageous situation, at the foot of the hill near which he was posted. 6. Cæsar unwilling to attack him at a disadvantage, resolved to decamp the next day, hoping to weary out his antagonist, who was not a match for him in sustaining the fatigues of duty. 7. Accordingly the order for marching was given, and the tents *struck*, when word was brought him, that Pompey's army had now quitted their intrenchments, and advanced farther into the plain than usual; so that he might engage them at less disadvantage *. 8. Upon this he caused his troops to halt, and with a countenance of joy, informed them that the happy time was at last come, which they had so long wished for, and which was to crown their glory, and terminate their fatigues. He then drew up his troops in order, and advanced towards the place of battle. 9. His forces did not amount to above half those of Pompey; the army of the one was about forty-five thousand foot, and seven thousand horse; that of the other not exceeding twenty-two thousand foot, and about a thousand horse. 10. This disproportion, particularly in the cavalry, had filled Cæsar with apprehensions; he therefore had some days before picked out the strongest and nimblest of his foot-soldiers, and accustomed them to fight between the ranks of his cavalry. By their assistance, his thousand horse was a match for Pompey's seven thousand, and had actually got the better in a skirmish that happened between them some days before.

11. Pompey, on the other hand, had a strong expectation of success; he boasted that he could put Cæsar's legions to flight, without striking a single blow; presuming that as soon as the armies formed, his cavalry, on which he placed his greatest expectation, would out-flank and surround the enemy. In this disposition Pompey led

* Pompey was, in some measure, compelled to hazard a battle, contrary to his judgment, by the ardour of his troops.

his troops to battle. 12. As the armies approached, the two generals went from rank to rank encouraging their men, exciting their hopes, and lessening their apprehensions. 13. Pompey represented to his men that the glorious occasion which they had long besought him to grant was now before them. "What advantages," said he, "could you wish, that you are not now possessed of? Your numbers, your vigour, a late victory, all assure us of a speedy and an easy conquest of those harassed and broken troops, composed of men worn out with age, and impressed with the terrors of a *recent* defeat; but there is still a stronger bulwark for our protection than the superiority of our strength; and that is, the justice of our cause. You are engaged in the defence of liberty and of your country; you are supported by its laws, and followed by its magistrates; the world are spectators of your conduct, and wish you success: on the contrary, he whom you oppose is a robber, an oppressor of his country, already nearly sunk with the consciousness of his crimes, as well as the ill success of his arms. Shew then on this occasion all that ardour and *detestation* of tyranny which should animate Romans, and do justice to mankind."

14. Cæsar, on his part, went among his men with that steady *serenity* for which he was so much admired in the midst of danger. He insisted on nothing so strongly, as his frequent and unsuccessful endeavours for peace. He spoke with terror of the blood he was about to shed, and pleaded the necessity that urged him to it. He deplored the many brave men that were to fall on both sides, and the wounds of his country, whoever might be victorious. 15. His soldiers answered only with looks of ardour and impatience. He gave the signal to begin. The word on Pompey's side was, "Her'cules the *Invincible*:" that on Cæsar's, "Ve'nus the Victorious." 16. There was no more space between both armies than to give room for the charge; Pompey therefore ordered his men to receive the

first shock without moving from their places, expecting the enemies ranks to be put into disorder. Cæsar's soldiers were now rushing on with their usual impetuosity, when perceiving the enemy motionless, they all stopt short, as if by general consent, and halted in the midst of their career. 17. A terrible pause ensued, in which both armies continued to gaze upon each other with mutual terror and dreadful serenity. At length, Cæsar's men having taken breath, ran furiously upon the enemy, first discharging their javelins, and then drawing their swords. The same method was observed by Pompey's troops, who as firmly sustained the attack. His cavalry also were ordered to charge at the very onset: which with the multitude of archers and slingers, soon obliged Cæsar's men to give ground. 18. Cæsar instantly ordered the six *cohorts*, that were placed as a *reinforcement*, to advance, and to strike at the enemy's faces. 19. This had its desired effect: Pompey's cavalry, that were just before sure of the victory, received an immediate check. The unusual method of fighting pursued by the cohorts, their aiming entirely at the visages of the assailants, and the horrible, disfiguring wounds they made, all contributed to intimidate them so much, that instead of defending their persons, they endeavoured only to save their faces*. 20. A total rout ensued; they fled to the neighbouring mountains, while the archers and slingers, who were thus abandoned, were cut to pieces. 21. Cæsar now commanded the cohorts to pursue their success, and charge Pompey's troops upon the flank: this charge the enemy withstood for some time with great bravery, till Cæsar brought up his third line, which had not yet engaged. 22. Pompey's infantry being thus doubly attacked, in front by fresh troops, and in the rear by the victorious cohorts, could no longer resist, but fled to their camp.

* Cæsar calls the young patricians that composed Pompey's cavalry, *pretty young dancers.*

The flight began among the strangers. Pompey's right wing still valiantly maintained their ground. 23. Cæsar, however, convinced that the victory was certain, with his usual clemency cried out to pursue the strangers, but to spare the Romans; upon which they all laid down their arms and received quarter. The greatest slaughter was among the *auxiliaries*, who fled on all sides. 24. The battle had now lasted from break of day till noon, and the weather was extremely hot; nevertheless, the conquerors remitted not their ardour, being encouraged by the example of a general, who thought his victory incomplete till he should become master of the enemy's camp. Accordingly, marching on foot at their head, he called upon them to follow and strike the decisive blow. 25. The cohorts which were left to defend the camp, for some time, made a formidable resistance; particularly a great number of Thra'cians and other barbarians, who were appointed for that purpose; but nothing could resist the ardour of Cæsar's victorious army; the enemy were at last driven from the trenches, and compelled to fly to the mountains.

Questions for Examination.

1. Was Cæsar equally desirous of engaging?
2. What effect had this approaching event on the minds of men?
3. What were the respective advantages of each army?
4. On what did they principally build their hopes?
5. Who was the first to offer battle?
6. How did Cæsar act on this occasion?
7. What followed?
8. What effect had this intelligence on Cæsar's plan?
9. Were the armies nearly equal?
10. What was done to remedy this disproportion?
11. What were Pompey's expectations and boasts?
12. What was the conduct of the generals?
13. Repeat Pompey's address to his troops.
14. How did Cæsar encourage his men?
15. What effect had this speech, and what was the word on both sides?

16. In what manner did the attack commence?
17. Describe the progress of the battle.
18. By what means did Cæsar prevent a defeat?
19. Was this measure successful?
20. What was the consequence?
21. What were Cæsar's farther commands?
22. What followed?
23. What use did Cæsar make of his victory?
24. Did not fatigue abate the ardour of Cæsar's troops?
25. Did they attempt to defend their camp?

SECT. V.

2. Ban'quet, *s.* a feast.
4. Unten'able, *a.* not to be defended or kept.
5. Intercept'ed, *v.* cut off.
6. Inces'sant, *a.* unceasing.
9. Neu'tral, *a.* indifferent, not engaged on either side.
19. Mi'nor, *s.* a person under age.
20. Insid'iously, *ad.* craftily, deceitfully.
23. Contempt'uous, *a.* scornful, proud, insolent.
25. Inev'itable, *a.* not to be escaped.
27. Embalm'ed, *part.* preserved with spices, &c.
30. Rites, *s.* religious ceremonies.

1. CÆSAR, seeing the field and camp strewed with his fallen countrymen, was strongly affected at the melancholy prospect, and cried out to one that stood near him, "They would have it so." 2. In the camp, every object presented fresh instances of the blind presumption and madness of his adversaries. On all sides were to be seen tents adorned with ivy and myrtle, couches covered with purple, and side-boards loaded with plate. Every thing gave proofs of the highest luxury, and seemed rather the preparatives for a *banquet*, or the rejoicings for a victory, than dispositions for a battle. 3. A camp so richly furnished, would have engaged the attention of any troops but Cæsar's; but there was still something to be done, and he permitted them not to pursue any other object than their enemies. 4. A considerable body having retired to the adjacent mountains, he prevailed on his soldiers to join

him in the pursuit, in order to oblige these to surrender. He began by inclosing them with a line drawn at the foot of the mountain; but they quickly abandoned a post which was *untenable* for want of water, and endeavoured to reach the city of Laris'sa. 5. Cæsar leading a part of his army by a shorter way, *intercepted* their retreat. However these unhappy fugitives again found protection from a mountain, at the foot of which ran a rivulet that supplied them with water. 6. Night approaching, Cæsar's men were almost spent, and fainting with their *incessant* toil since morning; yet still he prevailed upon them to renew their labours, and cut off the rivulet that supplied the defendants. 7. The fugitives thus deprived of all hopes of succour or subsistence, sent deputies to the conqueror, offering to surrender at discretion. During this interval of negociation, a few senators that were among them, took the advantage of the night to escape, and the rest, next morning, gave up their arms, and experienced the conqueror's clemency. In fact, he addressed them with great gentleness, and forbade the soldiers to offer violence, or to take any thing from them. 8. Thus Cæsar gained the most complete victory that had ever been obtained; and by his great clemency after the battle, seemed to have deserved it. His loss amounted only to two hundred men; that of Pompey to fifteen thousand; twenty-four thousand men surrendered themselves prisoners of war, and the greatest part of these entered into Cæsar's army, and were incorporated with the rest of his forces. 9. To the senators and Roman knights, who fell into his hands, he generously gave liberty to retire wherever they thought proper: and as for the letters which Pompey had received from those who wished to be thought *neutral*, Cæsar burnt them all without reading, as Pompey had done on a former occasion. 10. Thus having performed all the duties of a general and a statesman, he sent for the legions which had passed the night in camp, to relieve those which had ac-

companied him in the pursuit, and arrived the same day at Laris'sa.

11. As for Pompey, who had formerly shewn such instances of courage and conduct, when he saw his cavalry routed, on which he had placed his sole dependance, he absolutely lost his reason. 12. Instead of thinking how to remedy this disorder by rallying such troops as fled, or by opposing fresh troops to stop the progress of the conqueror, being totally amazed by this first blow, he returned to the camp, and in his tent waited the issue of an event, which it was his duty to have directed, not to follow: there he remained for some moments speechless, till being told that the camp was attacked, "What," says he, "are we pursued to our very intrenchments?" when, immediately quitting his armour for a habit more suited to his circumstances, he fled on horseback to Laris'sa; thence, perceiving that he was not pursued, he slackened his pace, giving way to all the agonizing reflections which his deplorable situation must naturally suggest. 13. In this melancholy manner he passed along the vale of Tempe *, and pursuing the course of the river Pe'neus, at last arrived at a fisherman's hut; here he passed the night, and then went on board a little bark; keeping along the sea-shore, till he descried a ship of some burthen, which seemed preparing to sail. In this he embarked; the master of the vessel still paying him that homage which was due to his former station.

14. From the mouth of the river Pe'neus he sailed to Amphip'olis †, where finding his affairs desperate he steered to Lesbos ‡, to take with him his wife Corne'lia, whom he had left there, at a distance from the dangers and distresses of war. 15. She, who had long flattered

* A pleasant valley in Thes'saly.

† An ancient city of Macedo'nia, now called Chisop'oli.

‡ Les'bos, an island of Greece, in the Archipel'ago, famous for its fertility.—(Ta"citus.) This island gave birth to Sap'pho, the poetess, and several eminent men.

herself with the hopes of victory, now felt the agonizing reverse of fortune: she was desired by the messenger, whose tears more than his words proclaimed her unspeakable misfortunes, to hasten away if she expected to see Pompey, who had but one ship, and even that not his own. 16. Her grief, which before was violent, became now insupportable; she fainted, and lay without signs of life. At length recovering, and reflecting that it was no time for vain lamentations, she fled through the city to the sea-side.

17. Pompey received and embraced her, and in silent despair supported her in his arms. "Alas!" said Cornelia, "you who, before our marriage, appeared in these seas as the commander of five hundred sail, are now reduced to make your escape in a single vessel. Why come you in search of an unfortunate woman? Why was I not left to a fate which now you are under the necessity of sharing with me? Happy for me had I executed, long since, my design of quitting this life! But fatally have I been reserved to add to Pompey's sorrows."

18. Pompey instanced the uncertainty of all human affairs, and endeavoured by every argument to give her comfort; then, taking her under his protection, he continued his course, stopping no longer than was necessary for a supply of provisions, at the ports that occurred in his passage. 19. He now determined upon applying to Ptolemy king of Egypt, to whose father he had been a considerable benefactor. Ptolemy was yet a *minor*, and had not the government in his own hands, but was under the direction of an administration. 20. His council *insidiously* contrived that Pompey should be invited on shore, and murdered before he should come into the king's presence*. Achillas, commander of the forces, and Sep-

* This was by the advice of Theodotus, preceptor to the young king. "If we receive him," said he, "we shall make Cæsar our enemy, and Pompey our master; if we dismiss him,

tim'ius, a Roman, who had formerly been a centurion in Pompey's army, undertook to carry the treacherous design into execution, Attended by three or four more, they put off in a little bark, and rowed to Pompey's ship, that lay about a mile from the shore.

21. Pompey now took leave of Corne'lia, repeating to her a verse of Soph'ocles, signifying, that "he who trusts his freedom to a tyrant, from that moment becomes a slave." He then gave his hand to Achil'las, and, with only two of his own attendants, stepped into the bark. 22. The frantic Corne'lia hung over the side of the deck, weeping and exclaiming against his separation from her, "Alas!" said she, "whither art thou going?"

> He spoke; but she, unmov'd at his commands,
> Thus loud exclaiming, stretch'd her eager hands;
> Whither, inhuman! whither art thou gone?
> Still must I weep our common griefs alone?
>
> ROWE'S LUCAN.

in wild astonishment followed him with her eyes, and uttering to the winds her fruitless lamentations.

23. The mariners, regardless of her sorrows, rowed towards land, without a word passing among them, till Pompey, by way of breaking silence, looking at Septim'ius, whose face he recollected, "Methinks, friend," said he, "you once served under me." Septim'ius noticing these words only by a *contemptuous* nod of the head, Pompey betook himself to a paper, on which he had minuted a speech intended to be made to the king, and began reading it. In this manner they approached the shore; whilst Corne'lia, whose insufferable sorrow had never let her lose sight of her husband, began to conceive hopes, perceiving that the people on the strand crowded down along the coast as if eager to receive him. 24. Alas! these hopes were soon destroyed. At the instant that

---

we render ourselves obnoxious to Pompey by our inhospitality, and to Cæsar for letting him escape."

Pompey rose, supporting himself upon his freedman's arm, Septim'ius stabbed him in the back, and Achil'las instantly seconded the blow. Pompey perceiving his death *inevitable*, calmly disposed himself to meet it with decency; and covering his face with his robe, without a word resigned himself to his fate. 26. At this horrid sight, Corne'lia and her attendants shrieked, so as to be heard to the very shore. But the danger they were in, allowing no time to look on, they immediately set sail, and the wind proving favourable, fortunately escaped the pursuit of the Egyptian galleys. 27. In the mean time, Pompey's murderers, having taken off his head, *embalmed* it for a present to Cæsar: whilst the body was thrown naked on the strand, and exposed to the view of those whose curiosity was to be satisfied. 28. But his faithful freedman Philip still kept near it; and when the crowd dispersed, he washed it in the sea, and looking round for materials to burn it, perceived the wrecks of a fishing-boat, of which he composed a pile. 29. While he was thus piously employed, he was accosted by an old Roman soldier, who had served under Pompey in his youth. "Who art thou?" said he, "that art making these humble preparations for Pompey's funeral?"—"One of his freedmen," answered Philip. "Alas," replied the soldier, "permit me to share with you the honour of this sacred action. Among all the miseries of my exile, it will be my last sad comfort, that I have been able to assist at the funeral of my old commander, and to touch the body of the bravest general that ever Rome produced."

30. Thus were the last *rites* performed to Pompey. But his ashes (according to Plutarch) were carefully collected, and carried to Corne'lia, who deposited them at his villa near Alba *, in Italy. 31. We are told too that the

* Generally called Alba Pom'peia. In the time of the Romans, it was the chief city of Ligu'ria. The town still retains the name of Alba; but the province in which it is situated is called Mont'-

Egyp'tians afterwards erected a monument to him, on the spot on which his funeral pile had been raised, with an inscription to this purpose:—"How poor a tomb covers the man who once had temples erected to his honour!"

32. From Pompey's death we date the extinction of the republic. From this period the senate was dispossessed of its power; and Rome henceforward was never without a master.

Questions for Examination.

1. How was Cæsar affected by the result of the battle?
2. What appearance did Pompey's camp present?
3. Did Cæsar's troops immediately begin to plunder?
4. What became of the fugitives?
5. Did they succeed in the attempt?
6. Were the labours of Cæsar's soldiers now at an end?
7. What effect had this on the fugitives?
8. Was this victory of importance, and what was the loss on both sides?
9. In what manner did Cæsar behave to the vanquished?
10. What followed?
11. What was the conduct of Pompey on this occasion?
12. Mention your reasons for this assertion.
13. Proceed in relating farther particulars.
14. Whither did he next steer his course?
15—16. What effect had the tidings on Cornelia?
17. Relate what passed at their interview.
18. How did Pompey attempt to comfort her?
19. What determination did he now form?
20. What was his intended reception?
21. Did Pompey fall into the snare?
22. Was his separation from his wife a painful one?
23. What passed in the boat?
24. Were Cornelia's hopes well founded?
25. Did Pompey resist this treacherous attack?
26. Was Cornelia a witness to this horrid transaction?
27. How was the body of Pompey treated?
28. Had he no friend to perform the last offices for him?
29. By whom was he assisted?

---

ferrat. This town gave birth to the Emperor Per'tinax. There were several other towns of the name of Alba.

30. What became of his remains?
31. What respect did the Egyptians afterwards pay to his memory?
32. What was the face of affairs after Pompey's death?

CHAPTER XXI.

SECT. I.

From the Destruction of the Commonwealth, to the Establishment of the first Emperor, Augustus.— U. C. 706.

3. Inconsid'erable, *a.* small, trifling.
4. Grate'ful, *a.* agreeable, acceptable.
16. Interp'reter, *s.* one who explains the speech of a foreigner.
17. Av'enues, *s.* entrances, ways.
20. Junc'tion, *s.* a joining, meeting.
21. Pan'ic, *s.* unfounded fright, violent fear.
22. Irreme'diable, *a.* not to be remedied.
Com'mentaries, *s.* Cæsar's history of his wars in Gaul.
23. Ineffect'ual, *a.* unsuccessful, useless.
28. Reprehend'ed, *v.* blamed, censured.
29. Depo'sed, *v.* deprived of his crown.
31. Par'ricide, *s.* the murder or murderer of a father.

1. CÆSAR has been much celebrated for his good fortune, but his abilities seem equal to the highest success. He possessed shining qualities, tarnished by ambition only. His talents were such as would have rendered him victorious at the head of any army; and he would have governed in any republic that had given him birth. 2. Having now gained a most complete victory, his success seemed only to increase his activity, and inspire him with fresh resolution to face new dangers. He determined, therefore, to pursue his last advantage, and follow Pompey to whatever country he had retired; convinced that, though he might gain new triumphs, he should never enjoy security until his rival was in his power.

3. Accordingly, losing no time, he set sail for Egypt, and arrived at Alexan'dria * with about four thousand men: a very *inconsiderable* force this to keep so powerful a kingdom under subjection. 4. The first accounts he received were of Pompey's miserable end; and soon after, one of the murderers came with his head and his ring, as a most *grateful* present to the conqueror. 5. But Cæsar had too much humanity to be pleased with so horrid a spectacle; with the sad remains of the man he once loved; his partner in power. He turned from it with disgust; and, after a short pause, gave vent to his pity in a flood of tears. He ordered the head to be burned with the most costly perfumes, and placed the ashes in a temple, which he built and dedicated to the goddess Nem'esis, the avenger of cruel and inhuman deeds.

6. It should seem that the Egyp'tians by this time had some hopes of breaking off all alliance with the Romans; which they considered, as in fact it was, only another name for subjection. They first took offence at Cæsar's carrying the ensigns of Roman power before him as he entered the city †. Photi'nus also treated him with great disrespect, and even attempted his life. 7. Cæsar, however, concealed his resentment till he had a force sufficient to punish his treachery; sending therefore privately for the legions which had been formerly enrolled for Pompey's service, as being the nearest to Egypt, he, in the mean time, pretended to repose an entire confidence in the king's minister, making great entertainments, and assisting at the conferences of the philosophers, who were numerous at Alexan'dria. 8. However, he soon changed his man-

---

* This is the usual pronunciation, though Walker accents the word Alexandri'a.

† The principal cause of quarrel was this: Ptol'emy Aule'tes had engaged Cæsar, during his first consulate, by a promise of ten thousand talents, to get him acknowledged as a friend and ally of the Roman republic; part only of this sum had been paid, and Cæsar now exacted the remainder with great rigour.

ner, when he found himself in no danger from the minister's attempts; and declared, that being a Roman consul, it was his duty to settle the succession of the Egyp'tian crown.

9. There were at that time two pretenders to the crown of Egypt; Ptol'emy, the acknowledged king, and the celebrated Cleopa'tra, his sister; to whom, by the custom of the country, he was married; and who, by his father's will, shared jointly in the succession. 10. Not contented with the participation of power, Cleopa'tra aimed at governing alone; but being opposed in her views by the Roman senate, who confirmed her brother's title to the crown, she was banished into Sy'ria, with Arsin'oe her younger sister. 11. Cæsar gave her new hopes of aspiring to the kingdom, and sent both to her and her brother to plead their cause before him. But Photi'nus, the young king's guardian, disdaining to accept this proposal, backed his refusal by sending an army of twenty thousand men to besiege him in Alexandria. 12. Cæsar bravely repulsed the enemy; but finding the city of too great extent to be defended by so small an army as his, he retired to the palace, which commanded the harbour, and there purposed to make his stand. 13. Achil'las, who commanded the Egyp'tians, attacked him with great vigour, and aimed at making himself master of the fleet that lay before the palace. 14. Cæsar, however, too well knew the importance of those ships in the hands of an enemy; and therefore burnt them all, in spite of every effort to prevent him. He next possessed himself of the isle of Pha'ros, by which he was enabled to receive supplies; and, in this situation, determined to withstand the united force of the Egyp'tians *.

15. In the mean time, Cleopa'tra, having heard of the present turn in her favour, resolved to depend on Cæsar's

* In this contest the famous Alexan'drian library, consisting, it is said, of 700,000 volumes, was accidentally burnt.

patronage for gaining the government, rather than on her own forces. But no arts, as she justly conceived, were so likely to influence Cæsar as the charms of her person, which were irresistible. 16. She was now in the bloom of youth and beauty, while every feature borrowed grace from the lively turn of her temper. To the most enchanting address she joined the most harmonious voice. With all these accomplishments, she possessed a great share of the learning of the times, and could give audience to the ambassadors of seven different nations without an *interpreter*. 17. The difficulty was, how to gain admission to Cæsar, as her enemies were in possession of all the *avenues* that led to the palace. For this purpose she went on board a small vessel, and, in the evening, landed near the palace; where, being wrapt up in a coverlet, she was carried as a bundle of clothes into the very chamber of Cæsar. 18. Her address instantly struck him; her wit and understanding fanned the flame; but her caresses, which were carried beyond the bounds of innocence, entirely brought him over to second her claims.

19. While Cleopa'tra was thus employed in forwarding her own views, her sister Arsin'oe was also strenuously engaged in the camp, in pursuing a separate interest. She had found means, by the assistance of one Gan'ymede, her confidant, to make a large division in the Egyptian army in her favour; and, soon after, by one of those sudden revolutions which are common in barbarian camps to this day, she caused Achil'las to be murdered, and Gan'ymede to take the command in his stead, and to carry on the siege with greater vigour than before. 20. Gan'ymede's principal effort was by letting in the sea upon those canals which supplied the palace with fresh water; but this inconvenience Cæsar remedied by digging a great number of wells. His next endeavour was to prevent the *junction* of Cæsar's twenty-fourth legion, which he twice attempted in vain. He soon after made

himself master of a bridge which joined the Isle of Pha'ros to the continent, from which post Cæsar was resolved to dislodge him. 21. In the heat of the action, some mariners, partly through curiosity, and partly through ambition, came and joined the combatants; but, being seized with a *panic*, instantly fled, and spread a general terror through the army. All Cæsar's endeavours to rally his forces were in vain, the confusion was past remedy, and numbers were drowned or put to the sword in attempting to escape. 22. Now, therefore, seeing the *irremediable* disorder of his troops, he fled to a ship, in order to get to the palace that was just opposite; but he was no sooner on board, than such crowds entered after him, that, being apprehensive of the ship's sinking, he jumped into the sea, and swam two hundred paces to the fleet which lay before the palace, all the time holding his *Commentaries* in his left hand above the water, and his coat of mail in his teeth.

23. The Alexan'drians, finding their efforts to take the palace *ineffectual*, endeavoured, at least, to get their king out of Cæsar's power, as he had seized upon his person in the beginning of their disputes. For this purpose they made use of their customary arts of dissimulation, professing the utmost desire of peace, and only wanting the presence of their lawful prince to give a sanction to the treaty. 24. Cæsar was sensible of their perfidy, but concealed his suspicions, and gave them their king, as he was under no apprehensions from the abilities of a boy. Ptol'emy, however, the instant he was set at liberty, instead of promoting the peace, made every effort to give vigour to his hostilities.

25. In this manner was Cæsar hemmed in for some time by an artful and insidious enemy, and surrounded with almost insurmountable difficulties; but he was at last relieved from this mortifying situation by Mithrida'tes Pergame'nus, one of his most faithful partisans, who came

with an army to his assistance. This general marched into Egypt, took the city of Pelu'sium *, repulsed the Egyp'tian army with loss; and, at last, joining with Cæsar, attacked their camp with a great slaughter of the Egyp'tians. Ptol'emy himself attempting to escape on board a vessel, was drowned by the ship's sinking. 26. Cæsar thus became master of all Egypt without any farther opposition. He appointed Cleopa'tra, with her younger brother, who was then an infant, joint governors, according to the intent of their father's will, and drove out Arsin'oe, with Gan'ymede, to banishment.

27. Having thus given away kingdoms, he now, for a while, seemed to relax from the usual activity of his conduct, being captivated with the charms of Cleopa'tra. Instead of quitting Egypt, to go and quell the remains of Pompey's party, he abandoned himself to his pleasures; passing whole nights in feasting, and in all the excesses of high wrought luxury with the young queen. He even resolved in attending her up the Nile, into Ethio'pia; but the brave veterans who had long followed his fortune, boldly *reprehended* his conduct, and refused to be partners in so infamous an expedition. 28. Thus, at length roused from his lethargy, he resolved to prefer the call of ambition to that of love; and to leave Cleopa'tra, (by whom he had a son, whose name was Cæsa'rio) in order to oppose Pharna'ces, the king of Bos'phorus †, who had made some inroads upon the dominions of Rome in the East.

29. This prince, who had cruelly deposed his father, the

* Pelu'sium, a noble and strong city, was considered the key to all Egypt; which, being taken, the rest of Egypt lay quite open and exposed. (Strabo.) It was situated among marshes, hence its name and strength. From its ruins arose Damiet'ta.

† The territories of Bos'phorus were partly in Europe, but chiefly in A'sia. This kingdom was so called from two narrow straits, situate at the confines of Europe and A'sia, now known by the names of Caf'fa and Constantinople. The kingdom of Bos'phorus is the same as Pon'tus.

great Mithrida'tes, being ambitious of reconquering those dominions, seized upon Arme'nia * and Col'chis †, and overcame Domit'ius, who had been sent against him. 30. Upon Cæsar's march to oppose him, Pharna'ces, who was as much terrified at the name of the general as at the strength of his army, laboured, by all the arts of negociation, to avert the impending danger. 31. Cæsar, exasperated at his crimes and ingratitude, at first dissembled with the ambassadors; and using all expedition, fell upon the enemy unexpectedly, and, in a few hours, obtained an easy and complete victory. Pharna'ces attempting to take refuge in his capital, was slain by one of his own commanders—a just punishment for his former *parricide*. Cæsar achieved this conquest with so much ease, that, in writing to a friend at Rome, he expressed the rapidity of his victory in three words, "VENI, VIDI, VICI ‡." A man so accustomed to conquest, thought a slight battle scarcely worth a long letter.

Questions for Examination.

1. What were the abilities and character of Cæsar?
2. Did he rest satisfied with his present successes?
3. Whither did he steer his course?
4. What occurred on his arrival?
5. Was Cæsar pleased with this spectacle?
6. What was the conduct of the Egyptians towards Cæsar?
7. Did Cæsar resent this conduct?
8. Did he continue this appearance of confidence?
9. Who were at this time the sovereigns of Egypt?
10. What rendered Cæsar's interference necessary?
11. Was his interference agreeable to the Egyptians?
12. How did Cæsar conduct himself on this occasion?
13. Was the attack a formidable one?

---

* Arme'nia, an extensive country in A'sia, divided into two parts; namely, Major and Minor, (*Greater* and *Less*).

† Col'chis, a province of A'sia, on the east side of the Eux'ine sea; remarkable in history for the fable of the golden fleece, for the Argonaut'ic expedition on that account; and for giving birth to the enchantress Me'dea.

‡ I came, I saw, I conquered.

14. How did Cæsar prevent the designs of the enemy?
15. What was the conduct of Cleopatra?
16. What attractions did she possess?
17. What obstacles presented themselves, and how were they overcome?
18. Was Cæsar captivated by her charms?
19. What measures did Arsinoe pursue?
20. What attempts did the enemy make to annoy Cæsar, and how were they frustrated?
21. What unlucky accident occasioned the miscarriage of Cæsar's design?
22. How did Cæsar escape?
23. What did the Alexandrians next attempt?
24. Did Cæsar comply with their wishes?
25. How was Cæsar delivered from this dangerous situation?
26. What was the consequence of this victory?
27. Did Cæsar pursue his career of victory?
28. What was the consequence of this boldness?
29. What farther cause of offence had Pharnaces given?
30. Did Pharnaces boldly oppose the invader?
31. Did he succeed?

SECT. II.

5. Ral'ly, *v.* to re-assemble, to collect again.
7. E'late, *v.* render proud, puff up.
   Malig'nity, *s.* degrees of poison.
9. Peremp'tory, *a.* positive, resolute.
12. Abridged, *v.* shortened, curtailed.
15. Adula'tion, *s.* flattery.
16. Ju'dicature, *s.* of judging, dispensing the laws.
   Sump'tuary, *a.* regulating the expences of living.
18. Protrac't, *v.* to lengthen.
20. Decliv'ity, *s.* descent.
23. Pi'racies, *s.* robberies at sea.
24. Avow'ed, *v.* open, declared.
   Isth'mus, *s.* a narrow neck of land.
25. Pon'dered, *v.* revolved in his mind.

1. CÆSAR having settled affairs in this part of the empire, embarked for Italy, where he arrived sooner than his enemies could expect, but not before his presence there was absolutely required. 2. During his absence, he had been created consul for five years, dictator for one year,

and tribune of the people for life. 3. But Antony, who in the mean time governed for him in Rome, had filled the city with riot and debauchery, and many commotions ensued, which nothing but the arrival of Cæsar could appease. 4. By his moderation and humanity he soon restored tranquillity to the city, scarcely making any distinction between those of his own and the opposite party. 5. Having, by gentle means, restored his authority at home, he prepared to march into Africa, where Pompey's party had found time to *rally* under Scip'io and Ca'to, assisted by Juba, king of Murita'nia; and, with his usual diligence, landed with a small party in Africa, while the rest of his army followed him. 6. Scip'io coming to a battle soon after, received a complete and final overthrow, with little or no loss on the side of the victor. Ju'ba, and Petrei'us his general, killed each other in despair. Scip'io, attemping to escape by sea into Spain, fell in among the enemy, and was slain; so that, of all the generals of that undone party, Ca'to was now the only one that remained.

7. This extraordinary man, whom prosperity could not *elate*, nor misfortunes depress, having retired into Africa, after the battle of Pharsa'lia, had led the wretched remains of Pompey's army through burning deserts, and tracts infested with serpents of various *malignity*, and was now in the city of Utica *, which he had been left to defend. 8. In love, however, with the show of Roman government, Ca'to had formed the principal citizens into a senate, and conceived a resolution of holding out the town. But the enthusiasm for liberty subsiding among his followers, he was resolved no longer to force men to

---

* *Utica*, a town of Africa Proper, now the kingdom of Tu'nis. After the destruction of Car'thage, it became the capital and centre of all the Roman transactions in Africa. (Strabo.) It was situated on the same bay with Carthage, near the present Berserta.

be free who seemed naturally prone to slavery. 9. He now, therefore, desired some of his friends to save themselves by sea, and bade others submit to Cæsar's clemency; observing, that, as to himself, he was at last victorious. After this, supping cheerfully among his friends, he retired to his apartment, where he behaved with unusual tenderness to his son, and to all his friends. When he came into his bed-chamber, laying himself down, he took up Plato's Dialogue on the Immortality of the Soul, and read for some time. Casting his eyes to the head of his bed, he wondered much not to see his sword there; which had been conveyed away by his son's order while they were at supper. Calling to one of his domestics, to know what was become of it, and receiving no answer, he resumed his studies; and some time after asked again for the sword. When he had done reading, and perceived that nobody obeyed him, he called for his domestics one after the other, and with a *peremptory* air again demanded the sword. 10. His son, with tears, besought him to change his resolution; but, receiving a stern reprimand, desisted from his persuasions. His sword being at length brought to him, he seemed satisfied, and cried out, "Now again I am master of myself." He took up the book again, which having perused, he fell into a sound sleep. Upon awaking, he called to one of his freedmen to know if his friends were embarked, or if any thing yet remained that could be done to serve them. The freedman, assuring him that all was quiet, was ordered to leave the room. Ca'to no sooner found himself alone, than, seizing his sword, he stabbed himself below his chest. The blow not dispatching him, he fell from his bed, and overturned a table, on which he had been drawing some geometrical figures. At the noise of the fall, his servants shrieked, and his son and friends immediately flew to the room. They found him weltering in his blood, with his bowels ap-

pearing through the wound. 11. The surgeon, perceiving that his intestines were not wounded, was replacing them: but Ca'to recovering himself, and understanding their intention was to preserve his life, forced the surgeon from him, and, with a fierce resolution, tore out his bowels, and expired *.

12. Upon the death of Ca'to, the war in Africa being completed, Cæsar returned in such triumph to Rome, as if he had *abridged* all his former triumphs only to increase the splendour of this †. The citizens were astonished at the magnificence of the procession, and at the number of the countries he had subdued. 13. It lasted four days: the first was for Gaul ‡, the second for Egypt §, the third for his victories in Asia ||, and the fourth for that over Ju'ba in Africa ¶. His veteran soldiers, scarred with wounds, and now laid up for life, followed their triumphant general, crowned with laurels, and conducted him to the Capitol. 14. To every oneof those he gave a sum equivalent to about a hundred and

---

* So great was the affection borne to this noble Roman by the inhabitants of U'tica, that though Cæsar was on the point of entering the city, they could not be diverted from burying his body with the greatest pomp, and paying all the funeral honours due to a person of his rank and merit.

† Before his return, he gave orders for the rebuilding of Carthage and Corinth, so that those two famous cities were destroyed in the same year, and in the same year rose from their ruins, after having lain desolate about a century.

‡ In this triumph were carried before his chariot the names of 300 nations and 800 cities, which he had reduced by the slaughter of a million of enemies.

§ This triumph was adorned with the pictures of Pto'lemy, Photinus, and Achillas, with the representations of the cities of Pelu'sium, Alexandria, &c.; and Arsino'e, the sister of Cleopa'tra, with many other prisoners of distinction, walked before his chariot.

|| The third triumph was remarkable only for the words *veni, vidi, vici*, displayed in large characters, in the procession.

¶ This triumph was not so pleasing to the Romans as the former three, because the statues of Scip'io, Petrei'us, and Ca'to were carried among those of the kings and princes he had subdued; they expressed their concern at this sight by sighs and tears.

fifty pounds sterling, double that sum to the centurions, and four times as much to the superior officers. The citizens also shared his bounty: to every one he distributed ten bushels of corn, ten pounds of oil, and a sum of money equal to about two pounds sterling. After this, he entertained the people at above twenty thousand tables, treated them with combats of gladiators, and filled Rome with a concourse of spectators from every part of Italy.

15. The people, intoxicated with pleasure, thought their freedom too small a return for such benefits. They seemed eager only to find out new modes of homage, and unusual epithets of *adulation* for their great enslaver. He was created, by a new title, *Magis'ter Mo'rum*, or Master of the Morals of the People. He received the title of Emperor and father of his country. His person was declared sacred; and, in short, upon him alone were devolved for life all the great dignities of the state. 16. It must be owned, that so much power could never have been entrusted to better keeping. He immediately began his empire by repressing vice and encouraging virtue. He committed the power of *judicature* to the senators and the knights alone; and by many *sumptuary* laws restrained the scandalous luxuries of the rich. He proposed rewards to all such as had many children, took the most prudent method of re-peopling the city, which had been exhausted in the late commotions*.

17. Having thus restored prosperity once more to Rome, he again found himself under a necessity of going into Spain, to oppose an army which had been raised there under the two sons of Pompey, and Labie'nus his former general. 18. He proceeded in this expedition with his usual celerity, and arrived in Spain before the enemy thought him yet departed from Rome. Cne'ius Pompey,

* About this time he reformed the calendar, as described at length in the Introduction.

and Sex'tus, Pompey's sons, profiting by their unhappy father's example, resolved, as much as possible, to *protract* the war; so that the first operations of the two armies were spent in sieges and fruitless attempts to surprise each other. 19. However, Cæsar, after taking many cities from the enemy, and pursuing his adversary with unwearied perseverance, at last compelled him to come to a battle upon the plain of Mun'da*. 20. Pompey drew up his men by break of day, upon the *declivity* of a hill, with great exactness and order. Cæsar drew up likewise in the plains below; and, after advancing a little way from his trenches, ordered his men to make a halt, expecting the enemy to come down from the hill. This delay made Cæsar's soldiers begin to murmur, while Pompey's, with full vigour, poured down upon them; and a dreadful conflict ensued. 21. The first shock was so dreadful, that Cæsar's men, who had hitherto been used to conquer, now began to waver. Cæsar was never in so much danger as now; he threw himself several times into the very thickest of the battle. "What," cried he, "are you going to give up to a parcel of boys, your general, who is grown grey in fighting at your head?" 22. Upon this, his tenth legion exerted themselves with more than usual bravery; and a party of horse being detached by Labie'nus from the camp in pursuit of a body of Numid'ian cavalry, Cæsar cried aloud that they were flying. This cry instantly spread itself through both armies, exciting the one as much as it depressed the other. 23. Now, therefore, the tenth legion pressed forward, and a total rout soon ensued†. Thirty thousand men were killed on Cne'ius Pompey's side, and amongst

* So called from the city of the same name, situate in Grana'da, in Spain. It is now a mean village, retaining its ancient appellation. (Mariana.)

† On Cæsar's return to his camp after the battle, he observed to those about him, that he had often fought for victory, but this was the first time he had fought for his life.

them Labie'nus, whom Cæsar ordered to be buried with the funeral honours of a general officer. Cne'ius Pompey escaped with a few horsemen to the sea-side; but finding his passage intercepted by Cæsar's lieutenant, he was obliged to seek for a retreat in an obscure cavern. He was quickly discovered by some of Cæsar's troops, who presently cut off his head, and brought it to the conqueror. His brother Sex'tus, however, concealed himself so well, that he escaped all pursuit; and afterwards, from his *piracies*, became noted and formidable to the people of Rome.

24. Cæsar, by this last blow, subdued all his *avowed* enemies; and the rest of his life was employed for the advantage of the state. He adorned the city with magnificent buildings; he rebuilt Car'thage and Co'rinth, sending colonies to both cities: he undertook to level several mountains in Italy; to drain the Pontine marshes near Rome; and he designed to cut through the *Isthmus* of Peloponesʹsus. 25. Thus, with a mind that could never remain inactive, he *pondered* mighty projects and schemes, beyond the limits of the longest life; but the greatest of all was his intended expedition against the Par'thians, by which he designed to revenge the death of Crasʹsus, who having penetrated too far into their country, was overthrown, taken prisoner, and put to a cruel death, by having molten gold poured down his throat, as a punishment for his former avarice. Thence Cæsar intended to pass through Hyrca'nia, and enter Scythi'a, along the banks of the Casʹpian sea; then to open a way through the immeasurable forests of Germany into Gaul, and so to return to Rome. These were the aims of ambition; but the jealousy of a few individuals put an end to them all.

Questions for Examination.

1. What was Cæsar's next step?
2. What honours were awarded him in his absence?
3. What was the conduct of his deputy?
4. How did he put an end to these disturbances?
5. What was his next enterprise?
6. What was the success of the campaign?
7. How was he situated?
8. What measures had he pursued?
9. When all hope had forsaken him what was his conduct?
10. Was no effort made to change his resolution, and what followed?
11. Was the wound mortal?
12. What happened after the death of Cato?
13. Describe the triumph.
14. Was he not extremely liberal?
15. What returns were made for this extraordinary liberality?
16. Was he deserving of these honours?
17. Was he destined to pass the rest of his life in tranquillity?
18. Describe the opening of the campaign.
19. Were they successful in their attempt?
20. What were the dispositions of the two armies?
21. Was the conflict severe?
22. What was the consequence of this exclamation?
23. What was the result of the battle?
24. In what manner did Cæsar employ himself at this time?
25. What were his most important resolutions?

SECT. III.

1. Accu'mulated, *part.* increased, added, heaped up.
3. Pil'lage, *s.* plunder.
   Disban'ded, *v.* dismissed, broken up.
   Facil'itated, *v.* rendered easy of execution.
7. Assas'sinated, *part.* killed treacherously.
8. O'mens, *s.* prognostics of a future event.
14. Saga"city, *s.* acuteness, wisdom.
15. Insa'tiable, *a.* not to be satisfied.
20. Augus't, *a.* noble, awful, venerable.
    Dilem'ma, *s.* difficulty, state of suspense.
21. Rat'ified, *v.* confirmed.
22. Gratu'ity, *s.* a gift, reward.
23. Ob'sequies, *s.* funeral rites.

1. HAVING been made perpetual dictator, and received from the senate *accumulated* honours, it began to

be rumoured that he intended to make himself king. In fact, he was possessed of the power; but the people, who had an aversion to the name, could not bear his assuming the title. 2. Whether he really designed to assume that empty honour, must for ever remain a secret; but certain it is, that the unsuspecting openness of his conduct created something like confidence in the innocence of his intentions *. 3. When informed by those about him of the jealousies of many who envied his power, he was heard to say, that he had rather die once by treason, than live continually in the apprehension of it. When advised by some to beware of Bru'tus, in whom he had for some time reposed the greatest confidence, he opened his breast, all scarred with wounds, saying, "Can you think Bru'tus cares for such poor *pillage* as this?" and, being one night at supper, as his friends disputed among themselves what death was easiest, he replied, "That which is most sudden and least foreseen." But, to convince the world how little he apprehended from his enemies, he *disbanded* his Spanish guards, and thus *facilitated* the enterprise against his life.

4. A deep conspiracy was now laid against him, into which no less than sixty senators entered. They were still the more formidable, as the generality of them were of his own party; and, having been raised above other citizens, felt more strongly the weight of a single superior. At the head of this conspiracy were Bru'tus, whose life Cæsar had spared after the battle of Pharsa'lia, and

* At the celebration of the feast in honour of Pan, called Luperca'lia, Cæsar assisted, seated upon a tribunal, in a chair of gold, and adorned with his triumphal ornaments. In consequence, as it is supposed, of a preconcerted scheme, Antony presented him a regal crown, which Cæsar put back with his hand. Antony offered it a second time, and Cæsar again refused it. The acclamations of the people, which followed these refusals, convinced Cæsar how dangerous his acceptance of it would have been; but he could not conceal the mortification he experienced on this discovery.

Cas'sius, who was pardoned soon after; both prætors for the present year. 5. Bru'tus made it his chief glory to have descended from that Bru'tus who first gave liberty to Rome. The passion for freedom seemed to have been transmitted to him with the blood of his ancestors. But though he detested tyranny, yet could he not forbear loving the tyrant from whom he had received the most signal benefits.

6. The conspirators, to give a colour of justice to their proceedings, put off the execution of their design to the ides of March*, the day on which Cæsar was to be offered the crown. 7. The augurs had foretold that this day would be fatal to him. The night preceding, he heard his wife, Calphur'nia, lamenting in her sleep. Being awakened, she confessed to him, that she dreamt of his being *assassinated* in her arms. 8. These *omens*, in some measure, began to change his intention of going to the senate; but one of the conspirators coming in, prevailed upon him to keep his resolution, telling him of the reproach that would attend his staying at home, till his wife should have lucky dreams, and of the preparations that were made for his appearance. 9. As he went along to the senate, a slave, who hastened to him with information of the conspiracy, attempted to come near him, but was prevented by the crowd. Artemido'rus, a Greek philosopher, who had discovered the whole plot, delivered him a memorial, containing the heads of his information; but Cæsar gave it, with other papers, to one of his secre-

* The Romans divided their months into three parts; namely, Calends, Nones, and Ides; all which they reckoned backwards. The Ides were always eight in number. The Nones sometimes four, at others six. The Calends varied according to the length of the month, and also with the Nones, as they were four or six. The Calends always began on the first of every month, and were counted backwards to the Ides, which fell on the 15th of March, May, July, and October; and on the 13th of other months; so that the Nones began on the 5th of each month when four, and on the 7th when six in number. The Nones therefore always ended on the 2d day of the month.

taries, without reading, as was usual in matters of this nature. Being at length entered the senate-house, where the conspirators were prepared to receive him, he met one Spuri'na, an augur, who had foretold his danger, to whom he said, smiling, "Well, Spuri'na, the ides of March are come."—"Yes," replied the augur, "but they are not yet gone." 10. No sooner had he taken his place, than the conspirators approached, under pretence of saluting him: Cim'ber, who was one of them, in a suppliant posture, pretended to sue for his brother's pardon, who had been banished by Cæsar's order. The conspirators seconded him with great earnestness; and Cim'ber, seeming to sue with still greater submission, took hold of the bottom of his robe; holding him, so as to prevent his rising. 11. This was the signal agreed on; when Cas'ca, who was behind, instantly stabbed him in the shoulder. Cæsar sprung round, and, with the steel of his tablet, wounded him in the arm. The conspirators were all alarmed; when, being inclosed round, he received a second stab, from an unseen hand, in the breast; while Cassius wounded him in the face. He still defended himself with great vigour, rushing among them, and throwing down such as opposed him, till he saw Bru'tus among the conspirators, who, coming up, struck his dagger into his thigh. 12. Cæsar, from that moment, thought no more of defending himself; but, looking upon Brutus, cried out, "*Et tu Brute!*"—And you too, O Brutus! Then covering his head, and spreading his robe before him, in order to fall with decency, he sunk down at the base of Pompey's statue: after having received three and twenty wounds, from those whom he vainly supposed he had disarmed by his benefits.

13. Cæsar was killed in his fifty-sixth year, and about U.C. 170. fourteen years after he had begun the conquest of the world. 14. If we examine his history, we shall be at a loss whether most to admire his great abi-

lities, or his wonderful fortune. To pretend to say, that from the beginning he planned the subjection of his native country, is doing no great credit to his well-known penetration, as a thousand obstacles lay in his way, which fortune, rather than conduct, was to surmount: no man, therefore, of his *sagacity*, would have begun a scheme in which the chances of succeeding were so many against him. It is most probable that, like all very successful men, he made the best of every occurrence; and his ambition rising with his good fortune, from at first being content with humbler aims, he at last began to think of governing the world, when he found scarcely any obstacle to oppose his designs. Such is the disposition of man, whose cravings after power are then most *insatiable* when he enjoys the greatest share *.

16. As soon as the conspirators had dispatched Cæsar, they retired to the Capitol, and guarded its accesses by a body of gladiators which Brutus had in pay.

17. The friends of the late dictator now began to find that this was the time for coming into greater power than before, and for satisfying their ambition under the pretence of promoting justice: of this number was Antony.

18. He was a man of moderate abilities, of excessive vices, ambitious of power only because it gave his pleasures a wider range to riot in; but skilled in war, to which he had been trained from his youth†. He was consul for this year, and resolved, with Lep'idus, who, like himself, was fond of commotions, to seize this opportunity of gaining a power which Cæsar had died for

* Though Cæsar's ambition led him to usurp a power to which the Romans were not willing to submit, it appears that he used it with unexampled moderation. He was beloved and revered by the people, honoured and almost adored by his friends, and esteemed and admired even by his enemies. Absolute power could not have been in better hands.

† It was the general opinion of the conspirators that Antony should be cut off with Cæsar, but the generous Brutus pleaded for and obtained his safety. This kindness was ill repaid.

usurping. Lep'idus, therefore, took possession of the Forum*, with a band of soldiers at his devotion; and Antony, being consul, was permitted to command them. 19. Their first step was to possess themselves of Cæsar's papers and money, and the next to assemble the senate. 20. Never had this *august* assembly been convened upon so delicate an occasion, as to determine whether Cæsar had been a legal magistrate or a tyrannical usurper; and whether those who killed him merited rewards or punishments. Many of them had received all their promotions from Cæsar, and had acquired large fortunes in consequence of his appointments: to vote him a usurper, therefore, would be to endanger their property; and yet, to vote him innocent, might endanger the state. In this *dilemma* they seemed willing to reconcile extremes; they approved all the acts of Cæsar, and yet granted a general pardon to the conspirators.

21. This decree was very far from giving Antony satisfaction, as it granted security to a number of men who were the avowed enemies of tyranny, and who would be foremest in opposing his schemes of restoring absolute power. As, therefore, the senate had *ratified* all Cæsar's acts without distinction, he formed a plan of making him rule when dead as imperiously as he had done when living. 22. Being possessed of Cæsar's books of accounts, he so far gained over his secretary as to make him insert whatever he thought proper. By these means, great sums of money, which Cæsar would never have bestowed, were there distributed among the people; and every man who had any seditious designs against the government was there sure to find a *gratuity*. 23. Things being in this situation, Antony demanded of the senate that Cæsar's funeral *obsequies* should be performed. This they could

* The Forum is a public place at Rome, where lawyers and orators made their speeches in matters of property, of the state, or in criminal cases.

not decently forbid, as they had never declared him a tyrant: accordingly, the body was brought forth into the Forum with the utmost solemnity; and Antony, who charged himself with these last duties of friendship, began his operations upon the passions of the people by the prevailing motives of private interest. 24. He first read to them Cæsar's will, in which he made Octa'vius, his sister's grandson, his heir, permitting him to take the name of Cæsar, and bequeathed him three parts of his private fortune: which, in case of his death, Brutus was to have inherited. To the Roman people were left the gardens which he possessed on the other side of the Ti'ber*; and to every citizen three hundred sesterces†. Unfolding Cæsar's bloody robe, pierced by the daggers of the conspirators, he observed to them the number of stabs in it. He also displayed a waxen image, representing the body of Cæsar, all covered with wounds. 25. The people could no longer retain their indignation, but unanimously cried out for revenge, and ran, with flaming brands from the pile, to set fire to the houses of the conspirators. In this rage of resentment, meeting with one Cin'na, whom they mistook for another of the same name that was in the conspiracy, they tore him in pieces. 26. The conspirators themselves, however, being well guarded, repulsed the multitude with no great trouble: but perceiving the general rage of the people, they thought it safest to retire from the city.

27. In the mean time, Antony, who had excited this flame, resolved to make the most of the occasion. But an obstacle to his ambition seemed to arise from a quarter in which he least expected it, namely, from Octa'vius, afterwards called Augus'tus, who was the grand

* Ti'ber, the most celebrated river of Italy, flows by Rome, and disembogues in the Mediterranean Sea, near Os'tia.

† Two pounds six shillings and ten pence halfpenny.

nephew and adopted son of Cæsar*. A third competitor also for power appeared in Lep'idus, a man of some authority and great riches. 28. At first, the ambition of these three seemed to threaten fatal consequences to each other; but, uniting in the common cause, they resolved to revenge the death of Cæsar, and dividing their power, they formed what is called the Second Trium'virate.

Questions for Examination.

1. What design was Cæsar supposed to entertain?
2. Was this rumour well founded?
3. When hints of danger were given him, what was his conduct?
4. What was the consequence of this imprudence?
5. What was the character of Brutus?
6. What time was fixed for the conspiracy to take effect?
7. Had Cæsar any intimations of his danger?
8. Was he at all influenced by them?
9. Were no other attempts made to warn him of his approaching fate?
10. In what way did the conspirators commence their attempt?
11. What followed?
12. What was the consequence of this?
13. What was Cæsar's age?
14. Did Cæsar plan the conquest of his country from the first?
15. By what means did he accomplish it?
16. How did the conspirators escape the vengeance of the people?
17. What advantage was taken of this event?
18. What was the character of Antony, and what resolution did he form?
19. What were his first acts?
20. How were the senate situated on this occasion?
21. Was Antony satisfied with this decree?
22. How did he accomplish this?
23. What was his next measure?
24. By what means did he effect his purpose?
25. What was the consequence of this artful conduct?

---

* Octa'vius was the son of Cai'us Octa'vius, a senator, by Accia, daughter to Julia, Cæsar's sister.

26. Did the conspirators fall victims to their fury?
27. Had Antony no rivals in his attempts to acquire power?
28. What was the result of this rivalship?

SECT. IV.

1. Dif'fidence, *s.* distrust, suspicion.
3. Retrospec'tion, *s.* a looking back.
7. Ex'iles, *s.* banished persons.
9. Divert'ed, *v.* turned aside.
10. Surren'der, *v.* to yield, to deliver up.
11. Freu'zy, *s.* madness.
Mol'lified, *v.* pacified, softened, mitigated.
13. Expostula'tions, *s.* reasonings, entreaties.
17. Reprimand'ing, *part.* reproving, blaming.
18 Cyn'ical, *a.* churlish, rough.
20. Spec'tre, *s.* a ghost, spirit, apparition.
22. As'pect, *s.* countenance.
25. Solu'tion, *s.* explanation.
Am'icable, *a.* friendly.

1. THE meeting of these three usurpers of their country's freedom, was upon a little island of the river Rhenus*. Their mutual suspicions were the cause of their meeting in a place where they had no fear of treachery; for, even in their union, they could not divest themselves of mutual *diffidence*. 2. Lep'idus first entered; and, finding all things safe, made the signal for the other two to approach. At their first meeting, after saluting each other, Augus'tus began the conference, by thanking Antony for putting Dec'imus Bru'tus to death; who, being abandoned by his army, had been taken, as he was endeavouring to escape into Macedo'nia, and was beheaded by Antony's soldiers. 3. They then entered upon the business that lay before them, without any *retrospection*

* Now the Rheno, which runs through Bologna and falls into the Po.

to the past. Their conference lasted three days; and, in this period, they settled a division of the government, and determined the fate of thousands. 4. The result of this conference was, that the supreme authority should be lodged in their hands, under the title of the Trium'virate, for the space of five years; that Antony should have Gaul; Lep'idus, Spain; and Augus'tus, Africa and the Mediterra'nean islands. As for Italy, and the eastern provinces, they were to remain in common, until their general enemy should be subdued; and, among other articles of union, it was agreed, that all their enemies should be destroyed, of which each presented a list. In these were comprised, not only the enemies but the friends of the Trium'virate, since the partisans of the one were found among the opposers of the other. Thus Lep'idus gave up his brother Æmil'ius Paulus to the vengeance of his colleague; Antony permitted the proscription of his uncle Lu'cius; and Augus'tus delivered up the great Ci''cero, who was assassinated shortly after by Antony's command *.

6. In the mean time, Brutus and Cas'sius, the principal of the conspirators against Cæsar, being compelled to quit Rome, went into Greece, where they persuaded the Roman students at A'thens to declare in the cause of freedom; then parting, the former raised a powerful army in Macedo'nia, while the latter went into Syr'ia, where he soon became master of twelve legions, and reduced his opponent

* It is impossible to paint the horrors of this dreadful proscription. Nothing was to be seen but blood and slaughter; the streets were covered with dead bodies; the heads of the most illustrious senators were exposed on the rostra, and their bodies left to be devoured by dogs and birds of prey; three hundred senators, and above two thousand knights, besides a vast number of others of considerable rank, fell victims on this occasion. Many noble instances of fidelity were displayed by slaves at this terrible conjuncture; several chose rather to die on the rack in the most exquisite torments, than betray the place where their masters were concealed.

Dollabel'la to such straits as to force him to lay violent hands on himself. 7. Both armies joined at Smyr'na *, the sight of such a formidable force began to revive the declining spirits of the party, and to reunite the two generals still more closely, between whom there had been, some time before, a slight misunderstanding. In short, having quitted Italy like distressed *exiles*, without having one soldier or one town that owned their command, they now found themselves at the head of a flourishing army, furnished with every necessary for carrying on the war, and in a condition to support a contest on which the empire of the world depended.

8. It was in this flourishing state of their affairs, that the conspirators formed a resolution of marching against Cleopa'tra, who had made great preparations to assist their opponents. 9. However, they were *diverted* from this purpose, by an information that Augus'tus and Antony were now upon their march, with forty legions to oppose them. Bru'tus, therefore, moved to have their army pass over into Greece and Macedo'nia, and there meet the enemy; but Cas'sius so far prevailed as to have the Rho'dians and Ly"cians first reduced, who had refused their usual contributions. 10. This expedition was immediately put in execution, and extraordinary contributions were thus raised, the Rho'dians † having scarcely any thing left them but their lives. The Ly"cians ‡ suffered

* Smyr'na, a city of Io'nia, in Asia Minor, is one of those cities which claimed the birth of Homer (Ci"cero;) and which laid its claim stronger than any other. (Strabo.) Smyr'na stood on the river Me'les, from which Homer took his original name Melesig'enes, because born on its banks; Home'rus being the name given him by the Cur'veans, when petitioning for a public maintenance from them; a term denoting blind, in their dialect. (Herod'otus.)

† Rho'dians were the inhabitants of Rhodes, a celebrated island in the Mediterranean Sea; particularly noted for its Colossus, a famous statue of bronze, which was reckoned one of the wonders of the world; for a ship, with all its sails up, might pass between its legs.

‡ Ly"cians, the inhabitants of Ly"cia, a province of Asia Minor.

still more severely; for, having shut themselves up in their capital town Xan'thus, they defended the place against Bru'tus with so much fury, that neither his arts nor entreaties could prevail upon them to *surrender*. 11. At length, the town being set on fire, by their attempting to burn the works of the Romans, Bru'tus, instead of laying hold of this opportunity to storm the place, made every effort to preserve it, entreating his soldiers to try all means of extinguishing the fire; but the desperate *frenzy* of the citizens was not to be *mollified*. 12. Far from thinking themselves obliged to the generous enemy, for the efforts which they made to save them, they resolved to perish in the flames. Instead of extinguishing, therefore, they did all in their power to augment the fire, by throwing in wood, dry reeds, and all kinds of fuel. 13. Nothing could exceed the distress of Bru'tus, upon seeing the townsmen thus resolutely bent on destroying themselves. He rode about the fortifications, stretching out his hands to the Xan'thians, and conjuring them to have pity on themselves and their city; but, insensible to his *expostulations*, they rushed into the flames with desperate obstinacy, and the whole soon became a heap of undistinguishable ruin. 14. At this horrid spectacle Bru'tus melted into tears, offering a reward to every soldier who should bring him a Ly"cian alive. The number of those, whom it was possible to save from their own fury, amounted to no more than one hundred and fifty. 15. Some writers, however, affirm, that the town was burnt to the ground, and the inhabitants destroyed, by the command of Brutus; and that those who surrendered at discretion he deprived of all their public and private property.

16. Bru'tus and Cas'sius met once more at Sar'dis *, where they resolved to have a private conference together. They shut themselves up in the first convenient house,

* The capital of Lyd'ia, in Asia Minor. It was one of the seven churches to which St. John wrote.

with express orders to their servants to give admission to no one. 17. Bru'tus began by *reprimanding* Cas'sius for having disposed of offices for money, which should ever be the reward of merit, and for having overtaxed the tributary states. Cas'sius repelled the imputation of avarice with the more bitterness, as he knew the charge to be groundless. The debate grew warm; till, from loud speaking, they burst into tears. 18. Their friends, who were standing at the door, overheard the increasing vehemence of their voices, and began to tremble for the consequences, till Favo'nius, who valued himself upon a *cynical* boldness, that knew no restraint, entering the room with a jest, calmed their mutual animosity. 19. Cas'sius was ready enough to forego his anger, being a man of great abilities, but of an uneven disposition; not averse to pleasure in private company, and, upon the whole, of morals not quite correct. But the conduct of Bru'tus was perfectly steady. An even gentleness, a noble elevation of sentiment, a strength of mind over which neither vice nor pleasure could have an influence, and an inflexible firmness in the cause of justice, composed the character of this great man. 20. After their conference, night coming on, Cas'sius invited Bru'tus and his friends to an entertainment, where freedom and cheerfulness, for a while, took place of political anxiety, and softened the severity of wisdom. Upon retiring home it was that Bru'tus thought he saw a *spectre* in his tent. 21. He naturally slept but little, and was capable of bearing want of rest by long habit and great sobriety. He never allowed himself to sleep in the day-time, as was common in Rome; and only gave so much of the night to repose as could barely renew the functions of nature. But now, oppressed with various cares, he allowed himself a still shorter time after his nightly repast; and, waking about midnight, generally read or studied till morning. 22. It was in the dead of the night, says Plu'tarch, when the whole

camp was perfectly quiet, that Bru'tus was thus employed; reading by a lamp that was just expiring. On a sudden, he thought he heard a noise, as if somebody was approaching, and looking towards the door, perceived it open. A gigantic figure of frightful *aspect*, stood before him, and continued to gaze upon him with silent severity. 23. Bru'tus is reported to have asked, "Art thou a dæmon or a mortal, and why comest thou to me?" "Bru'tus," answered the phantom, "I am thy evil genius —thou shalt see me again at Philip'pi *." "Well, then," replied Bru'tus, without being discomposed, "we shall meet again." Upon this the phantom vanished; when Bru'tus, calling to his servants, asked if they had seen any thing; to which they answering in the negative, he resumed his studies. 24. Struck with so strange an occurrence, he mentioned it to Cas'sius, who rightly considered it as the effect of an imagination disordered by vigilance and anxiety. 25. Bru'tus appeared satisfied with this *solution;* and as Antony and Augus'tus were now advanced into Macedo'nia, he and his colleague passed over into Thrace, and drew near to Philip'pi, where the forces of the Trium'viri were posted to receive them.

Questions for Examination.

1. Where was the first meeting of the Triumvirate, and why was it chosen?
2. What precautions did they take?
3. What farther was done?
4. What was the result of the conference?
5. Who were the proscribed?
6. What became of Brutus and Cassius?
7. What effect had this success on the minds of their party?
8. What was their first resolution?
9. Did they put it in execution?

---

* A city on the confines of Macedo'nia, noted for the battle between Bru'tus and Cas'sius, and Mark Antony and Augus'tus, A. D. 42; and also for the Epistle of St. Paul to the people of Philip'pi.

10. What was the consequence to the Rhodians and Lycians?
11. What unfortunate accident hastened the fate of the town?
12. Did they not second the efforts of Brutus?
13. By what means did Brutus attempt to divert them from their purpose?
14—15. By what method did he endeavour to save some of the Lycians?
16. Where did Brutus and Cassius meet, and what ensued?
17. Was their interview an amicable one?
18. Did no one interpose?
19. What were the characters of these great men?
20. What happened after the conference?
21. What were the peculiar habits of Brutus?
22. What happened to him while thus employed?
23. What conversation passed between them?
24. Did he mention the circumstance to any one?
25. Did Brutus assent to this opinion, and what followed?

SECT. V.

5. Commo'dious, *a.* convenient.
Mag'azine, *s.* storehouse.
7. Postpo'ning, *part.* putting off, delaying.
11. Su'icide, *s.* self-murder.
13. Irrup'tion, *s.* an attack.
Intrepid'ity, *s.* boldness, courage.
16. Dena'rii, *s.* the chief silver coin among the Romans, each worth, in our money, about seven-pence three farthings.
18. Ar'rogant, *a.* saucy.
20. Inev'itable, *a.* not to be escaped or avoided.
25. Riv'ulet, *s.* a small stream of water.

1. MANKIND now began to regard the approaching armies with terror and suspense. The empire of the world depended upon the fate of a battle. From victory, on the one side, they had to expect freedom; on the other, a sovereign with absolute command. 2. Bru'tus was the only man who looked upon these great events with calmness and tranquillity. Indifferent as to success, and satisfied with having done his duty, he said to one of his friends, "If I am victorious, I shall restore liberty to my country: if not, by dying, I shall myself be delivered from slavery. My condition is fixed; I run no hazards." 3.

The republican army consisted of fourscore thousand foot, and twenty thousand horse. The army of the Trium'viri amounted to a hundred thousand foot, and thirteen thousand horse. 4. Thus complete on both sides, they met and encamped near each other upon the plains of Philip'pi. Near the town were two little hills, about a mile distant from each other; upon these hills, Bru'tus and Cas'sius fixed their camps, and kept up a free communication, which mutually defended each other. 5. In this *commodious* situation they could act as they thought proper, and give battle just when it was thought to their advantage to engage. Behind was the sea, which furnished them with all kinds of provisions; and, at twelve miles distance, the island of Tha'sos, which served them for a general *magazine*. 6. The Trium'viri, on the other hand, were encamped on the plain below, and were obliged to bring provisions from fifteen leagues' distance; so that their scheme and interest was to forward a battle as soon as possible. This they offered several times, drawing out their men from their camp, and provoking the enemy to engage. 7. On the contrary, the enemy contented themselves with drawing up their troops at the head of their camps, without descending to the plain. This resolution of *postponing* the battle, was the chance that the republican army had for victory; and Cas'sius, sensible of his advantage, resolved to harass rather than engage the enemy. 8. But Bru'tus, who began to suspect the fidelity of some of his officers, used all his influence to persuade Cas'sius to change his resolution. "I am impatient," said he, "to put an end to the miseries of mankind; and in this I hope to succeed, whether I conquer or fall." 9. His wishes were soon gratified; for Antony's soldiers having, with great labour, made a road through the marsh which lay to the left of Cas'sius's camp, by that means opened a communication with the island of Tha'sos, which lay behind him. Both armies, after several attempts to

possess themselves of this road, resolved, at length, to come to a general engagement. 10. This, however, was contrary to the advice of Cas'sius, who found himself forced, as Pompey had formerly been, to expose the liberty of Rome to the hazard of a battle*. On the ensuing morning, the two generals gave the signal for engaging, and conferred together a little while before the battle began. 11. Cas'sius desired to be informed how Bru'tus intended to act in case they should be unsuccessful. To this, Bru'tus replied, "Formerly, in my writings, I condemned the death of Cato; and maintained, that avoiding calamities by *suicide*, is an insolent attempt against Heaven that allotted them; but I have altered my opinion; I have given up my life to my country; and I think I have a right to my own way of ending it †. I am resolved therefore to change a miserable being here for a better hereafter, if fortune turn against me." 12. "My friend," cried Cas'sius, embracing him, "now may we venture to face the enemy; for either we shall be conquerors, or we shall have no cause to fear those that be so." 13. Augus'tus being sick, the forces of the Trium'viri were commanded by Antony alone, who began the engagement by a victorious attack upon the lines of Cas'sius. Bru'tus, on the other side, made a dreadful *irruption* on the army of Augus'tus; and drove forward with so much *intrepidity*, that he broke them upon the very first charge. Upon this, he penetrated as far as the camp, and slaughtering those that were left for its defence, his troops immediately began to plunder. 14. In the mean time, however, the lines of

* On the evening preceding the battle Brutus gave an entertainment, at which he appeared very cheerful; but Cassius supped privately with a few of his most intimate friends, and, during the repast, was very thoughtful and silent, as though he had the presentiment of the fate that awaited him; it is rather remarkable that he was killed on his birth-day. (Plut. in Bruto —Appian, l. 4. p. 655.)

† This is very erroneous reasoning: suicide is, no doubt, a heinous crime.

Cas'sius were forced, and his cavalry put to flight. There was no effort that this unfortunate general did not exert to make his infantry stand; stopping those that fled, and himself seizing the colours to rally them. But the valour of an individual was insufficient to inspire a timorous army. 15. At length, despairing of success, Cas'sius retired to his tent and killed himself*. Bru'tus was soon informed of the defeat of Cas'sius, and, in a little time after of his death; scarcely able to restrain the excess of his grief for a man whom he lamented as the last of the Romans †.

16. Bru'tus, now become sole general, assembled the dispersed troops of Cas'sius, and animated them with fresh hopes of victory. As they had lost their all from the plundering in the camp, he promised two thousand *denarii* to each man to make them amends. 17. Inspired with new ardour, they admired the liberality of their general, and, with loud shouts, proclaimed his intrepidity. Still, however, he wanted confidence to face the adversary, who offered him battle the ensuing day. His aim was to starve the enemy, who were in extreme want of provisions, from their fleet having been lately defeated. 18. But his single opinion was overruled by the army, who now grew every day more confident of their strength, and more *arrogant* to their general. At last, therefore, after a respite of twenty days, he was obliged to comply with their solicitations to try the fate of a battle. Both armies were drawn out, and they remained a long while opposite to each other without offering to engage. It is said, that he himself had lost much of his ardour by having again seen, or fancied that he saw, the spectre, in the night

* This is the general opinion; but as the head of Cassius was found severed from his body, some have supposed that he was treacherously murdered by his freedman Pin'darus. (Plut. in Bruto.)

† Cas'sius was generally esteemed one of the best commanders of his age, and a man of strict probity and virtue.

preceding. However, he encouraged his men, and gave the signal for battle. As usual, he had the advantage when he commanded in person: bearing down the enemy at the head of his infantry, and, supported by his cavalry, making great slaughter. 19. But the forces which had belonged to Cas'sius, seized with a panic, and communicating their terror to the rest, the whole army at last gave way. Bru'tus, surrounded by the most valiant of his officers, fought long with amazing valour. The son of Ca'to, and the brother of Cas'sius, fell fighting by his side. At last, he was obliged to yield to necessity, and fled. 20. In the mean time, the two Trium'viri, assured of victory, expressly ordered that the general should by no means be suffered to escape. Thus, the whole body of the enemy being intent on the person of Bru'tus alone, his capture seemed *inevitable*. 21. In this deplorable exigence, Lucil'ius, his friend, resolved, by his own death, to effect his general's delivery. 22. Upon seeing a body of Thra'cian horse closely pursuing Bru'tus, and just upon the point of taking him, he boldly threw himself in their way, telling them that *he* was Bru'tus. The Thra'cians overjoyed with so great a prize, immediately despatched some of their companions with news of their success, to the army. 23. Upon this, the ardour of the pursuit abating, Antony marched out to meet his prisoner, either to hasten his death, or insult his misfortunes. He was followed by a great number of officers and soldiers, some silently deploring the fate of so virtuous a man, others reproaching that mean desire of life for which he consented to undergo captivity. 24. Antony now seeing the Thracians approach, began to prepare himself for the interview; but the faithful Lucil'ius, advancing with a cheerful air—"It is *not* Bru'tus," said he, "that is taken; fortune has not yet had the power of committing so great an outrage upon virtue. As for my life it is well lost in preserving his honour; take it, for I have deceived you." Antony, struck with so much fidelity, pardoned him,

loaded him with benefits, and honoured him with his friendship.

25. In the mean time, Bru'tus, with a small number of friends, passed over a *rivulet;* and night coming on, sat down under a rock, which concealed him from the pursuit of the enemy. After taking breath, and casting his eyes to heaven, he repeated a line from Eurip'ides *, containing a wish to the gods, "That guilt should not pass in this life without punishment †." To this he added another from the same poet: "O unhappy Virtue! I have worshipped thee as a real good, but thou art a vain empty name, and the slave of fortune ‡." He then called to mind, with great tenderness, those whom he had seen perish in battle. 26. He sent out one Statil''ius to give him information of those that remained; but Statil''ius never returned, being killed by a party of the enemy's horse. Bru'tus, judging rightly of his fate, now resolved to die likewise; and entreated those who stood round him to give him their last sad assistance; but they all refused so melancholy a service. 27. He then retired aside with his friend Stra'to, requesting him to perform the last office of friendship. Upon Stra'to's refusal, he ordered one of his slaves to execute what he so ardently desired; but Stra'to crying out, "that it never should be said that Bru'tus, in his last extremity, stood in need of a slave for want of a friend," turned aside his head, and presented the sword's point, Bru'tus threw himself upon it, and immediately expired, in the forty-third year of his age. A. U. 711.

---

* Eurip'ides was a celebrated tragic poet, born at Salamis *, 485 years before Christ. (For further particulars see Col. Clas. Biog.)

† This sentiment arose from his ignorance of a future state.

‡ It seems rather improbable, from the known character of Bru'tus, that he should have repeated such a sentiment, particularly as Volum'nius, who was present, and from whose memoirs Plu'tarch copied the account of his death, makes no mention of it.

* Salamis, an island near Athens.

Questions for Examination.

1. What great event was now depending?
2. What were Brutus's feelings on the occasion?
3. What was the respective strength of the armies?
4. Where did they meet and encamp?
5. What were the advantages of this situation?
6. Were the Triumviri equally well situated?
7. Were the enemy equally ready to engage?
8. What induced Brutus to combat this resolution?
9. Did he obtain his wish?
10. Did Cassius wish to engage?
11. What passed between the generals on this occasion?
12. What was the reply of Cassius?
13. What happened at the commencement of the battle?
14. Was Cassius equally successful?
15. What did he do in this extremity, and what effect had it on Brutus?
16. Did Brutus attempt to recover the victory?
17. What followed?
18. Were his intentions agreeable to his troops, and what was the consequence?
19. What decided the victory against him?
20. What orders were issued by the Triumviri on the occasion?
21. By whom was his deliverance attempted?
22. How did he accomplish this?
23. What was the consequence?
24. Relate the circumstance of their interview.
25. What happened to Brutus in the mean time?
26. How did he attempt to gain intelligence, and what followed his disappointment?
27. Relate the manner of his death.

SECT. VI.

6. Hom'age, *s.* respect, obedience.
8. Contribu'tions, *s.* levies of money, arbitrary taxes.
   Capri'cious, *a.* whimsical, fanciful.
9. Imputa'tion, *s.* censure, blame, any thing imputed.
   Infidel'ity, *s.* unfaithfulness.
10. Sedu'cing, *part.* enticing, pleasing.
11. Sump'tuous, *a.* grand, magnificent.
    Pa'geantry, *s.* pomp, splendid show.
    Ve'nus, *s.* the goddess of love and beauty.
    Cu'pid, *s.* the son of Venus and Mars, and god of love.
    Ne'reids, *s.* daughters of Nereus and Doris, nymphs of the sea.

Graces, *s.* daughters of Bacchus and Venus, named Agla'ia, Thal'ia, and Euphros'yne.
12. Luxu'rious, *a.* voluptuous, given to pleasure.
13. Assid'uously, *ad.* busily.
15. Dep'recate, *v.* to attempt to change by humble entreaties.
20. Leth'argy, *s.* sloth, supineness.
Dissen'sion, *s.* quarrel, disagreement.
21. Um'pires, *s.* deciders of a dispute.
26. Negocia'tion, *s.* treaty for peace.
Cemen't, *v.* to bind, to strengthen.

1. FROM the moment of Bru'tus's death, the Trium'viri began to act as sovereigns, and to divide the Roman dominions among them as their own by right of conquest. 2. However, though there were apparently three who participated all power, yet, in fact, only two were actually possessed of it, since Lep'idus was admitted at first merely to curb the mutual jealousy of Antony and Augus'tus, and was possessed neither of interest in the army, nor authority among the people. 3. Their earliest care was to punish those whom they had formerly marked for vengeance. Horten'sius, Dru'sus, and Quintil'ius Varus, all men of the first rank in the commonwealth, either killed themselves or were slain. A senator and his son were ordered to cast lots for their lives, but both refused; the father voluntarily gave himself up to the executioner, and the son stabbed himself before his face. Another begged to have the rites of burial after his death: to which Augus'tus replied, "that he would soon find a grave in the vultures that would devour him." 4. But chiefly the people lamented to see the head of Bru'tus sent to Rome to be thrown at the foot of Cæsar's statue. His ashes, however, were sent to his wife Por'tia, Cato's daughter, who, following the example of both her husband and father, killed herself, by swallowing burning coals*. 5. It is observed, that of all those who had a hand in the death of Cæsar, not one died a natural death.

* This appears to be a mere fable, since Plutarch assures us, (Plut. in Bruto) that in his time, a letter of Brutus was still extant, in which he laments the death of Por'tia.

6. The power of the Trium'viri being thus established upon the ruin of the commonwealth, they now began to think of enjoying that *homage* to which they had aspired. 7. Antony went into Greece, to receive the flattery of that refined people, and spent some time at A'thens, conversing with the philosophers, and assisting at their disputes in person. Thence he passed over into Asia, where all the monarchs of the east, who acknowledged the Roman power, came to pay him their obedience; while the fairest princesses strove to gain his favour, by the greatness of their presents or the allurements of their beauty. 8. In this manner he proceeded from kingdom to kingdom, attended by a succession of sovereigns, exacting *contributions*, distributing favours, and giving away crowns with *capricious* insolence. He presented the kingdom of Cappado'cia * to Sy'senes, in prejudice of Ariara'thes, only because he found pleasure in the beauty of Glaph'yra, the mother of the former. He settled He"rod in the kingdom of Ju'dea†, and supported him. But among all the sovereigns of the east, who depended upon Antony, Cleopa'tra, the celebrated queen of Egypt, was the most distinguished.

9. It happened that Sera'pion, her governor in the isle of Cy'prus‡, had formerly furnished some succours to

* Cappado'cia, a province of Asia Minor; its ancient state is unknown. This country was famous for its fine breed of horses, (Solinus); and for mules, (Homer); and for furnishing the world with slaves, (Cicero, Horace.) The Cappado'cians paid a yearly tribute of fifteen hundred horses, and two thousand mules, to the Persians, (Strabo). The people were anciently called Syr'i, (Herodotus); and Leucosyr'i, (Strabo). Stra'bo and Pausa'nius were natives of Cappado'cia.

† Jude'a, in the Roman History, generally denotes the whole of Palestine. It is also taken in this sense by Ptol'emy, Rutil'ius, Euse'bius, Jer'ome, and Or'igen. In sacred history it is considered to comprise about one-third part; which is also the opinion of the celebrated Jewish historian.

‡ Cy'prus, an island in the Mediterranean sea, near the coast of Syr'ia. It was anciently sacred to Ve'nus, (Horace); hence the appellations Cyp'ria, Cy'pris, Cyprige'na, were given to that goddess.

Cas'sius and the conspirators; and it was thought proper that he should answer for his conduct. Accordingly, having received orders from Antony to clear herself of the *imputation of infidelity*, she readily complied, equally conscious of the goodness of her cause, and the power of her beauty. 10. She was now in her twenty-seventh year, and consequently had improved those allurements by art, which in earlier age are seldom attended to. Her address and wit were still farther heightened, and, though there were some women in Rome that were her equals in beauty, none could rival her in the powers of *seducing* conversation. 11. Antony was in Tar'sus *, a city of Cili'cia, when Cleopa'tra resolved to attend his court in person. She sailed down the river Cyd'nus to meet him, with the most *sumptuous pageantry*. The stern of her galley was covered with gold, its sails were purple silk, its oars silver, and they kept time to the sound of flutes and cymbals. She exhibited herself reclining on a couch spangled with stars of gold, and such other ornaments as poets and painters had usually ascribed to *Ve'nus*. On each side were boys like *Cupids*, fanning her by turns: while beautiful nymphs dressed like *Ne'reids* and *Graces*, were placed at proper distances around her: the sweets that were burning on board her galley, perfumed the banks of the river as she passed, while an infinite number of people gazed upon the exhibition with delight and admiration †. 12. Antony soon became captivated with her beauty, and found himself unable to defend his heart against that passion which proved the cause of his future misfortunes. When Cleopa'tra had thus secured her power, she set out in her return to Egypt. Antony, quitting every other object, pre-

* Tar'sus, an inland city, was great, populous, and powerful; and maintained the dignity of a metropolis, (Strabo). Its origin is disputed. For antiquity, populousness, and its many ornaments, it excelled all other cities, (Nonnus). It was the native place of the Apostle Paul. It is now called 'Teras'so.

† Antony, who had seated himself on a magnificent throne to receive her, was on this occasion left quite alone.

sently hastened after her: and there gave himself up to all that ease and softness to which his vicious heart was prone, and which that *luxurious* people were able to supply.

13. While he remained thus idle in Egypt, Augus'tus, who took upon him to lead back the veteran troops, and settle them in Italy, was *assiduously* employed in providing for their subsistence. 14. He had promised them lands at home, as a recompence for their past services; but they could not receive their new grants without turning out the former inhabitants. 15. In consequence of this, multitudes of women, with children in their arms, whose tender years and innocence excited universal compassion, daily filled the temples and the streets with their lamentations. Numbers of husbandmen and shepherds came to *deprecate* the conqueror's intention, or to obtain a habitation in some other part of the world. 16. Among this number was Vir'gil the poet, to whom mankind owe more obligations than to a thousand conquerors; who in a humble manner begged permission to retain his patrimonial farm. 17. Vir'gil obtained his request *; but the rest of his countrymen of Man'tua † and Cremo'na ‡, were turned out without mercy.

18. Italy and Rome now felt the most extreme miseries. The insolent soldiers plundered at will; while Sex'tus Pompey, being master of the sea, cut off all foreign communication, and prevented the people from receiving their usual supplies of corn. To these mischiefs were added the commencement of another civil war. 19. Ful'-

* On shewing the order for the restoration of his property, he was nearly killed by the centurion who was in possession, and escaped only by swimming across a river. To these melancholy events he alludes in his first Eclogue.

† Man'tua was a very ancient town, supposed to be older than Rome. It is still called Man'tua, and is the capital of a duchy of the same name.

‡ Cremo'na was a very opulent and great commercial city, (Tacitus). It suffered greatly in the civil wars of Augus'tus, (Virgil). It is now the capital of the Cremo'nese, in the duchy of Mi'lan.

via, the wife of Antony, whom he had left behind at Rome, felt for some time all the rage of jealousy, and resolved to try every method of bringing back her husband from the arms of Cleopa'tra. 20. She considered a breach with Augus'tus, as the only probable means of rousing him from his *lethargy;* and accordingly, with the assistance of Lu'cius, her brother-in-law, she began to sow the seeds of dissension. The pretext was, that Antony should have a share in the distribution of lands as well as Augus'tus. 21. This produced negociations between them, and Augus'tus offered to make the veteran̄s themselves *umpires* in the dispute. Lu'cius refused to acquiesce; and being at the head of more than six legions, mostly composed of such as were dispossessed of their lands, he resolved to compel Augus'tus to accept of whatever terms he should offer. Thus a new war was excited between Augus'tus and Antony; or at least the generals of Antony assumed the sanction of his name. 22. Augus'tus was victorious; Lu'cius was hemmed in between two armies, and constrained to retreat to Peru'sia, where he was closely besieged by the opposite party. He made many desperate sallies, and Ful'via did all in her power to relieve him, but without success, so that being at last reduced to extremity by famine, he delivered himself up to the mercy of the conqueror. Augus'tus received him honourably, and generously pardoned him and all his followers *.

23. Antony having heard of his brother's overthrow, and of his wife being compelled to leave Italy, was resolved to oppose Augus'tus. He accordingly sailed at the head of a considerable fleet, and had an interview with Ful'via at Athens. 24. He much blamed her for occasioning the late disorders; testified the utmost contempt

* He however displayed his usual cruelty towards the inhabitants, causing three hundred senators to be sacrificed at an altar erected to the memory of Ju'lius Cæsar, and delivering up the city to plunder and the flames.

for her person; and, leaving her upon her death-bed, hastened into Italy to fight Augus'tus. They both met at Brundu'sium; and it was now thought that the flames of civil war were going to blaze out once more. 25. The forces of Antony were numerous, but mostly newly raised: however, he was assisted by Sex'tus Pompei'us, who, in those oppositions of interest, was daily coming into power. Augus'tus was at the head of those veterans who had always been irresistible, but who seemed no way disposed to fight against Antony, their former general. 26. A *negociation* was therefore proposed, and a reconciliation was effected: all offences and affronts were mutually forgiven; and, to *cement* the union, a marriage was concluded between Antony and Octa'via, the sister of Augus'tus. A new division of the Roman empire was made between them: Augus'tus was to have the command of the West; Antony of the East; while Lep'idus was obliged to content himself with the provines in Africa. As for Sex'tus Pompei'us, he was permitted to retain all the islands he had already possessed, together with Peloponne'sus *: he was also granted the privilege of demanding the consulship though absent, and of discharging that office by a friend. It was stipulated to leave the sea open, and to pay the people what corn was due out of Sicily. Thus a general peace was concluded, to the great satisfaction of the people, who now expected an end to all their calamities †.

---

* Peloponne'sus, a large peninsula and province of Greece, to which it is joined by the isthmus of Corinth. It has received various names. It is now called the Morea, and is subject to the Turks.

† This treaty was made on board Pompey's ship, whither Antony and Augus'tus had repaired. While they were engaged in conference, Me'nas, one of Pompey's commanders, proposed to cut the cable privately, and put to sea, by which he would have his rivals completely in his power; but Pompey nobly rejected the perfidious counsel; preferring honour to the most splendid advantages.

Questions for Examination.

1. What ensued on the death of Brutus?
2. Were the Triumviri possessed of equal power?
3. What were their first measures?
4. By what were the people most affected?
5. What observation has been made on these events?
6. What was the consequence of the establishment of their power?
7. Whither did Antony betake himself for that purpose?
8. How was he employed?
9. By what means did Cleopatra incur his displeasure?
10. What personal advantages did she possess?
11. Did she appear before Antony as a humble suppliant?
12. What was the result of the interview?
13. How was Augustus employed in the mean time?
14. What recompense had he promised these troops?
15. What was the consequence of this tyranny?
16. What remarkable person was among the sufferers?
17. Was his request granted?
18. What was the state of Italy at this time?
19. What occasioned it?
20. What did she consider as the most probable means of reclaiming him?
21. Were terms of accommodation offered and accepted?
22. What was the event of the war?
23. What was Antony's conduct on the occasion?
24. Did he approve of his wife's proceedings?
25. Were the two armies of nearly equal strength?
26. What was the consequence?
27. What farther measures were adopted?

SECT. VII.

1. Contempt'ible, *a.* despicable, deserving of scorn.
2. Prodi''gious, *a.* amazingly large.
4. Bac'chanal, *s.* a priestess of Bacchus.
6. Complica'tion, *s.* a mixture, a folding together.
   Exa''ggerate, *v.* to enlarge, heap up, aggravate.
9. Importu'nity, *s.* urgent solicitation.
   Repu'diate, *v.* to divorce, to put away.
11. Absurd'ities, *s.* follies, extravagances.
14. Sarcas'tic, *a.* severe, keen.
21. Precip'itately, *ad.* hastily, rashly.
25. Amass'ed, *v.* heaped together, collected.
    Confisca'tions, *s.* forfeits, fines.

1. THE only obstacle to the ambition of Augus'tus was Antony, whom he resolved to remove, and for that purpose rendered his character at Rome as *contemptible* as he possibly could. In fact, Antony's conduct did not a little contribute to promote the endeavours of his ambitious partner. 2. He had marched against the Par'thians with a *prodigious* army, but was forced to return with the loss of the fourth part of his forces, and all his baggage.

3. However, Antony seemed quite regardless of contempt: alive only to pleasure, and totally disregarding the business of the state, he spent his whole time in the company of Cleopa'tra, who studied every art to increase his passion, and vary his entertainments. 4. Few women have been so much celebrated for the art of giving novelty to pleasure, and making trifles important. Still ingenious in filling up the languid pauses of sensual delight with some new strokes of refinement, she was at one time a queen, then a *Bac'chanal*, and sometimes a huntress. 5. Not contented with sharing with her all the delights which Egypt could afford, Antony was resolved to enlarge his sphere of luxury, by granting her some of those kingdoms which belonged to the Roman empire. He gave her all Pheni"cia *, Celo-Syr'ia †, and Cy'prus, with a great part of Cili"cia, Ara'bia, and Jude'a; gifts which he had no right to bestow, but which he pretended to grant in imitation of Hercules. 6. This *complication* of vice and folly at last totally exasperated

* Pheni"cia, a province of Syr'ia, celebrated for the invention of letters, and of navigation. The people of this country are the first upon record who traded with England for tin. It is written in the Greek and Latin authors, Phœ'nice. (Coin, Mela, Pliny). Varro is the only one among the ancients who writes Phœni"cia. This is so noble a part of Syri'a, as sometimes to be put in opposition to it, or mentioned distinct from it. (Strabo).

† Celo-Syr'ia was a province of Syr'ia. (2 Mac. iv. 4.) Sometimes called Cœle-Syr'ia, or the Hollow Syr'ia. (Allen's Ancient Geography.)

the Romans, and Augus'tus, willing to take the advantage of their resentment, took care to *exaggerate* all his defects. 7. At length, when he found the people sufficiently irritated against him, he resolved to send Octa'via, who was then at Rome, to Antony, as if with a view of reclaiming her husband; but, in fact, to furnish a sufficient pretext for declaring war against him, as he knew she would be dismissed with contempt.

8. Antony was now at the city of Leucop'olis *, revelling with his insidious paramour, when he heard that Octa'via was at Athens, upon her journey to visit him. This was very unwelcome news both to him and Cleopa'tra; the latter, fearing the charms of her rival, endeavoured to convince Antony of the strength of her passion, by her sighs, her looks, and well-feigned melancholy. He frequently caught her in tears, which she seemingly attempted to hide; and of which she appeared extremely reluctant to tell him the cause. 9. These artifices, together with the ceaseless flattery and *importunity* of her creatures, prevailed so much upon Antony's weakness, that he commanded Octa'via to return home, without seeing her; and still more to exasperate the people of Rome, he resolved to *repudiate* her, and take Cleopa'tra as his wife. 10. He accordingly assembled the people of Alexan'dria in the public theatre, where was raised an alcove of silver, under which were placed two thrones of gold, one for himself and the other for Cleopa'tra. There he seated himself, dressed as Bac'chus †, while Cleopa'tra sat beside him, clothed in the ornaments and attributes of I'sis ‡, the principal deity of the Egyptians. 11. On that occasion he declared her Queen of all the countries which he had already bestowed upon her, while he associated Cæsa'rio, her son by

* Leucop'olis, a city of Ca'ria, in Asia Minor.
† In Heathen Mythology, the god of wine.
‡ In Heathen Mythology, among the Egyp'tians, supposed to have represented the moon.

Cæsar, as her partner in the government. To the two children he himself had by her, he gave the title of King of Kings, with very extensive dominions; and, to crown his *absurdities*, he next sent a minute account of his proceedings to the two consuls at Rome *.

12. In the mean time, Augus'tus had a sufficient pretext for declaring war, and informed the senate of his intentions. However, he deferred the execution of his design for a while, being then employed in quelling an insurrection of the Illyr'ians. 13. The following year was chiefly taken up in preparations against Antony, who perceiving his intentions, remonstrated to the senate, that he had many causes of complaint against his colleague, who had seized upon Sicily without affording him a share: alledging that he had also dispossessed Lep'idus, and kept to himself the province he had commanded; and that he had divided all Italy among his own soldiers, leaving nothing to recompense those in Asia. 14. To this complaint Augus'tus was content to make a *sarcastic* answer, implying that it was absurd to complain of his distribution of a few trifling districts in Italy, when Antony having conquered Par'thia, he might now reward his soldiers with cities and provinces †. 15. This sarcasm provoked him to send his army without delay into Europe, to meet Augus'tus, while he and Cleopa'tra followed to Samos ‡, in order to prepare for carry-

* While Antony was thus revelling in Egypt, Augus'tus was engaged in a war with Pompey, whom, after many bloody battles, both by sea and land, he completely defeated and put to death. (Appian, p. 747. Strabo, l. iii. p. 141.) Soon after this, Lep'idus, being forsaken by his troops, was deposed from the Trium'virate, but permitted to enjoy his private estate in peace.

† The severity of this sarcasm lay in its being directly contrary to truth, as Antony had been defeated by the Par'thians.

‡ Samos, a celebrated island in the Archipel'ago. It has been rendered famous for the worship and a temple of Ju'no, with a noted Asylum. (Virgil, Strabo, Tacitus.) Its capital was of the same name, and is memorable for the birth of Pythag'oras.

ing on the war with vigour. 16. When arrived there, it was ridiculous enough to behold the odd mixture of preparations for pleasure and for war. On one side, all the kings and princes from Egypt to the Euxine Sea had orders to send him supplies of men, provisions, and arms; on the other, comedians, dancers, buffoons, and musicians, were ordered to attend him.

17. His delay at Sa'mos, and afterwards at A'thens, where he carried Cleopa'tra to receive new honours, proved extremely favourable to the arms of Augus'tus, who was at first scarcely in a situation to oppose him, had he gone into Italy; but he soon found time to put himself in a condition for carrying on the war: and shortly after declared it against him in form. At length both sides found themselves in readiness to begin, and their armies were suitable to the greatness of the empire for which they contended. 18. The one was followed by all the forces of the East; the other drew after him all the strength of the West. Antony's force composed a body of one hundred thousand foot, and twelve thousand horse, while his fleet amounted to five hundred ships of war. Augus'tus mustered but eighty thousand foot, but equalled his adversary in the number of cavalry: his fleet was but half as numerous as Antony's; however, his ships were better built, and manned with better soldiers.

19. The great decisive engagement, which was a naval one, was fought near Ac'tium*, a city in Epi'rus, at the entrance of the gulph of Ambra'cia, Antony ranged his ships before the mouth of the gulph; and Augus'tus drew up his fleet in opposition. Neither general assumed any fixed station to command in, but went about from ship to ship, wherever his presence was necessary. In the mean time the two land armies, on the opposite sides of the gulph, were drawn up, only as spectators of the engagement, and encouraged the fleets, by their shouts,

* Ac'tium is famous for a temple of Apollo.

to engage. 20. The battle began on both sides after a manner not practised upon former occasions. The prows of their vessels were armed with brazen beaks, with which it was usual to drive furiously against each other; but Antony's ships being large, unwieldy, and badly manned, were incapable of the necessary swiftness, while those of Augus'tus, from the lightness of their construction, were fearful of the rude encounter: the battle, therefore, rather resembled a land fight, the ships being brought alongside each other. They fought with great ardour, without advantage on either side, except from a small appearance of disorder in the centre of Antony's fleet. 21. But, all on a sudden, Cleopa'tra determined the fortune of the day. She was seen flying from the engagement with her sixty sail, struck, perhaps, with the terrors natural to her sex; and, to increase the general amazement, Antony himself *precipitately* followed, leaving his fleet at the mercy of the conquerors: while the army on land submitted, being thus abandoned by their general.

22. When Cleopa'tra fled, Antony pursued her in a quinquireme*, and coming alongside her ship, entered it without any desire of seeing her. She was in the stern, and he went to the prow, where he remained silent and melancholy. In this manner he continued three whole days, during which, either through indignation or shame, he neither saw nor spoke to Cleopa'tra. The queen's female attendants, however, reconciled them, and every thing went on as before. 23. Still he had the consolation to suppose his army continued faithful to him; and accordingly dispatched orders to conduct it into Asia. But he was soon undeceived when he arrived in Africa, where he was informed of their submission to his rival†.

* A galley with five banks of oars.

† They continued unshaken in their fidelity for seven days after the battle of Ac'tium, notwithstanding the advantageous offers made them by Augustus, in hopes Antony would return

24. This so transported him with rage, that with difficulty he was prevented from killing himself. At length, at the entreaty of his friends, he returned to Alexan'dria. 25. Cleopa'tra seemed to retain that fortitude in her misfortunes, which had utterly abandoned her admirer. Having *amassed* considerable riches, by means of *confiscations* and other acts of violence, she formed a very singular and unheard-of project. 26. This was, to convey her whole fleet over the Isthmus of Su'ez into the Red Sea, and thereby save herself, with all her treasures, in another region beyond the power of Rome. 27. Some of her vessels were actually transported thither, pursuant to her orders; but the Ara'bians having burnt them, and Antony dissuading her from the design, she abandoned it for the more improbable scheme of defending Egypt against the conqueror. 28. She omitted nothing in her power to put this practice, and made all kinds of preparations for war; hoping at least by these means to obtain better terms from Augus'tus. In fact, she had been more in love with Antony's fortune than his person; and if she could have fallen upon any method of saving herself, though even at his expence, there is little doubt but she would have embraced it with gladness. 29. She had still hopes from the power of her charms, though she was arrived almost at the age of forty: and was desirous of trying upon Augus'tus those arts which had already been so successful. Thus, in three embassies which were sent from Antony to Augus'tus in Asia, the queen had always her secret agents, charged with proposals in her name. Antony desired no more than that his life might be spared, and to have the liberty of passing the remainder of his days in obscurity.

---

and put himself at their head; but finding themselves disappointed, and abandoned by their principal officers, they at length surrendered.

To these requests Augustus made no reply. 30. Cleopa'tra also sent him public proposals in favour of her children; but at the same time privately resigned to him her crown, with all the ensigns of royalty. To the queen's public proposal no answer was given; to her private offer he replied, by giving her assurances of his favour, in case she would send away Antony, or put him to death. 31. These private negociations were not so concealed but they came to the knowledge of Antony, whose jealousy and rage every occurrence now contributed to heighten. He built a small solitary house upon a mole in the sea, and shut himself up a prey to those passions that are the tormentors of unsuccessful tyranny. There he passed his time, shunning all commerce with mankind, and professing to imitate Ti'mon *, the man-hater. 32. However, his furious jealousy drove him from this retreat into society; for hearing that Cleopa'tra had secret conferences with one Thyr'sus, an emissary from Augus'tus, he seized upon him, ordered him to be cruelly scourged, and sent him back to his patron. At the same time he sent letters by him, importing that Thyr'sus had been chastised for insulting a man in misfortunes; but withal he gave Augus'tus permission to revenge himself by scourging Hippar'chus, Antony's freedman, in the same manner. The revenge, in this case, would have been highly pleasing to Antony, as Hippar'chus had left him to join the fortunes of his more successful rival.

---

* Ti'mon, the misanthrope, was born near Athens, A.D. 420. He declared himself the enemy of the human race, and had a companion named Apeman'tus, who possessed a similar disposition. The latter asking him one day, why he paid such respect to Alcibi'ades, "It is," said the churl, "because I foresee he will prove the ruin of the Athe'nians, my countrymen." (Plutarch.)

Questions for Examination.

1. What obstacle remained to the ambition of Augustus, and how did he attempt its removal?
2. How was Antony at this time employed?
3. Did he keenly feel this misfortune?
4. Was she eminently skilled in the art of pleasing?
5. Was not Antony lavish in his favours to her?
6. What was the consequence of this folly?
7. By what means did he seek a quarrel?
8. How was this measure approved by Antony and Cleopatra?
9. What imprudent resolutions did he adopt?
10. Did he do this publicly?
11. What farther favours did he bestow on her?
12. Did Augustus immediately commence hostilities?
13. What complaints did Antony make of Augustus?
14. Did Augustus notice these accusations?
15. What effect had his reply on Antony?
16. Were these military preparations formidable?
17. What advantages did Antony offer Augustus?
18. What was the respective strength of the armies?
19. Describe the preparations for this great conflict?
20. Was the engagement well contested?
21. What extraordinary circumstance decided its fate?
22. Did he reproach Cleopatra for her timidity?
23. Had Antony any resources left?
24. How did he receive this news?
25. How did Cleopatra act in this exigence?
26. What was this project?
27. Was it put in execution?
28. How did she attempt this, and with what views?
29. What farther hopes had she of favour?
30. What proposals did she make, and how were they received?
31. Was Antony aware of these negociations?
32. Did he persist in thus secluding himself?

SECT. VIII.

1. Retard'ed, *part.* delayed, kept back.
2. Despera'tion, *s.* despair, the resolution of despair.
4. Magnif'icently, *ad.* richly, nobly.
9. Ob'viating, *part.* preventing.
10. Sep'ulchre, *s.* a tomb.

11. Capitula'tion, *s.* surrender.
24. Re'gimen, *s.* a regulation of diet.
26. Pros'trated, *v.* threw themselves down.
28. Per'fidy, *s.* treachery, baseness.
31. Propi"tiate, *v* to induce to favour, to conciliate.
Expa'tiated, *v.* spoke at length.
32. In'ventory, *s.* a list, a catalogue.

1. AUGUSTUS advanced with another army against Pelu'sium *, which by its strong situation might have *retarded* his progress for some time. But the governor of the city, either wanting courage to defend it, or previously instructed by Cleopa'tra to give it up, permitted him to take possession; so that Augus'tus had now no obstacle in his way to Alexan'dria, whither he marched with all expedition. 2. Antony, upon his arrival, sallied out to oppose him, fighting with *desperation*, and putting the enemy's cavalry to flight. 3. This slight advantage once more revived his declining hopes: and, being naturally vain, he re-entered Alexan'dria in triumph. Then going, armed as he was, to the palace, and embracing Cleopa'tra, he presented to her a soldier, who had distinguished himself in the engagement. 4. The queen rewarded him very *magnificently*; presenting him with a helmet and breastplate of gold. With these, however, the soldier deserted in the night to the other army, prudently resolving to secure his riches, by keeping on the strongest side. 5. Antony, not able to bear this defection without fresh indignation, resolved to make a bold expiring effort by sea and land; but previously offered to fight his adversary in single combat. Augus'tus, however, too well knew the inequality of their situations to comply with this forlorn proposal; he therefore coolly replied, "Antony has ways enough to die besides in single combat."

* A strong city of Egypt.

6. The next day, he posted the few troops he had remaining upon a rising ground near the city; whence he sent orders to his galleys to engage the enemy. There he waited to be a spectator of the combat; and at first he had the satisfaction to see them advance in good order. 7. But his joy was soon turned into rage, when he beheld his ships only saluting those of Augus'tus, and both fleets uniting together, and sailing back into the harbour; and at the same time his cavalry deserting him. He tried however to lead on his infantry; but these were easily vanquished; and he himself compelled to return into the town. 8. His fury was now ungovernable; crying out as he passed, that he was betrayed by Cleopa'tra, and delivered up to those who, for her sake alone, were his enemies. In these suspicions he was not deceived; for it was by secret orders from the queen that the fleet passed over to the enemy.

9. Cleopa'tra had for a long while dreaded the effects of Antony's jealousy; and had some time before prepared a method of *obviating* the effects of any sudden sallies it might produce. 10. Near the temple of I'sis she had erected a building, which was seemingly designed for a *sepulchre*. Hither she moved her treasure and most valuable effects, covering them with torches, faggots, und other combustible matter. 11. This sepulchre she designed to answer a double purpose, as well to screen her from the sudden resentments of Antony, as to make Augus'tus believe that she would burn all her treasure, in case he refused proper terms of *capitulation*. Here, therefore, she retired from Antony's fury: shutting the fortified gates; and giving orders to have it reported that she was dead. 12. This news soon reached Antony, and it recalled all his former love and tenderness. Subject to every gust of passion, and each of them in the extreme, he now lamented her death with the same violence that he had just before seemed to desire it. "Miserable man!"

exclaimed he, "what is there now worth living for; since all that could soothe or soften my cares is departed! O Cleopa'tra! our separation does not so much afflict me, as the disgrace I suffer, in permitting a woman to instruct me in the ways of dying." 13. He now called to him one of his freedmen, named E'ros, whom he had engaged, by oath, to kill him, whenever fortune should drive him to his last resource, and commanded him to perform his promise. This faithful follower drew his sword, as if going instantly to strike the blow; when turning his face, he plunged it into his own bosom, and dropt at his master's feet. 14. Antony, for a while, hung over his faithful servant, charmed with his fidelity. Then snatching up the sword he stabbed himself in the belly, and fell backward upon a couch. 15. The wound was mortal; yet the blood stopping, he recovered his spirits; and earnestly conjured those who were come into the room, to put an end to his life; but they all fled, seized with fright and horror. 16. He continued in this miserable condition till he was informed by one of the queen's secretaries, that his mistress was still alive; and begged that he would suffer himself to be transported to the monument where she was. He was accordingly brought to the sepulchre: but Cleopa'tra, attended by her two women only, durst by no means permit the gate to be opened, but from the window threw down cords, with which, with great difficulty, they drew him up. 17. Antony, bathed in his blood, held out his hands to Cleopa'tra, and faintly endeavoured to raise himself from the couch on which he had been laid. The queen gave way to sorrow, tore her clothes, beat her breast, and kissing the wound of which he was dying, called him her husband, her lord, her emperor. 18. Antony entreated her to moderate the transports of her grief, and to preserve her life, if she could be able to do it with honour. "As for me, lament not my misfortunes," he said, "but

congratulate me upon the happiness which I have enjoyed; I have lived the greatest and most powerful of men; and though I fall, my fate is not ignominious; *a Roman myself, I am at last by a Roman overcome.*" Having thus said, he expired.

19. Proculei'us now made his appearance by command of Augus'tus, who had been informed of Antony's desperate conduct. He was sent to try all means of getting Cleopa'tra into his power. 20. Augus'tus had a double motive for his solicitude on this occasion; one was—to prevent her destroying the treasures she had taken with her into the tomb; the other,—to preserve her person, as an ornament to grace his triumph. 21. Cleopa'tra, however, was upon her guard, and rejected any conference with Proculei'us, except through the gate, which was well secured. At length, having procured a ladder, he with two of Augustus' soldiers entered by the same window through which Antony had been drawn up. Cleopa'tra, perceiving what had happened, drew a poniard that hung at her girdle, to stab herself, but Proculei'us forced it from her. 22. Augus'tus, pleased to find her in his power, sent Epaphrodi'tus to bring her to his palace, and to watch her with the utmost circumspection. He was ordered to use her, in every respect, with that deference and submission which were due to her rank, and to do every thing in his power to render her captivity tolerable.

23. Though kings and generals made interest for Antony's body, in order to pay the last honours to it, this consolation was reserved for Cleopa'tra. She alone was permitted to have the honour of granting Antony the rites of burial; and was furnished with every thing becoming his dignity to receive, or her love to offer. 24. Yet still she languished under her new confinement. Her many losses, her frantic sorrow, the blows which she had given her bosom, produced a fever, which she wished to in-

crease. She resolved, by abstaining from nourishment, to starve herself to death, under the pretence of a *regimen* necessary for her disorder. 25. But Augus'tus being made acquainted with the real motive by her physicians, began to threaten her, with regard to the safety of her children, in case she should perish. The fear of being the cause of their death, was a motive she could not resist. Cleopa'tra, therefore, allowed herself to be treated as was thought proper, and she recovered.

26. In the mean time Augus'tus made his entry into Alexan'dria; taking care to mitigate the fears of the inhabitants, by conversing familiarly with Ar'cus, a philosopher, and a native of the place. The citizens, however, trembled at his approach. And when he placed himself upon the tribunal, they *prostrated* themselves, with their faces to the ground, before him, like criminals who waited the sentence for their execution. 27. Augus'tus presently ordered them to rise, telling them that three motives induced him to pardon them:—his respect for Alexan'der, who was the founder of their city; his admiration of its beauty; and his friendship for Ar'cus, their fellow-citizen. 28. Two only of particular note were put to death upon this occasion; Antony's eldest son, Antyl'lus, and Cæsa'rio, the son of Julius Cæsar, both betrayed into his hands by their respective tutors; who themselves suffered for their *perfidy* shortly after. As for the rest of Cleopa'tra's children, he treated them with great gentleness, leaving them to the care of those who were intrusted with their education, to whom he gave orders to provide them with every thing suitable to their birth. 29. Cleopa'tra being recovered, Augus'tus visited her in person: she received him lying on a couch; but, upon his entering the apartment, rose up, habited in a loose robe, and prostrated herself before him. Her misfortunes had given an air of severity to her features; her hair was dishevelled, her voice trembling, her com-

plexion pale, and her eyes swoln with weeping; yet, still, her natural beauty seemed to gleam through the distresses that surrounded her; and the graces of her motion, and the alluring softness of her looks, still bore testimony to the former power of her charms. 30. Augus'tus raised her with his usual complaisance, and, desiring her to sit, placed himself beside her. 31. Cleopa'tra had been prepared for this interview, and made use of every art to *propitiate* the conqueror. She tried apologies, entreaties, and allurements, to obtain his favour and soften his resentment. She began by attempting to justify her conduct; but when her skill failed against manifest proofs, she turned her defence into supplications. She reminded him of Cæsar's humanity to those in distress; she read some of his letters to her, full of tenderness; and *expatiated* upon the intimacy that subsisted between them. "But of what service," cried she, "are now all his benefits to me! Why did I not die with him! Yet, still he lives, methinks I see him still before me! he revives in you." 32. Augus'tus, who was no stranger to this method of address, remained firm against all attacks; answering with a cold indifference, which obliged her to give her attempts a different turn. 33. She now addressed his avarice, presenting him with an *inventory* of her treasure and jewels. This gave occasion to a very singular scene, that may serve to shew that the little decorums of breeding were then by no means attended to as in modern times. One of her stewards having alleged, that the inventory was defective, and that she had secreted a part of her effects, she fell into the most extravagant passion, started from her couch, and catching him by the hair, gave him repeated blows on the face. Augus'tus smiling at her indignation, led her to the couch, and desired her to be pacified. To this she replied, that it was insufferable to be insulted in the presence of one whom she so highly esteemed. "And admitting," cried

she, "that I have secreted a few ornaments, am I to blame, when they are reserved, not for myself, but for Liv'ia and Octa'via, whom I hope to make my intercessors with you?" 35. The apology, which intimated a desire of living, was not disagreeable to Augus'tus, who politely assured her she was at liberty to keep whatever she had reserved, and that in every thing she should be indulged to the height of her expectations. He then took leave, and departed; imagining he had reconciled her to life, and to the indignity of being shown in the intended triumph, which he was preparing for his return to Rome: but in this he was deceived. 36. Cleopa'tra had all this time corresponded with Dolabel'la, a young Roman of high birth, in the camp of Augus'tus; who from compassion, or perhaps from stronger motives, was interested in her misfortunes. By him she was secretly informed, that Augus'tus determined to send her and her children, within three days, to Rome, to grace his triumphant entry. 37. She, at length, therefore, determined upon dying; but first threw herself upon Antony's coffin, bewailed her captivity, and renewed her protestations not to survive him. Having bathed, and ordered a sumptuous banquet, she attired herself in the most splendid manner. After partaking of the banquet, she commanded all, except her two women, to leave the apartment. She had contrived to have an asp secretly conveyed to her in a basket of fruit, and then wrote to Augus'tus, to inform him of her fatal purpose, desiring to be buried in the same tomb with Antony. 38. Augus'tus, upon receiving the letter, instantly despatched messengers in hopes to stop the fulfilment of her intentions, but they arrived too late. Upon entering the chamber, they beheld Cleopa'tra lying dead upon her couch, arrayed in royal robes. Near her, I'ras, one of her faithful attendants, was stretched at the feet of her mistress; and

Char'mion *, the other, scarcely alive, was settling the diadem upon Cleopa'tra's head. "Alas!" cried one of the messengers, "is this well done, Char'mion?" "Yes," replied she, "it is well done; such a death becomes a glorious queen, descended from a race of glorious ancestors." Pronouncing these words, she dropped and expired with her much loved mistress †.

Questions for Examination.

1. What was the next conquest achieved by Augustus?
2. What was Antony's conduct on his arrival?
3. Was he elated by this slight success?
4. How was he rewarded, and in what manner did he evince his gratitude?
5. What were Antony's feelings and conduct on the occasion?
6. Did he attempt farther hostilities?
7. Was this satisfaction well founded?
8. How was he affected by this ill success?
9. Was Cleopatra prepared for these misfortunes?
10. What precautions had she taken?
11. What was her design in building this sepulchre?
12. Was Antony affected by this news?
13. What followed?
14. Did Antony persist in his purpose?
15. Did he immediately expire?
16. Had he another interview with Cleopatra?
17—18. Relate the particulars of this interview.
19. How did Augustus act on this occasion?
20. Why was Augustus anxious to preserve the life of Cleopatra?
21. Did he obtain ready admittance to her, and what was the consequence?
22. How was she treated?
23. By whom were the last honours paid to Antony?
24. Did this kindness reconcile her to her situation?
25. By what means did Augustus overcome her resolution?

---

* Pronounced Kar'mion.

† Cleopa'tra was thirty-eight years old at the time of her death, and had lived twelve years with Antony.

26. What circumstances attended the entrance of Augustus into Alexandria?
27. Were their fears realized?
28. Who fell victims on the occasion?
29. Did Augustus visit Cleopatra, and how was he received?
30. What was his conduct towards her?
31. How did Cleopatra conduct herself at this interview?
32. Was Augustus moved by her artifices?
33. Mention her next attempt and its consequence.
34. Relate the particulars.
35. Was the apology accepted?
36. With whom did Cleopatra correspond, and what did she learn?
37. What resolution did she form, and how did she accomplish it?
38. Did not Augustus attempt to prevent her resolution, and was he successful?

CHAPTER XXII.

SECT. I.

1. Oblit'erate, *v.* to blot out, to cause to be forgotten.
   Clem'ency, *s.* mercy, gentleness, mildness.
3. Devasta'tions, laying waste, destruction.
5. Don'atives, *s.* gifts, largesses.
6. O'dium, *s.* hatred, blame.
10. Af'fable, *a.* free, condescending.
15. Conces'sions, *s.* grants, acts of yielding.
20. E'dicts, *s.* proclamations that have the force of laws.
24. Manumis'sion, *s.* the act of setting slaves free.
26. Disallow'ed, *part.* forbidden, not allowed.
27. Extir'pate, *v.* to root out, to destroy.
    Deter', *v.* to frighten from.

1. By the death of Antony, Augus'tus having become master of the Roman empire, returned to Rome in triumph; where, by feasts and magnificent shows, he began to *obliterate* the impressions of his former cruelty; and thenceforward resolved to secure, by his *clemency*, a throne, the foundations of which were laid

in blood. 2. He was now at the head of the most extensive empire that mankind had ever beheld. The former spirit of the Romans, and those characteristic marks that distinguished them from others, were now totally lost. The city was inhabited by a concourse from all the countries of the world; and being consequently divested of all just patriotic principles, perhaps a monarchy is the best form of government that could be found to unite its members. 3. However, it was very remarkable, that during these long contentions among themselves, and these horrid *devastations* by civil war, the state was daily growing more formidable and powerful, and completed the destruction of all the kings who presumed to oppose it.

4. The first care of Augus'tus was to assure himself of the friends of Antony; to which end he publicly reported that he had burnt all Antony's letters and papers without reading them, convinced that, while any thought themselves suspected, they would be fearful of even offering him their friendship.

5. He had gained the kingdom by his army, but he resolved to govern it by the senate. This body, though greatly fallen from its ancient splendour, he knew to be the best constituted, and most remarkable for wisdom and justice. To the senate, therefore, he gave the chief power in the administration of his government, while he himself secured the fidelity of the people and the army by *donatives*, and acts of favour. 6. By these means the *odium* of severity fell upon the senate, and the popularity of pardon was solely his own. Thus restoring splendour to the senate, and discountenancing corruption, he pretended to reserve to himself a very moderate share of authority, to which none could object: namely, power to compel all ranks of the state to do their duty. 7. This was, in fact, reserving absolute dominion in his own hands; but the misguided people began to look upon his moderation with astonish-

ment: they considered themselves as restored to their former freedom, except the capacity of promoting sedition; and the senate supposed their power re-established in all things but their tendency to injustice. It was even said that the Romans, by such a government, lost nothing of the happiness that liberty could produce, and were exempt from all the misfortunes it could occasion. 8. This observation might have some truth under such a monarch as Augus'tus now appeared to be: but they were afterwards taught to change their sentiments under his successors, when they found themselves afflicted with all the punishments that tyranny could inflict, or sedition make necessary.

9. After having established this admirable order Augus'tus found himself agitated by different passions; and considered, a long time, whether he should keep the empire, or restore the people to their ancient liberty. 10. But he adopted the advice of Mecæ'nas, which was, to continue in power; and he was afterwards swayed by him on every occasion. By the advice of that minister, he became gentle, *affable*, and humane: he encouraged men of learning, and gave them much of his time and his friendship. These in their turn relieved his most anxious hours, and circulated his praise throughout the empire.

11. Thus having given peace and happiness to his subjects, and being convinced of the attachment of all orders of the state to his person, he resolved upon impressing the people with an idea of his magnanimity, by making a shew of resigning his authority. 12. To this end, having previously instructed his creatures in the senate how to act, he addressed them in a studied speech, importing the difficulty of governing so extensive an empire; a task to which, he said, none but the immortal gods were equal. He modestly urged his own inability, though impelled by every motive to undertake it; and then, with a degree of seeming generosity, freely gave up all that power which

his arms had gained, and which the senate had confirmed, giving them to understand, that the true spirit of the Romans was not lost in him. 13. This speech operated upon the senate variously, as they were more or less in the secret. Many believed the sincerity of his conduct as an act of heroism unequalled by any thing that had hitherto appeared; others, though ignorant of his motives, distrusted his designs. Some there were, who, having greatly suffered during the popular commotions, were fearful of their being renewed; but the majority, who were properly instructed by his ministers, frequently attempted to interrupt him while speaking, and received his proposals with pretended indignation. 14. These unanimously besought him not to resign the administration; and, upon his continuing to decline their request, they in a manner compelled him to comply. However, that his person might be in greater security, they immediately decreed that the pay of his guard should be doubled. 15. On the other hand, that he might seem to make *concessions* on his side, he permitted the senate to govern the weak internal provinces, while the most powerful provinces, and those that required the greatest armies for their defence, were taken entirely under his own command. Over these he assumed the government for ten years only, leaving the people still in hopes of regaining their ancient freedom; at the same time, however, laying his measures so well, that his government was renewed every ten years to his death.

16. This shew of resignation only served to confirm him in the empire and in the hearts of the people. New honours were heaped upon him. He was now first called Augus'tus (a name I have hitherto used as that by which he is best known in history.) A laurel was ordered to be planted at his gates. That house was called the palace wherever he made his abode. He was confirmed in the title of father of his country, and his person declared sacred and inviolable. 17. In short, flattery seemed on

the rack to find out new modes of pleasing him; but, though he despised the arts of the senate, he permitted their homage, well knowing that, among mankind, titles produce a respect which enforces authority.

18. Upon entering into his tenth consulship, the senate, by oath, approved of all his acts, and set him wholly above the power of the laws. They, some time after, offered to swear not only to all the laws he had made, but such as he should make for the future. 19. It was customary with fathers, upon their death-beds, to command their children to carry oblations to the Capitol, with an inscription, that at the day of their deaths they left Augus'tus in health. It was determined that no man should be put to death on such days as the emperor entered the city. Upon a dearth of provisions, the people entreated him to accept of the dictatorship; but he would by no means assume the title of dictator, which had been abolished by law.

20. An accumulation of titles and employments did not in the least diminish his assiduity in fulfilling the duties of each. Several very wholesome *edicts* were passed by his command, tending to suppress corruption in the senate, and licentiousness in the people. 21. He ordained that none should exhibit a show of gladiators without an order from the senate, and then not oftener than twice a year; nor with more than a hundred and twenty at a time. This law was extremely necessary at so corrupt a period of the empire, when armies of these unfortunate men were brought at once upon the stage, and compelled to fight, often till half of them were slain. 22. It had been usual also with the knights, and women of the first distinction, to exhibit themselves as dancers upon the theatre; he ordered that not only these, but their children and grand-children should be restrained from such exercises for the future. 23. He fined many that had refused to marry at a certain age; and rewarded such as

had many children. He ordained, that virgins should not be married till twelve years of age. He permitted any person to kill an adulterer, if taken in the fact. He enacted that the senators should be held in great reverence; adding to their dignity what he had taken from their power. 24. He made a law, that no man should have the freedom of the city without a previous examination into his merit and character. He appointed new rules and limits to the *manumission* of slaves; and was himself very strict in the observance of them. With regard to dramatic performers, of whom he was very fond, he severely examined their morals, not allowing licentiousness in their lives, nor indecency in their actions. Though he encouraged the athletic exercises, he would not permit women to be present at them: holding it unbecoming the modesty of the sex to be spectators of these sports, which were performed by naked men. 25. In order to prevent bribery in suing for offices, he took considerable sums of money from the candidates, by way of pledge; and if any indirect practices were proved against them, they were obliged to forfeit all. 26. Slaves had been hitherto *disallowed* to confess any thing against their own masters; but he abolished the practice, and first sold the slave to another, which altering the property, his examination became free. 27. These, and other laws, all tending to *extirpate* vice, or *deter* from crimes, gave the manners of the people another complexion; and the rough character of the Roman soldier was now softened into that of the refined citizen*.

Questions for Examination.

1. What was the consequence of the death of Antony?
2. What was the character of the Roman people at this time?
3. Did these convulsions weaken the empire?

---

* In his sixth consulship, Augus'tus commanded a census to be made, when there was found the astonishing number of 4,060,000 inhabitants in Rome, which was 50 miles in circumference.

4. What was the first care of Augustus?
5. In what way did he propose to govern?
6. What were the consequences of this conduct?
7. What advantages did the Romans fancy they enjoyed?
8. Was this observation correct?
9. What conflicting passions agitated the mind of Augustus?
10. Whose advice did he adopt, and what was that advice?
11. What artifice did he employ to confirm his power?
12. How did he make his intentions known?
13. What effect was produced by this proposal?
14. What was their conduct on this occasion?
15. What farther artifices did he employ?
16. What were the consequences of this affected moderation?
17. Was he imposed on by these arts?
18. What farther instances of abject servility did the senate display?
19. What else was done to his honour?
20. Did these honours render him remiss?
21. What salutary law did he enact?
22. What next?
23. What regulations concerning marriage, and respect to senators, did he enforce?
24. How did he improve the morals of the people?
25. How did he prevent bribery?
26. By what means did he promote justice?
27. What was the consequence of these regulations?

SECT. II.

1. Condescen'sion, *s.* humanity.
2. In'solent, *a.* haughty, saucy.
   Prox'y, *s.* a substitute, a person who acts for another.
6. Impe'rious, *a.* haughty, fond of command.
8. Noctur'nal, *a.* nightly.
10. Contem'poraries, *s.* persons living in the same age.
14. Porten'd, *v.* to foretoken, foreshew.
18. Adula'tion, *s.* flattery.
20. Erad'icated, *part.* rooted out, destroyed.

1. AUGUS'TUS, by his own example, tended greatly to humanize his fellow-citizens; for, being placed above all equality, he had nothing to fear from *condescension*. He was familiar with all, and suffered himself to be reprimanded with the most patient humility. Though, by his sole authority, he could condemn or acquit whomsoever

he thought proper, he gave the laws their proper course; and even pleaded for persons he desired to protect. 2. When the advocate for Pri'mus* desired to know, with an *insolent* air, what brought Augus'tus into court, the emperor calmly replied, "The public good." When one of his veteran soldiers entreated his protection, Augus'tus bid him apply to an advocate. "Ah!" replied the soldier, "it was not by *proxy* that I served you at the battle of Ac'tium." Augus'tus was so pleased, that he pleaded his cause and gained it for him. One day a petition was presented to him with so much awe as to displease him. "Friend," cried he, "you seem as if you were offering something to an elephant, rather than to a man; be bolder." 8. Once, as he was sitting in judgment, Mæce'nas perceiving that he was inclined to be severe, and not being able to get to him through the crowd, he threw a paper into his lap, on which was written, "Arise, executioner!" Augus'tus read it without displeasure, and immediately rising, pardoned those whom he was disposed to condemn. 4. But what most of all shewed a total alteration in his disposition, was his treatment of Corne'lius Cin'na, Pompey's grandson. This nobleman had entered into a conspiracy against him; Augus'tus sent for the other conspirators, reprimanded them, and dismissed them. But resolving to mortify Cin'na by the greatness of his generosity: "I have twice," says he, "given you your life, as an enemy and as a conspirator; I now give you the consulship: let us therefore be friends for the future; let us contend only in shewing, whether my confidence, or your fidelity, shall be victorious."

---

* M. Primus, while governor of Macedon, had made an irruption into the country of the Odrysians; for this he was prosecuted, and pleaded that it was by the emperor's orders. Augustus denying this, L. Murena put the impudent question to him mentioned in the text.

5. In the practice of such virtues he passed a long reign. In fact, he seemed the first Roman who aimed at gaining a character by the arts of peace; and who obtained the affections of the soldiers, without any military talents of his own: nevertheless, the Roman arms, under his lieutenants, were crowned with success.

6. But he had uneasiness of a domestic nature that distressed him. He had married Liv'ia, the wife of Tibe'rius Ne'ro, by the consent of her husband, when she was six months advanced in her pregnancy. She was an *imperious* woman; and, conscious of being beloved, controlled him at her pleasure. 7. She had two sons, Tibe'rius the elder, and Dru'sus, who was born three months after she had been married to Augus'tus, and who was thought to be his own son. The elder of these, Tibe'rius, whom he afterwards adopted, and who succeeded him in the empire, was a good general, but of a suspicious and obstinate temper, and of a conduct so turbulent and restless, that he was, at last, exiled for five years to the island of Rhodes, where he chiefly spent his time in a retired manner, conversing with the Greeks, and addicting himself to literature, of which, however, he afterwards made but a bad use.

8. But the greatest affliction that Augus'tus experienced was from the conduct of his daughter Ju'lia, whom he had by Scribo'nia, his former wife. Ju'lia, whom he married to his general Agrip'pa, and afterwards to Tibe'rius, set no bounds to her lewdness. Not contented with enjoying her pleasures, she seemed also earnest in publishing the infamy of her prostitutions. She was arrived at that excess of wantonness, that she had her *nocturnal* appointments in the most public parts of the city; the very court where her father presided was not exempt from her debaucheries. 9. Augus'tus, at first, had thoughts of putting her to death; but, after consideration,

he banished her to Pandata'ria *, forbidding her the use of wine, and all inflammatory delicacies. He ordered that no person should come near her without his permission; and sent her mother Scribo'nia along with her, to bear her company. When any one attempted to intercede for Ju'lia, his answer was, "that fire and water should sooner unite than he with her." 10. Augus'tus, having survived most of his *contemporaries*, at length, in the seventy-fourth year of his age, began to think of retiring from the fatigues of state, and of constituting Tibe'rius his partner in the throne. He desired the senate to salute him no longer at the palace; nor take it amiss if, for the future, he could not converse with them as formerly. 11. From that time Tibe'rius was joined in the government of the provinces with him, and invested with nearly the same authority. However, Augus'tus could not entirely forsake the administration, which habit had rendered a source of pleasure; and he still continued a watchful guardian, and shewed himself, to the last, a lover of his people. 12. Finding it now, therefore, very inconvenient to come to the senate, by reason of his age, he desired to have twenty privy-counsellors assigned him for a year; and it was decreed, that whatever measures were resolved upon by them, and the consuls, should have entirely the force of a law. 13. He seemed apprehensive of his approaching end, for he made his will, and delivered it to the vestal virgins. He then solemnized the census, or numbering the people, whom he found to amount to four millions one hundred and thirty-seven thousand; which shows Rome to be equal to four of the greatest cities of modern times. 14. While these ceremonies were performing, in the midst of a mighty concourse of people in the Cam'pus Mar'tius, it is said, that an eagle flew round the emperor several times, and, directing its flight to a neighbouring temple, perch-

U. C. 762.

* An island on the coast of Lucania, in Italy; now called Santa Maria.

ed over the name of Agrip'pa: this omen was, by the augurs, conceived to *portend* the death of the emperor. 15. Shortly after, having accompanied Tibe'rius in his march into Illyr'ia, he was there taken ill. Returning thence, he sent for Tibe'rius, and his most intimate friends. A few hours before his death, he ordered a looking-glass to be brought, and his hair to be adjusted with more than usual care. He then addressed his friends, whom he beheld surrounding his bed, and desired to know whether he had properly played his part in life; to which, being answered in the affirmative, he cried out with his last breath, "then give me your applause." Thus, at the age of seventy-six, after reigning forty-four years, he expired in the arms of Liv'ia; bidding her remember their marriage and their last farewell *.

16. The death of the emperor caused inexpressible grief throughout the whole empire. It was, by some, supposed that his wife Liv'ia had some hand in hastening it, with a view to procure the succession more speedily for her son. However this was, she took care, for a time, to keep the important event concealed, by guarding all the passages to the palace; sometimes giving out that he was recovered, and then pretending a relapse. At length, having settled the succession to her mind, she published the emperor's death; and, at the same time, the adoption of Tibe'rius to the empire. 17. The emperor's funeral was performed with great magnificence. The senators being in their places, Tibe'rius, on whom that care devolved, pronounced a consolatory oration. After this his will was read, wherein he made Tibe'rius and Liv'ia his heirs. 18.

* The date of Augustus's reign is here reckoned from the death of Antony, when he became sole monarch; but if it be reckoned from his first coming into power, soon after the death of Julius Cæsar, it is nearly 56 years. Augustus carried on his wars principally by his lieutenants, but he went personally into Spain and Gaul. His bravery, however, has been greatly called in question, and many flagrant instances of his cowardice recorded. How true they may be is not easy to determine.

He was studious of serving his country to the very last, and the sorrow of the people seemed equal to his assiduity. It was decreed, that all the women should mourn for him a whole year. Temples were erected to him, divine honours were allowed him, and one Nume'rius At'ticus, a senator, willing to convert the *adulation* of the times to his own benefit, received a large sum of money for swearing that he saw him ascending into heaven; so that no doubt remained among the people concerning his divinity.

19. Such were the honours paid to Augus'tus, whose power began in the slaughter, and terminated in the happiness of his subjects; so that it was said of him, "that it had been good for mankind if he had never been born, or if he had never died." 20. It is possible that the cruelties exercised in his triumvirate were suggested by his colleagues. In the case of Cæsar's death, he might think that revenge was virtue. Certain it is, that severities were necessary to restore public tranquillity; for, until the Roman spirit should be *eradicated,* no monarchy could be secure. 21. He indulged his subjects in the appearance of a republic, while he made them really happy in the effects of a most absolute monarchy, administered with the most consummate prudence. In this last quality he seems to have excelled most monarchs; and, indeed, could we separate Octavius from Augus'tus, he was one of the most faultless princes in history. 22. About this time our Saviour was born in Jude'a*.

Questions for Examination.

1. What was the general conduct of Augustus?
2. Mention some instances of his moderation?
3. What farther instance of his moderation is on record?
4. How did he most decidedly shew the alteration in his disposition?

---

* The temple of Janus was now shut for the third time since the foundation of the city.

5. In what was he particularly remarkable?
6. Was he happy in domestic life?
7. What family had she, and what was the character of her son?
8. Had he no other domestic trials?
9. In what way was she punished?
10. Was the reign of Augustus of considerable length?
11. Did he associate Tiberius with him in the government?
12. By what means did he lighten the burthen of governing?
13. By what measure did he prepare for his approaching end?
14. What omen portended his death?
15. How did he meet his end?
16. How were the people affected by his death, and why was it for a time concealed?
17. How was his funeral celebrated?
18. What honours were decreed him?
19. Were those honours deserved?
20. What excuses may be made for his early cruelties?
21. By what means did he secure his power?
22. What remarkable event happened in his reign?

SECT. III.

1. Dissimula'tion, *s.* a dissembling, hypocrisy.
2. Dis'guise, *s.* concealment.
5. Indefat'igable, *a.* unwearied.
6. Popular'ity, *s.* favour with the people.
8. Postpo'ne, *v.* to put off.
9. Spe'cious, *a* plausible.
15. Defa'me, *v.* to calumniate, to speak evil of.
16. Machina'tions, *s.* artifices, schemes.
17. Appa'rent, *a.* evident, plain, visible.
25. Su'icide, *s.* self-murder.
Cul'pable, *a.* blame-worthy.
Appre'ciate, *v.* to value.

1. TIBE'RIUS was fifty-six years old when he took upon him the government of the Roman empire. He had lived in a state of profound *dissimulation* under Augus'tus, and was not yet hardy enough to shew himself in his real character. In the beginning of his reign nothing appeared but prudence, generosity, and clemency*. 2. But the successes of his

U.C. 762. A.D. 10.

* He began his reign, however, with the murder of Agrippa Posthumus, the grandson of Augustus.

nephew, Germanicus, son of his late brother Drusus, over the Germans, first brought his natural disposition to light, and discovered the malignity of his mind without *disguise*. 3. He was hardly settled on his throne, when he received intelligence that the legions in Pannonia *, hearing of the death of Augustus, and desirous of novelty, had revolted; but these were soon quieted, and Percennius, their leader, slain †. 4. A commotion in Germany was attended with much more important consequences. The legions in that part of the empire were conducted by Germanicus, a youth of most admirable qualities, who had been, at the late emperor's request, adopted, in order to succeed to the empire. These forces had taken the opportunity of his absence to revolt, and now began to affirm that the whole Roman empire was in their power, and that its principal grandeur was owing to the success of their arms; when Germanicus returned, therefore, they unanimously resolved to choose him emperor. 5. This general was the darling of the soldiers, and almost idolized, so that he might, with very little difficulty, have raised himself to the highest dignity in the state; but his duty prevailed over his ambition; he rejected their offers with the utmost indignation, and used the most *indefatigable* endeavours to quell the sedition. This he effected, though with extreme hazard, by cutting off many of the principal revolters, and then by leading the troops against the Germans, who were considered as the common enemies of the empire ‡.

* Pannonia, an extensive country of Europe; comprising Carniola, Croatia, Sclavonia, Bosnia, part of Austria, Servia, and Hungary; but its boundaries were different, at different periods.

† Percennius was a private solder, who possessed considerable eloquence, and was of a turbulent, seditious disposition. (Sueton.) An eclipse of the moon happening during the sedition, the soldiers were terrified, and returned to their duty. (Tacitus, An. 1. 1.)

‡ It has frequently been remarked, that no wars are so bloody as civil wars, in which brother fights against brother. Some of the

6. Tibe'rius was as much pleased with the loyalty of German'icus, as he was distressed at his superior *popularity;* his success also, immediately after, against the Germans, still more excited the emperor's envy and private disgust. He overthrew the enemy in several battles, subduing many wild and extensive countries. 7. These victories, however, only served to inflame the emperor's jealousy; and every virtue in the general now became a new cause of offence. 8. This dislike began to appear by Tiberius's making use of every pretence to draw German'icus from the legions; but he was obliged to *postpone* his purpose on account of a domestic insurrection made in Italy, by one Cle'mens, whom he put to death by a private execution in a secret apartment of the palace *.

9. Having thus got rid of his domestic enemy, he turned his thoughts to the most *specious* means of bringing home German'icus from the legions in Germany. He began by procuring him a triumph for his late victories, and then writing to him to return, in order to enjoy these honours which the senate had decreed; adding, that he had reaped enough of glory in a country to which he had been sent nine times, and been each time victorious; concluding, that so great a number of triumphs was sufficient; and that the most signal vengeance which could be inflicted on this turbulent people was to permit them to continue their intestine divisions. 10. German'icus was met on his return,

---

legions still continuing obstinate in sedition, German'icus sent those which had returned to their duty to put them to the sword; these, rushing unawares into the tents of the rebels, massacred them without mercy. Nothing was to be heard but dreadful outcries and groans from all parts of the camp; nothing to be seen but streams of blood and heaps of dead bodies; comrades were butchered by comrades, and friends by friends, in the same tents where they used to eat and sleep together. (Tacitus, An. 1. 1. c. 40.)

* This Clemens was a slave of the late Agrippa Posthu'mus, and as he resembled that prince both in age and features, he took upon him his name, and brought over great numbers to support his cause. He was at length seized by stratagem, and executed as above related. (Tacitus, 1. 2.)

many miles from the city, by a vast multitude, who received him with marks of adoration rather than respect: the gracefulness of his person; his triumphal chariot, in which were carried his five children; and the recovered standards of the army of Va'rus, threw the people into a phrenzy of joy and admiration *.

11. German'icus was now appointed to a new dignity. He departed from Rome on an expedition to the east, carrying with him his wife Agrippi'na, and his children. 12. But Tibe'rius, to restrain his power, had sent Cne'ius Pi'so governor into Syr'ia. This Pi'so was a person of a furious and headstrong temper; and, in every respect, fit to execute those fatal purposes for which he was designed. 13. His instructions were, to oppose German'icus upon every occasion: to excite hatred against him; and even to procure his death if an opportunity should offer. He accordingly took every opportunity of abusing German'icus; and taxed him with diminishing the Roman glory, by his peculiar protection of the Athe'nians. 14. German'icus disregarded his invectives; being more intent on executing the business of his commission, than on counteracting the private designs of Pi'so. 15. Pi'so, however, and his wife Planci'na, who is recorded as a woman of an implacable and cruel disposition, continued to *defame* him. German'icus opposed only patience and condescension to all their invectives; and with that gentleness which was peculiar to him, repaid their resentments by courtesy. 16. He was not ignorant of their motives; and was rather willing to evade than oppose their enmity. He therefore took a voyage into Egypt, under pretence of viewing the celebrated antiquities of that country; but

* Va'rus had been surprised by the Germans, defeated, and his whole army cut to pieces. Augus'tus was so grieved at this disgrace and loss, that for a long time he wore mourning, and frequently was heard to cry out, in an agony of grief, "Restore me my legions, Va'rus."

in reality, to avoid the *machinations* of Pi'so, and those of his wife, which were still more dangerous. 17. Upon his return he fell sick; and whether from a mind previously alarmed, or from more *apparent* marks of treachery, he sent to let Pi'so know, that he broke off all further connexions. Growing daily worse, his death appeared to be inevitable. 18. Finding his end approaching, he addressed his friends, who stood round his bed, to the following effect: "Had my death been natural, I might have reason to complain of being thus snatched away from all the endearments of life, at so early an age; but my complaints are aggravated, in falling the victim of Pi'so and Planci'na's treachery. Let the emperor, therefore, I conjure you, know the manner of my death, and the tortures I suffer. Those who loved me when living, those even who envied my fortune, will feel some regret, when they hear of a soldier who had so often escaped the rage of the enemy, falling a sacrifice to the treachery of a woman. Plead then my cause before the people; you will be heard with pity; and if my murderers should pretend to have acted by command, they will either receive no credit or no pardon." 19. As he spoke these words, he stretched forth his hand, which his weeping friends tenderly pressing, most earnestly vowed, that they would lose their lives rather than their revenge. The dying prince then turning to his wife, conjured her, by her regard to his memory, and by all the bonds of nuptial love, to submit to the necessity of the times, and to evade the resentment of her more powerful enemies, by not opposing it*. 20. Nothing could exceed the distress of the whole empire, upon hearing of the death of German'icus, and the people of Rome seemed to set no bounds to it. 21. In this uni-

* German'icus died in the 34th year of his age, and was universally mourned for, not only by the Roman people, but by the princes in allianee with Rome; and even by the proud monarch of Parthia. (Suet. l. 4. c. 5.)

versal confusion, Pi'so seemed marked for destruction. He and his wife stood charged with the death of German'icus, by giving him a slow poison. Indeed, even the emperor himself, with his mother Liv'ia, incurred a share of the general suspicion. 22. This was soon after greatly increased by the arrival of Agrippi'na, the widow of German'icus, a woman of invincible courage, and in high esteem for her virtue. She appeared bearing the urn containing the ashes of her husband, and attended by all her children, to the tomb of Augus'tus. 23. When she approached the city, she was met by the senate and people of Rome, both with acclamations and expressions of sorrow. The veteran soldiers, who had served under German'icus, gave the sincerest testimonies of their concern. The multitude, while the ashes were depositing, regarded the ceremony in profound silence; but presently broke out into loud lamentations, crying out, The commonwealth is now no more.

24. Tibe'rius permitted the accusation of Pi'so, though he was justly supposed to be merely the instrument of his own vengeance. This general was accused before the senate of the death of German'icus, and of other crimes.

25. He put an end to his trial, which had been drawn out to a great length, by committing *suicide* *. His wife Planci'na, who was universally believed to be most *culpable*, escaped punishment by the interest of Liv'ia.

26. Tibe'rius, having now no object of jealousy to keep him in awe, began to pull off the mask, and appear more in his natural character than before. 27. In the beginning of his cruelties, he took into his confidence Seja'nus, a Roman knight, who found out the method of gaining his affection by the most refined degree of dissimulation, and was an over-match for his master in his

* He was found in the morning with his throat cut, and his sword lying by him; but whether this was done by his own hand, or by the orders of Tiberius, is not known. (Tacitus.)

own arts *. It is not well known whether he was the adviser of all the cruelties that ensued; but certain it is, that, from the beginning of his ministry, Tibe'rius seemed to become more fatally suspicious.

Questions for Examination.

1. What were the age and character of Tiberius on his accession?
2. What first shewed him in his true colours?
3. What was the first news he heard?
4. Was there not a more formidable revolt?
5. Did Germanicus accept this dignity?
6. Did Tiberius properly *appreciate* this conduct?
7. Was he pleased with his success?
8. How did this appear?
9. What followed this execution?
10. How was Germanicus received?
11. How was he next employed?
12. What restraints were imposed on him?
13. What were Piso's instructions, and how did he execute them?
14. How did Germanicus act on the occasion?
15. Did Piso persevere in his base attempts?
16. Was Germanicus aware of their design?
17. What happened on his return?
18. Repeat his speech on his death bed.
19. What farther passed on this occasion?
20. Was his untimely end lamented?
21. Who incurred the popular hatred on this occasion?
22. How was this increased?
23. What honours were paid her?
24. Was the tyrant's vile agent rewarded for his services?
25. What was the issue?
26. How did Tiberius conduct himself after this?
27. Who was his prime minister?

---

* Seja'nus, though simply a Roman knight, was descended from an illustrious family, and was, in the very beginning of Tiberius's reign, associated with his father in the command of the prætorian guards. By removing these from their usual quarters in the city, and uniting them in one body in a camp, he laid the foundation of that power, which they afterwards usurped, of disposing of the empire at their pleasure.

SECT. IV.

1. Remo'te, *a.* distant.
6. Rapid'ity, *s.* swiftness, quickness.
8. Stat'ues, *s.* images.
10. Defer', *v.* to delay, to put off.
12. Enor'mity, *s.* atrocious wickedness.
13. Prom'ontory, *s.* a cape or headland.
18. Deprav'ity, *s.* corruption, wickedness.
19. Apothe'osis, *s.* the consecrating or deifying any person after death.
20. Deform'ity, *s.* ugliness.
24. Ex'quisite, *a.* excellent, costly.
Op'ulent, *a.* rich, wealthy.
Absurd'ities, *s.* follies, extravagances.
26. Econ'omist, *s.* a frugal, careful person.
Per'manent, *a.* lasting.

1. SEJA'NUS began his administration by using all his address to persuade Tibe'rius to retire to some agreeable retreat, *remote* from Rome: from this he expected many advantages, since there could be no access to the emperor but through him. 2. The emperor, either prevailed upon by his persuasions, or pursuing the natural turn of his temper, left Rome, and went into Campa'nia *, under pretence of dedicating temples to Ju'piter and Augus'tus. Growing weary, however, of places where mankind might follow him with their complaints and distresses, he withdrew himself into the delightful island of Ca'prea†; and buried in this retreat, gave himself up to abandoned pleasures, regardless of the miseries of his subjects‡. 3. From this time he became more cruel, and

* Campa'nia, a considerable district of Italy, situated on the south of La'tium (Cicero and Florus)—considered the most beautiful and fertile spot on the earth. Cap'ua was the capital. (Strabo.)

† Ca'prea, an island on the Tuscan sea, opposite So'rento.

‡ Tibe'rius having abolished the exhibitions of the amphitheatre at Rome, vast multitudes flocked to behold a show of gladiators given at Fidenæ by one Attilius; while they were intent on the combats, the building fell, and destroyed or maimed fifty

Seja'nus increased his distrusts. Secret spies and informers were placed in all parts of the city, who converted the most harmless actions into subjects of offence. 4. In consequence of this, Ne'ro and Dru'sus, the children of German'icus, were declared enemies to the state, and afterwards starved to death in prison; while Agrippi'na, their mother, was sent into banishment. Sabi'nus, Asin'ius Gal'lus, and Syria'cus, were, upon slight pretences, condemned and executed. 5. In this manner Seja'nus proceeded, removing all who stood between him and the empire; and every day increasing his confidence with Tibe'rius, and power with the senate. The number of his statues exceeded even those of the emperor; people swore by his fortune, in the same manner as they would have done had he been upon the throne; and he was more dreaded than even the tyrant who actually enjoyed the empire. 6. But the *rapidity* of his rise seemed only preparatory to the greatness of his downfall. All we know of his first disgrace with the emperor is, that Sati'rius Secun'dus was the man who had the boldness to accuse him of treason; and Anto'nia, the mother of German'icus, seconded the accusation. 7. The senate, who had long been jealous of his power, and dreaded his cruelty, immediately took this opportunity of going beyond the orders of Tibe'rius: instead of sentencing him to imprisonment, they directed his execution*. 8. Whilst

---

thousand persons. (Tacitus, l. iv. c. 62.) Soon after a dreadful fire broke out on Mons Cœlius, and consumed all the houses in that quarter of the city. (Suetonius, Tacitus.)

* To such a pitch of meanness were the Roman senators arrived, that when the emperor's letter arrived, the senators, thinking it contained orders for bestowing on Sejanus the tribunitial power, crowded round him, each striving to be the foremost in congratulating him on his new dignity; but they no sooner learnt the real contents of the fatal letter than all forsook him; even those who sat near him, removed to another part of the house, lest they should be accounted his friends. (Dio.) The populace likewise broke in pieces those very statues which, a few hours before, they had adored.

he was conducting to his fate, the people loaded him with insult and execration; pursued him with sarcastic reproaches; and threw down his *statues*. He himself was strangled by the executioner.

9. His death only lighted up the emperor's rage for farther executions. Planci'na, the wife of Pi'so, and others, were put to death for being attached to Seja'nus. He began to grow weary of single executions, and gave orders that all the accused should be put to death together, without further examination. The whole city was, in consequence, filled with slaughter and mourning. 10. When one Carnu'lius killed himself, to avoid the torture, "Ah!" cried Tibe'rius, "how has that man been able to escape me!" When a prisoner earnestly entreated that he would not *defer* his death: "Know," said the tyrant, "I am not sufficiently your friend to shorten your torments."

11. In this manner he lived, odious to the world, and troublesome to himself; an enemy to the lives of others, a tormentor of his own *. At length, in the 22d year of his reign, he began to feel the approaches of dissolution, and his appetites totally forsook him. 12. He now, therefore, found it was time to think of a successor, and fixed upon Calig'ula: willing, perhaps, by the *enormity* of Calig'ula's conduct, with which he was well acquainted, to lessen the obloquy of his own.

13. Still, however, he seemed desirous to avoid his end; and strove, by change of place, to put off the inquietude of his own reflections. He left his favourite

* It has been well said of Tibe'rius, "This great prince, this sovereign of Rome, with his numerous armies, his Prætorian bands, and his unlimited power, was in hourly fear of secret assassins, incessantly racked by his own apprehensions; with all the eclat of empire, the most miserable being in his dominions. His power, indeed, was unlimited, but so was his misery; the more he made others suffer, the faster he multiplied his own torments. Such was his situation and life, and such are the natural consequences of the abuse of power."

island, and went upon the continent; and, at last, fixed at the *promontory* of Mise'num *. There he fell into faintings, which all believed to be fatal. 14. Calig'ula supposing him actually dead, caused himself to be acknowledged by the Prætorian soldiers †, and went forth from the emperor's apartment amidst the applauses of the multitude; when, all of a sudden, he was informed, that the emperor was likely to recover. 15. This unexpected account filled the whole court with terror and alarm; every one who had before been earnestly testifying his joy, now reassumed his pretended sorrow, and forsook the new emperor, through a feigned solicitude for the fate of the old. 16. Calig'ula seemed thunderstruck; he preserved a gloomy silence, expecting nothing but death, instead of the empire at which he had aspired. 17. Ma'rco, however, who was hardened in crimes, ordered that the dying emperor should be dispatched, by smothering him with pillows; or, as some will have it, by poison. Thus died Tibe'rius in the 78th year of his age, after reigning 22 years. { U. C. 780. A. D. 37.

18. It was in the eighteenth year of this emperor's reign, that Christ was crucified; as if the universal *depravity* of mankind wanted no less a sacrifice than this to reclaim them. Pi'late sent to Tibe'rius an account of Christ's passion, resurrection, and miracles, and the emperor made a report of the whole to the senate, desiring that Christ might be accounted a God by the Romans. 19. But the senate, displeased that the proposal had not come first from themselves, refused to allow of his *apothéosis*; alleging an ancient law, which gave them the

* A promontory, port, and town in Italy, near Naples.

† The Prætorian bands were instituted by Augus'tus, to guard his person, and maintain his authority. Under bold and warlike emperors, they were kept in tolerable subjection; but when the reins of government were held by feeble hands, they became the disturbers, instead of preservers, of the public peace; and, at length, deposed and set up emperors at their pleasure.

superintendance in all matters of religion. They even went so far as to command, by an edict, that all Christians should leave the city; but Tibe'rius, by another edict, threatened death to such as should accuse them; by which means they continued unmolested during the rest of his reign.

20. The vices of Calig'ula were concealed under the appearance of virtue in the beginning of his reign *. In less than eight months, however, every trace of moderation and clemency vanished; while furious passions, unexampled avarice, and capricious cruelty, reigned uncontrolled; and pride, impiety, lust, and avarice, appeared in all their native *deformity*.

21. Calig'ula's pride first appeared in his assuming to himself the title of ruler; which was usually granted only to kings. He would also have taken the crown and diadem, had he not been advised, that he was already superior to all the monarchs of the world. 22. Not long after, he assumed divine honours, and gave himself the names of such divinities as he thought most agreeable to his nature. For this purpose he caused the heads of the statues of Jupiter †, and some other gods, to be struck off, and his own to be put in their places. He frequently seated himself between Cas'tor and Pol'lux ‡, and ordered that all who came to this temple to worship should pay

---

* In his first speech to the senate, he promised to govern with justice and moderation, to do nothing without their advice, and to follow their directions as their child and pupil. The virtues which he assumed, so endeared him to the people, that on his being taken ill, a universal sorrow pervaded all ranks; his palace was constantly besieged with inquiries; many passed whole nights at his gate, and some even devoted their lives for his. (Philo.) In proportion to the grief occasioned by his illness, was the joy his recovery diffused. Happy would it have been for Rome, happy for the fame of Caligula, had this recovery never taken place.

† The supposed son of Saturn and Rhea, the supreme deity of the pagan world.

‡ Cas'tor and Pol'lux, the twin sons of Ju'piter, by Le'da.

their adorations only to himself. 23. However, such was the extravagant inconstancy of this unaccountable idiot, that he changed his divinity as often as he changed his clothes: being at one time a male deity, at another a female; sometimes Jupiter or Mars *; and not unfrequently Ve'nus † or Dian'a ‡. 24. He even built and dedicated a temple to his own divinity, in which his statue of gold was every day dressed in robes similar to those which he himself wore, and worshipped by crowds of adorers. His priests were numerous; the sacrifices made to him were of the most *exquisite* delicacies that could be procured; and the dignity of the priesthood was sought by the most *opulent* men of the city. However, he admitted his wife and his horse to that honour; and, to give a finishing stroke to his *absurdities*, became a priest to himself. 25. His method of assuming the manners of a deity was not less ridiculous: he often went out at full moon, and courted it in the style of a lover. He employed many inventions to imitate thunder, and would frequently defy Jupiter, crying out with a speech of Homer, "Do you conquer me, or I will conquer you." He frequently pretended to converse in whispers with the statue of Ju'piter, and usually seemed angry at its replies, threatening to send it back into Greece, whence it came. Sometimes, however, he would assume a better temper, and seem contented that Ju'piter and he should dwell together in amity.

26. Of all his vices, prodigality was the most remarkable, and that which in some measure give rise to the

---

* The supposed god of war.

† Ve'nus (in heathen Mythology,) the supposed goddess of beauty and love.

‡ Dian'a (in heathen Mythology,) the supposed goddess of hunting, daughter of Ju'piter and Lato'na, and sister to Phœ'bus, or the sun. On earth, she was called Dian'a; in heaven, Phœ'be, or the Moon; in hell, Hecate.

rest. The luxuries of former emperors were simplicity itself when compared to those which he practised. He contrived new ways of bathing, when the richest oils and most precious perfumes were lavished with the utmost profusion. His luxuries of the table were of immense value, and even jewels, as we are told, were dissolved in his sauces. He, sometimes, had services of pure gold presented before his guests instead of meat, observing, that a man should be an *economist* or an emperor.

27. The manner in which he maintained his horse will give some idea of his domestic extravagance. He built a stable of marble, and a manger of ivory; and whenever the animal, which he called Incita'tus, was to run in the race, he placed sentinels near its stable, the night preceding, to prevent its slumbers from being broken *.

Questions for Examination.

1. What was the first measure of Sejanus?
2. Did the emperor yield to his persuasions?
3. What consequences ensued from this measure?
4. Who were the first sufferers?
5. Did Sejanus increase his influence?
6. Was this elevation *permanent?*
7. To what punishment was he condemned?
8. What occurred at his execution?
9. Was this the only victim to the cruelty of Tiberius?
10. How did Tiberius aggravate his cruelties?
11. Did these cruelties long continue?
12. How did he act on this?
13. Was he resigned to his fate?
14. What followed on this?
15. How was this news received?

---

* Some extraordinary accounts are given of this horse: it is said that he appointed it a house, furniture, and kitchen, in order to treat all its visitors with proper respect. The emperor sometimes invited Incita'tus to his own table, presented it with gilt oats, and wine in a golden cup. He would often swear, "by the safety of his horse;" and, it is said, he would have appointed it to the consulship, had not his death prevented.

16. Did Caligula boldly meet the consequences?
17. How was this averted?
18. What highly remarkable event happened in this reign?
19. Was his desire gratified?
20. What was the conduct of Caligula on this occasion?
21. By what acts did he display his pride?
22. Did his arrogance carry him farther than this?
23. Under what name did he assume divine honours?
24. Of what farther absurdities was he guilty?
25. Relate other follies of his?
26. What was his principal vice?
27. Give an instance of his domestic extravagance.

SECT. V.

1. Subor'dinate, *a.* inferior.
   Amphithe'atre, *s.* a building appropriated to the exhibition of gladiators, combats of wild beasts, &c.
13. Effem'inate, *a.* soft, womanish.
15. Ci'ted, *v.* summoned.
18. Dis'located, *part.* put out of joint.
20. Divulg'ing, *part.* making known.
22. Trans'pire, *v.* to become known.
    Cri'sis, *s.* critical moment.

1. THE impiety, however, of Calig'ula was but *subordinate* to his cruelties. He slew many of the senate, and afterwards cited them to appear. He cast great numbers of old and infirm men to the wild beasts, to free the state from such unserviceable citizens. He usually fed his wild beasts with the bodies of those wretches whom he condemned; and, every tenth day, sent off numbers of them to be thus devoured; which he jocosely called clearing his accounts. One of those who was thus exposed, crying out that he was innocent, Calig'ula ordered him to be taken up, his tongue to be cut out, and then thrown into the *amphitheatre* as before *. 2. He took delight in

* One day, on visiting the amphitheatre, finding that there were no criminals condemned to fight with the wild beasts, he ordered numbers of the spectators to be thrown to them, previously causing their tongues to be cut out, that they might not, by their cries, disturb his inhuman diversion.

killing men with slow tortures, that, as he expressed it, they might feel themselves dying, being always present at such executions himself, directing the duration of the punishment, and mitigating the tortures, merely to prolong them. 3. In fact, he valued himself for no quality more than his unrelenting temper, and inflexible severity, when he presided at an execution. 4. Upon one occasion, being incensed with the citizens, he wished that all the Roman people had but one neck, that he might dispatch them at one blow *.

5. Such insupportable and capricious cruelties produced many secret conspiracies against him; but they were for a while deferred upon account of his intended expedition against the Germans and Britons. 6. For this purpose he caused numerous levies to be made, and talked with so much resolution, that it was universally believed he would conquer all before him †. 7. His march perfectly indicated the inequality of his temper; sometimes it was so rapid, that the cohorts were obliged to leave their standards behind them; at other times it was so slow, that it more resembled a pompous procession than a military expedition. 8. In this disposition, he would cause himself to be carried in a litter on eight men's shoulders, and ordered all the neighbouring cities to have their streets well swept and watered, that he might not be annoyed with dust. 9. However, all these mighty preparations ended in no-

U. C. 793. A.D. 41.

* He frequently used this expression—*Oderint dum metuant*—(Let them hate while they fear.)

† The following anecdote will sufficiently display how ill-founded these expectations were:—As he was passing in his chariot through a narrow lane, his troops were obliged to break their ranks, that he might proceed. One happening to observe on this, that, should the enemy now appear, the confusion would be great, he was seized with such a panic, that, throwing himself out of his chariot, he fled on horseback, till, coming to a bridge that was crowded with the servants and baggage of the army, he caused himself to be conveyed over their heads, not thinking himself safe till he got out of the enemy's country.

thing. Instead of conquering Britain, he merely gave refuge to one of its banished princes; and this, he described, in his letter to the senate, as taking possession of the whole island. 10. Instead of conquering Germany, he only led his army to the sea shore in Gaul: there, disposing his engines and warlike machines with great solemnity, and drawing up his men in order of battle, he went on board his galley, with which coasting along, he commanded his trumpets to sound, and the signal to be given as if for an engagement. 11. His men, who had previous orders, immediately fell to gathering the shells that lay upon the shore into their helmets, as their spoils of the conquered ocean, worthy of the palace and the capitol. 12. After this doughty expedition, calling his army together, like a general after victory, he harangued them in a pompous manner, and highly extolled their achievements; then, distributing money among them, and congratulating them upon their riches, he dismissed them with orders to be joyful. And, that such exploits should not pass without a memorial, he ordered a lofty tower to be erected by the sea-side *.

13. Cas'sius Cher'ea, a tribune of the Prætorian bands, was the person who at last freed the world from this tyrant. Besides the motives which he had in common with other men, he had received repeated insults from Calig'ula, who took all occasions of turning him into ridicule, and impeaching him of cowardice, merely because he happened to have an *effeminate* voice. Whenever Cher'ea came to demand the watch-word from the emperor, according to custom, he always gave him either Ve'nus, Ado'nis, or some such, implying softness and effeminacy.

14. Cher'ea secretly imparted his designs to several

* It is said that the tower which stands at the entry of the port of Boulogne, called *La tour d'ordre*, is that built by Calig'ula on this occasion.

senators and knights whom he knew to have received personal injuries from Calig'ula. While these were deliberating upon the most certain and speedy method of destroying the tyrant, an unexpected incident gave new strength to the conspiracy. 15. Pompe'dius, a senator of distinction, being accused before the emperor of having spoken of him with disrespect, the informer *cited* one Quintil'ia, an actress, to confirm the accusation. 16. Quintil'ia, however, was possessed of a degree of fortitude not frequently found even in the other sex. She denied the fact with obstinacy; and, being put to the torture, bore the severest torments of the rack with unshaken constancy. 17. Indeed so remarkable was her resolution, that though acquainted with all the particulars of the conspiracy, and although Cher'ea was the person appointed to preside at her torture, she revealed nothing; on the contrary, when she was led to the rack, she trod upon the toe of one of the conspirators, intimating at once her knowledge of the confederacy, and her resolution not to divulge it. 18. Thus she suffered, until all her limbs were *dislocated;* and, in that deplorable state, was presented to the emperor, who ordered her a gratuity for what she had endured.

19. Cher'ea could no longer contain his indignation, at being thus made the instrument of a tyrant's cruelty. After several deliberations with the conspirators, it was at last resolved to attack him during the Palatine games *, which lasted four days; and to strike the blow when his guards should not have the opportunity to defend him. 20. The first three days of the games passed. Cher'ea

---

*Palatine games were so called from their being celebrated on the Palatine Hill, which was the most considerable of the seven hills on which Rome was built. This was the first hill occupied by Rom'ulus, and where he fixed his residence, and kept his court; as also did Tul'lus Hostil'ius, Augus'tus, and all the succeeding emperors; and hence it is that the residence of princes is called Palatium, or Palace.

began to apprehend, that deferring the completion of the conspiracy might be the means of *divulging* it; he even dreaded that the honour of killing the tyrant might fall to the lot of some other person, bolder than himself. At last he resolved to defer the execution of his plot only to the day following, when Calig'ula should pass through a private gallery, to some baths near the palace.

21. The last day of the games was more splendid than the rest; and Calig'ula seemed more sprightly and condescending than usual. He enjoyed the amusement of seeing the people scramble for the fruits and other rarities by his order thrown among them; being no way apprehensive of the plot formed for his destruction. 22. In the mean time the conspiracy began to *transpire;* and, had he had any friends remaining, it could not have failed of being discovered. A senator who was present, asking one of his acquaintance if he had heard any thing new, and the other replying in the negative, said, 'you must know, that this day will be represented the death of a tyrant.' The other immediately understood him, but desired him to be cautious. 23. The conspirators waited many hours with extreme anxiety; and Calig'ula seemed resolved to spend the whole day without any refreshment. So unexpected a delay exasperated Cher'ea; and, had he not been restrained, he would suddenly have perpetrated his design in the midst of all the people. 24. At that instant, while he was hesitating, Aspore'nus *, one of the conspirators, persuaded Calig'ula to go to the bath, and take some slight refreshment, that he might the better enjoy the rest of the entertainment. 25. The emperor rising up, the conspirators used every precaution to keep off the throng, and to surround him themselves, under pretence of greater assiduity. Upon his entering into a little vaulted gallery that led to the bath,

* He is by some called Am'pronas.

Cher'ea struck him to the ground with his dagger, crying out, "Tyrant, think upon this." The other conspirators closed in upon him; and, while the emperor was resisting, and crying out that he was not yet dead, they dispatched him with thirty wounds.

26. Such was the merited death of Calig'ula, in the 29th year of his age, after a short reign of not four years. His character may be summed up in the words of Sen'eca; namely, "Nature seemed to have brought him forth, to shew what mischief could be effected by the greatest vices supported by the greatest authority."

Questions for Examination.

1. Was Caligula's impiety his greatest vice?
2. How did he heighten his cruelties?
3. On what did he chiefly value himself?
4. What monstrous wish did he express?
5. What was the consequence of such atrocities?
6. What preparations did he make?
7. How did his disposition display itself on this occasion?
8. How did he sometimes travel?
9. What exploits did he perform?
10. Did he not make a shew of some great enterprise?
11. How did it end?
12. Of what farther follies was he guilty?
13. By whom was he assassinated, and by what provocations was his fate hastened?
14. Were others made privy to the design?
15. Relate this incident.
16. Did Quintilia confirm the accusation?
17. What rendered this resolution more remarkable?
18. What was the result?
19. Was the *crisis* much longer deferred?
20. Was this resolution put in practice?
21. Was Caligula at all apprehensive of what was in agitation?
22. Was the secret inviolably kept?
23. How was the design nearly frustrated?
24. What induced Caligula to alter his intention?
25. Relate the manner of his death.
26. Give a summary of his character?

SECT. VI.

U. C. 794.—A. D. 42.

2. Imbecil'ity, *s.* weakness of mind.
4. Obliv'ion, *s.* forgetfulness.
6. Intes'tine, *a.* internal.
11. Commem'orate, *v.* to keep in remembrance, to celebrate.
16. Progen'itors, *s.* forefathers, ancestors in a direct line.
18. Dejec'tion, *s.* sadness.
21. Par'amour, *s.* lover, favourite.

1. As soon as the death of Calig'ula was made public, it produced the greatest confusion. The conspirators, who only aimed at destroying a tyrant, without attending to the appointment of a successor, had all sought safety by retiring to private places. 2. Some soldiers happening to wander about the palace, discovered Clau'dius, Calig'ula's uncle, lurking in a secret place where he had hid himself. Of this person, who had hitherto been despised for his *imbecility*, they resolved to make an emperor: and accordingly they carried him upon their shoulders to the camp, where they proclaimed him, at a time when he expected nothing but death.

3. Clau'dius was now fifty years old. The complicated diseases of his infancy had, in some measure, affected all the faculties of his mind as well as body, and he seemed, both in public and domestic life, incapable of conducting himself with propriety *.

4. The commencement of his reign, however, as had

* His mother, Anto'nia, used to call him a human monster; and his nephew, Calig'ula, when he had butchered many of his kindred, saved him merely for a laughing-stock. The kindest word Augus'tus gave him, was that of Misel'lus, (poor wretch.) This example was followed by others. If he happened to come to table when the guests had taken their places, no one shewed him the least civility; and when he slept, as he sometimes did after meals, they would divert themselves by throwing the stones of fruit at him, or by wakening him with the blow of a rod or whip.

been the case with all the bad emperors, gave the most promising hopes. It began by an act of *oblivion* for all former words and actions, and by disannulling all the cruel edicts of Calig'ula. 5. He shewed himself more moderate than his predecessors with regard to titles and honours. He forbade all persons, under severe penalties, to sacrifice to him, as they had done to Calig'ula. He was assiduous in hearing and examining complaints; and frequently administered justice in person with great mildness. To his solicitude for the internal advantages of the state, he added that of a watchful guardianship over the provinces. He restored Jude'a to He'rod Agrip'pa *, which Calig'ula had taken from He'rod An'tipa, his uncle, the man who had put John the Baptist to death, and who was banished by order of the present emperor †.

6. He even undertook to gratify the people by foreign conquest. The Britons, who had for nearly a hundred years, been left in quiet possession of their own island, began to seek the mediation of Rome, to quell their *intestine* commotions. 7. The principal man, who desired to subject his native country to the Roman dominion, was one Ber'icus, who persuaded the emperor to make a descent upon the island, magnifying the advantages that would attend the conquest of it. 8. In pursuance of his advice, therefore, Plau'tius, the prætor, was ordered to go into Gaul, and make preparations for this great expedition. At first, indeed, his soldiers seemed backward to embark, declaring that they were unwilling to make war beyond the limits of the world; for so they judged Britain to be. However, they were at last persuaded to

* Her'od Agrip'pa was the grandson of Her'od the Great; who, at the birth of our Saviour, caused all the infants of Bethlehem to be massacred, in hopes that he would fall in the number. Her'od Agrip'pa, to please the Jews, also persecuted the Christians; and put to death St. James the Great.

† He put to death Cher'ea, and some others of the murderers of his nephew.

go; and the Britons, under the conduct of their king Cyno'belin, were several times overthrown.

9. These successes soon after induced Clau'dius to go into Britain in person, under pretence that the natives were still seditious, and had not delivered up some Roman fugitives, who had taken shelter among them. A.D. 46. 10. However, this expedition seemed rather calculated for shew than service: the time he continued in Britain, which was in all but sixteen days, was more taken up in receiving homage, than extending his conquests*. 11. Great rejoicings were made upon his return to Rome: the senate decreed him a splendid triumph, triumphal arches were erected to his honour, and annual games instituted to *commemorate* his victories. 12. In the mean time the war was vigorously prosecuted by Plau'tius, and his lieutenant Vespasian†, who, according to Sueto'nius‡, fought thirty battles, and reduced a part of the island into the form of a Roman province. A.D. 51. 13. However, this war broke out afresh under the government of Osto'rius, who succeeded Plau'tius. The Britons, either despising him for want of experience, or hoping to gain advantages over a person newly come to command, rose up in arms, and disclaimed the Roman power. 14. The Ice'ni, who inhabited Suffolk, Norfolk, Cambridge, and Huntingdonshire; the Can'gi, in Wiltshire and Somersetshire; and

* He was, in fact so timorous and devoid of personal courage, that he never admitted any one to his presence without his being first narrowly searched; nay, even women and children were sometimes subjected to this rude investigation. This excessive timidity was taken advantage of by his wife, Messali'na, and others; who, by playing on his fears, induced him frequently to be guilty of cruelties, of which he afterwards bitterly repented.

† Vespa'sian, a native of Riti, in Italy, was of obscure origin, and rose to public honours solely through his merit.

‡ Sueto'nius, a celebrated historian, a native of Rome. He was secretary to the emperor Adrian, and an intimate friend of Pliny the younger. Of his works, his lives of the First Twelve Emperors, and part of his Treatise concerning Illustrious Grammarians, only have been preserved. (Biog. Classica.)

the Brigan'tes, in Yorkshire, &c. made a powerful resistance, though they were at length overcome; but the Silu'res, or inhabitants of South Wales, under their king Carac'tacus *, were the most formidable opponents the Roman generals had ever yet encountered. 15. This brave barbarian not only made a gallant defence, but often claimed a doubtful victory. He, with great conduct, removed the seat of war into the most inaccessible parts of the country, and for nine years kept the Romans in continual alarm.

16. Upon the approach of Osto'rius, however, Carac'tacus, finding himself obliged to come to a decisive engagement, addressed his countrymen with calm resolution; telling them, that this battle would either establish their liberty, or confirm their servitude; that they ought to remember the bravery of their ancestors, by whose valour they were delivered from taxes and tribute; and that this was the time to shew themselves equal to their *progenitors*. 17. But nothing that undisciplined valour could perform availed against the conduct of the Roman legions. After an obstinate fight, the Britons were entirely routed; the wife and daughter of Carac'tacus were taken prisoners; and he himself, seeking refuge from Cartisman'dua, queen of the Brigan'tes, was treacherously delivered up to the conquerors. 18. When he was brought to Rome, nothing could exceed the curiosity of the people to behold a man who had, for so many years, braved the power of the empire. Carac'tacus testified no marks of base *dejection*. When he was led through the streets, and observed the splendour of every object around him: "Alas!" cried he, "how is it possible, that people possessed of such magnificence at home, could think of envying Carac'tacus a humble cottage in Britain!" 19. When he was brought before the empe-

* Carac'tacus, whose true name was Cara'dog, was the son of Bran ab Clyr. (Tacitus.)

ror, while the other prisoners sued for pity with the most abject lamentations, Carac'tacus stood before the tribunal with an intrepid air, and though willing to accept of pardon, was not mean enough to sue for it. "If," cried he, "I had yielded immediately, and without opposing you, neither would my fortune have been remarkable, nor your glory memorable; you could not have been victorious; and I had been forgotten. If now, therefore, you spare my life, I shall continue a perpetual example of your clemency." Clau'dius generously pardoned him, and Osto'rius was decreed a triumph.

20. In the beginning of his reign, Clau'dius gave the highest hopes of a happy continuance; but he soon began to lessen his care for the public, and to commit to his favourites all the concerns of the empire. This prince, weak from his infancy, was little able, when called to govern, to act but under the direction of others. 21. One of his chief instructors was his wife Messali'na; whose name is become a common appellation for women of abandoned character. By her was Clau'dius urged on to commit cruelties, which he considered only as wholesome severities; while her debaucheries became every day more notorious, and exceeded what had ever been in Rome. For her crimes and enormities, however, she, together with her *paramour*, Cai'us Sil'ius, suffered that death they both had so justly deserved *.

22. Clau'dius afterwards married Agrippi'na, the

* With such astonishing boldness did Messali'na perpetrate her enormous crimes, that she compelled Sil'ius to divorce his wife, and to marry her, with all the usual solemnities, in the most public manner. For some time, the emperor, who was at Os'tia, was ignorant of this enormity; fear of Messali'na's influence over him preventing any one from mentioning it. Even when informed, after the first ebullitions of his rage had subsided, he would have pardoned his wife, had not Narcis'sus, by whom her crimes had been at length reported, caused her to be hastily dispatched. When the news of her death was brought to Clau'dius, he appeared to take no notice, and even inquired, some days after, why Messali'na did not come to supper.

daughter of his brother Germanicus, a woman of a cruel and ambitious spirit, whose sole aim being to procure the succession for Nero, her son by a former marriage, she treated Claudius with such haughtiness, that he was heard to declare, when heated with wine, that it was his fate to smart under the disorders of his wives, and to be their executioner. 23. This expression sunk deep in her mind, and engaged all her faculties to prevent the blow; she, therefore, resolved not to defer a deed which she had meditated long before, which was, to poison him. She, for some time, debated within herself in what quantity the poison should be administered; as she feared that too strong a dose would discover the treachery, while one too weak would fail of its effect. 24. At length she determined upon a poison of singular efficacy to destroy his intellects, and yet not suddenly to terminate his life; it was given among mushrooms, a dish the emperor was particularly fond of. 25. Shortly after he had eaten, he dropped down insensible; but this caused no alarm, as it was usual with him to eat till he had stupified his faculties, and been obliged to be carried from the table to his bed. 26. His constitution, however, seemed to overcome the effects of the potion; but Agrippina, resolving to make sure of him, directed a wretch of a physician, her creature, to introduce a poisoned feather into his throat, under pretence of making him vomit, and thus to dispatch him, which had its intended effect. Thus died Claudius the First, the complicated diseases of whose infancy seemed to have affected and perverted all the faculties of his mind. He was succeeded by Nero, the son of Agrippina, by her first husband. Nero had been adopted by Claudius.

Questions for Examination.

1. What happened on the death of Caligula?
2. Who was appointed his successor?
3. What was the character of Claudius?
4. How did he conduct himself?
5. By what farther acts did he distinguish his accession?
6. Did he adopt any warlike measures?
7. By whom was he persuaded to interfere?
8. Who was sent into that country, and what occurred in consequence?
9. What resolution did Claudius form?
10. Did he perform any memorable exploits?
11. Was his return celebrated?
12. Was the war in Britain now at an end?
13. Did this finish the war?
14. Who were the most formidable adversaries of the Romans?
15. How did he distinguish himself?
16. By what means did he strengthen the courage of his troops?
17. Were his efforts successful?
18. What happened on his arrival in Rome?
19. What was his behaviour before the emperor?
20. Did Claudius continue to govern well?
21. Who was the chief instigator of his cruelties?
22. Who was the second wife of Claudius, and what was her conduct towards him?
23. What was the consequence of this unguarded expression?
24. On what did she at length resolve?
25. What effect did it produce?
26. Did he recover?

SECT. VII.

U. C. 793.——A. D. 55.

3. Mounds, *s.* barriers, defences.
5. Conflagra'tion, *s.* burning, great fire.
6. O'dium, *s.* disgrace.
7. Cir'cus, *s.* an area for the celebration of races and other sports.
9. Prematu'rely, *ad.* before it was ripe for execution.
13. Auster'ities, *s.* abstemiousness, severities.
Avid'ity, *s.* eagerness.
15. Swoon, *s.* a fainting fit.
16. Vi'tal, *a.* essential to life.

1. NE'RO, though but seventeen years old, began his reign with the general approbation of mankind. He

appeared just, liberal, and humane. When a warrant for the execution of a criminal was brought to be signed, he would cry out, with compassion, "Would to heaven that I had never learned to write!"

2. But as he increased in years, his native disposition began to shew itself. The execution of his mother Agrippi'na was the first alarming instance he gave of his cruelty. After attempting to get her drowned at sea, he ordered her to be put to death in her palace; and coming to gaze upon the dead body, was heard to say, that he had never thought his mother so handsome a woman *.

3. The *mounds* of virtue being thus broken down, Ne'ro gave a loose to appetites that were not only sordid, but inhuman. There was a sort of odd contrast in his disposition; for, while he practised cruelties sufficient to make the mind shudder with horror, he was fond of those amusing arts which soften and refine the heart. He was particularly addicted, even from childhood, to music, and not totally ignorant of poetry; chariot-driving was his favourite pursuit; and all these he frequently exhibited in public.

4. Happy had it been for mankind, had he confined himself to these; and, contented with being contemptible, sought not to become formidable also. His cruelties exceeded all his other extravagancies. He seemed even

* The manner of his attempt to drown his mother was extremely singular. He caused a vessel to be constructed that, by withdrawing some bolts, would separate in the open sea, and thus give her death the appearance of a shipwreck. Agrippi'na, naturally suspicious, at first refused to go on board; but lulled into security by the artful blandishments of her son, she embarked. The attempt was made; but Agrippi'na was taken up by some fisher-boats, and conveyed to her own villa. The very great calmness of the sea prevented the possibility of its being considered as an accident. Agrippi'na, however, dissembled her suspicions, and informed the emperor of her wonderful escape. Three years after the death of his mother, he murdered his tutor Burrhus, and also his wife Octa'via, a young princess of admirable virtue and beauty, that he might marry the infamous Poppæ'a.

studious of finding out pleasures, as well as crimes, against nature. 5. A great part of the city of Rome was consumed by fire in his time, and to him most historians ascribe the *conflagration*. It is said that he stood upon a high tower, during the continuance of the flames, enjoying the sight, and singing in a theatrical manner to his harp, verses upon the burning of Troy. None were permitted to lend assistance towards extinguishing the flames; and several persons were seen setting fire to the houses, alleging that they had orders for so doing *. 6. However this be, the emperor used every art to throw the *odium* of so detestable an action from himself, and to fix it upon the Christians, who were at that time gaining ground in Rome. 7. Nothing could be more dreadful than the persecution raised against them upon this false accusation. Some were covered with the skins of wild beasts, and, in that disguise, devoured by the dogs; some were crucified, and others burnt alive. "When the day was not sufficient for their tortures, the flames, in which they perished," says Ta"citus, "served to illuminate the night;" while Ne'ro, dressed in the habit of a charioteer, regaled himself with a view of their tortures from his gardens, and entertained the people at one time with their sufferings, at another with the games of the *circus*. 8. In this persecution St. Paul was beheaded, and St. Peter was

* Of the fourteen quarters into which Rome was divided, only four remained entire. Upon the ruins of the demolished city, Ne'ro founded a palace, which he called his Golden House. It contained within its inclosure, artificial lakes, large wildernesses, spacious parks, gardens, orchards, vineyards, &c. &c. The entrance of the stately edifice was sufficiently lofty to admit a colossal statue of Ne'ro, 120 feet high. The galleries, erected on three rows of tall pillars, were each a mile in length. The palace itself was tiled with gold (probably gilding,) the walls covered with the same metal, and richly adorned with precious stones and mother of pearl; and the ceiling of one of the banqueting rooms represented the firmament beset with stars, turning about incessantly night and day, and showering sweet waters on the guests.

crucified, with his head downwards; a mode of death he chose, as being more dishonourable than that of his divine Master.

9. A conspiracy formed against Ne'ro, by Pi'so, a man of great power and integrity, which was *prematurely* discovered, opened a train of suspicions that destroyed many of the principal families in Rome. 10. The two most remarkable personages, who fell on this occasion were Sen'eca the philosopher, and Lu'can the poet, his nephew *. Ne'ro, either having real testimony, or else hating him for his virtues, sent a tribune to Sen'eca †, informing him that he was suspected as an accomplice. The tribune found the philosopher at table with Pauli'na, his wife; and informing him of his business, Sen'eca replied, without emotion, that his welfare depended upon no man; that he had never been accustomed to indulge the errors of the emperor, and would not do it now. 11. When this answer was brought to Ne'ro, he demanded whether Sen'eca seemed afraid to die; the tribune replying that he did not appear in the least terrified: "Then go to him again," cried the emperor, "and give him my orders to die." Accordingly, he sent a centurion to

* Epicha'ris, a woman of infamous character, who, by some means, was implicated in the conspiracy, deserves to be mentioned as another instance of female fortitude. She was condemned to the torture; but the united force of racks, stripes, and fire, could not extort a word from her. The next day, as she was conducted in a chair to be tortured afresh (for her members were so mangled and disjointed, that she could not stand,) she hung herself with her girdle, to the top of the chair, voluntarily suspending the whole weight of her body on the noose: thus a woman, once a slave, cheerfully endured the most exquisite tortures, and even death, to save persons she scarcely knew, and from whom she had never received any favours.

† Sen'eca, a celebrated philosopher, and son of Sen'eca the orator; was born at Corduba, in Spain, A.D. 8. This town was also the birth-place of his father. (Strabo and Lucan.) Corduba was founded by the Romans, B.C. 150: and in process of time it became the residence of the Moorish kings, and where they continued till their expulsion into Africa. It was in the vicinity of this city that Cæsar fought his last battle with the sons of Pompey.

Sen'eca, signifying that it was the emperor's pleasure that he should die. Sen'eca seemed no way discomposed, but displayed the fortitude of conscious integrity. He endeavoured to console his wife, and exhort her to a life of persevering virtue. 12. She seemed resolved however not to survive him, and pressed her request to die with him so earnestly, that Sen'eca, who had long looked upon death as a benefit, at last gave his consent; and the veins of both their arms were opened at the same time. 13. As Sen'eca was old, and much enfeebled by the *austerities* of his life, the blood flowed but slowly; so that he caused the veins of his legs and thighs to be opened also. His pains were long and violent, but they were not capable of repressing his fortitude or his eloquence. He dictated a discourse to two secretaries, which was read with great *avidity* after his death, but which has since perished in the lapse of time. 14. His agonies being now drawn out to a great length, he at last demanded poison from his physician; but this also failed of its effect, his body being already exhausted, and incapable of exciting its operation. He was from this carried into a warm bath, which only served to prolong his sufferings; at length therefore he was put in a stove, the vapour of which quickly dispatched him. 15. In the mean time his wife Pauli'na, having fallen into a *swoon* with the loss of blood, had her arms bound up by her domestics, and by this means survived her husband for some years: but, by her conduct during the rest of her life, she seemed never to forget her affection and his example.

16. The death of Lu'can * was not less remarkable. After he had lost a great quantity of blood from the veins of his arms, perceiving his hands and legs already dead,

* Lu'can, a celebrated Latin poet, was born about A. D. 39. His father was Annæ'as Me'la, brother to Sen'eca. He died by suffocation in a hot bath, A. D. 65. His Pharsa'lia is an epic poem of merit, &c. though harsh and irregular.

while the *vital* parts still continued warm and vigorous, he called to mind the description in his own poem of the Pharsa'lia, of a person dying in similar circumstances. He expired while he was repeating that beautiful passage:

" ——————— Nec, sicut vulnere sanguis
" Emicuit lentus: Ruptis cadit undique venis,
" ——————— Pars ultima trunci
" Tradidit in letum vacuos vitalibus artus
" At tumidus quâ pulmo jacet, quâ viscera fervent,
" Hæserunt ibi fata diu: Luctataque multum
" Hac eum parte, viri vix omnia membra tuleruut."

No single wound the gaping rupture seems,
Where trickling crimson wells in slender streams;
But from an op'ning horrible and wide,
A thousand vessels pour the bursting tide;
Soon from the lower parts the spirits fled,
And motionless th' exhausted limbs lay dead;
Not so the nobler regions, where the heart
And heaving lungs their vital powers exert:
There, lingering, late and long conflicting, life
Rose against fate, and still maintained the strife:
Driven out at length, unwillingly and slow,
She left her mortal house, and sought the shades below.
Rowe, b. iii. v. 945.

17. The death of C. Petro'nius *, about this time, is too U. C. 817. A. D. 66. remarkable to be passed over in silence. This person, whom some historians suppose to be the author of the piece entitled T. Petro'nii Arbi'tri Saty'ricon, was an Epicu'rean, both in principle and practice. In a court like that of Ne'ro, he was esteemed for his refinements in luxury, and became the emperor's tutor in this exquisite art. Accused of being privy to

* Petro'nius, the Latin poet, was born at Marseilles, a maritime city in France. In this city was a temple, dedicated to Apollo; and an university, remarkable for the frugality and civil behaviour of the students, to which the Romans sent their children to be educated, it being styled by Cicero the Athens of Gaul; and by Pliny the mistress of education. Petro'nius's Satire against Ne'ro is extremely well written, though very licentious. His other works are, a Poem on the Civil War between Cæsar and Pompey; on the Education of the Roman Youth; on the Corruption of Eloquence, and on the Cause of the Decline of the Arts, &c. (Biog. Classica.)

Piso's conspiracy, he was committed to prison. Petro'nius, who could not endure the anxiety of suspense, resolved upon putting himself to death, by causing his veins to be opened *. 19. In the mean time, he conversed with his friends, not upon maxims of philosophy, or grave subjects, but upon such topics as had amused his gayest revels. He listened while they recited the lightest poems; and by no action, no word, no circumstance, shewed the perplexity of a dying person. 20. Shortly after him, Numi'cius Thermus, Bare'a Soranus, and Pe'tus Thra'sea †, were put to death. The valiant Cor'bulo ‡, who had gained Nero so many victories over the Parthians, followed next. Nor did the empress Poppæ'a herself escape, whom he kicked when she was pregnant, by which she miscarried, and died. 21. At length human nature grew weary of bearing her persecutor; and the whole world seemed to rouse, as if by common consent, to rid the earth of a monster.

Questions for Examination.

1. What was Nero's conduct at the commencement of his reign?
2. Did this good disposition continue?
3. What was there peculiar in his disposition?
4. Were these his greatest faults?
5. Of what heinous crime is he accused?
6. On whom was the odium of this barbarous action cast?
7. What was the consequence to these unhappy men?

---

* So little eagerness did he shew to put an end to his agonies, that, after his veins were cut, he directed them to be closed again, and then opened at intervals, shewing no sense of pain, nor apprehension of death.

† The most virtuous man of his time.

‡ Cor'bulo, the celebrated Roman general, subdued the Parthians, and also the Arme'nians, whose capital he destroyed, and placed Tigra'nes on the throne (of Arme'nia;) Ne'ro, jealous of his reputation, directed him to be murdered; Cor'bulo, hearing of it, fell upon his sword, A.D. 67. (Tacitus.)

8. What eminent persons suffered on this occasion?
9. Did not these cruelties give birth to conspiracies?
10. What persons of note suffered in consequence?
11. Did this defence save his life?
12. Were his exhortations effectual?
13. Relate the circumstances of Seneca's death?
14. Were not other means resorted to?
15. Did not Paulina survive him?
16. Describe the death of Lucan.
17. What other victim of Nero's cruelty deserves mention?
18. What brought him into danger?
19. How did he meet death?
20. Were not other illustrious persons sacrificed?
21. Were these cruelties committed with impunity?

SECT. VIII.

3. Va'ses, *s.* goblets, ornamental vessels.
7. Im'precating, *part.* desiring with curses.
14. Innox'ious, *a.* no longer hurtful.
17. Exche'quer, *s.* a modern name for the treasury.
28. Contam'inated, *part.* defiled, polluted.
31. Animos'ity, *s.* hatred.
Precipita'tion, *s.* unwise haste.

1. SER'VIUS GALBA *, at that time governor of Spain, was remarkable for his wisdom in peace, and his courage in war; but as a display of talents under corrupt princes is dangerous, he, for some years, had seemed to court obscurity, and an inactive life. 2. Willing, however, to rid his country of the monster that now occupied the throne, he accepted the invitation of Vin'dex, to march with an army towards Rome. 3. From the moment he declared against Ne'ro, the tyrant considered himself as fallen. He received the account as he was at supper, and instantly struck with terror, overturned the

* Galba (Ser'vius Sulpi'cius,) was descended from the ancient family of Sulpi'tii. He was successively prætor, proconsul of Africa, and general of the Roman armies in Germany and Spain.

table with his foot, breaking two crystal *vases* of immense value. He fell into a swoon; and on his recovery, tore his clothes and struck his head, crying out, "that he was utterly undone." 4. He now called for the assistance of Locus'ta, a woman famous in the art of poisoning, to furnish him with the means of death; but being prevented in this, and the revolt becoming general, he went in person from house to house, but the doors were shut against him. Being reduced to a state of desperation, he desired that one of his favourite gladiators* might dispatch him; but even in this request not one would obey. "Alas," cried he, "have I neither friend nor enemy!" then running desperately forth, he seemed resolved to plunge headlong into the Ti'ber. 5. But his courage failed him, he made a sudden stop, as if willing to recollect his reason: and asked for some secret place, where he might reassume his courage, and meet death with becoming fortitude. 6. In this distress, Pha'on, one of his freedmen, offered him his country-house, about four miles distant, where he might for some time remain concealed. Ne'ro accepted the offer; and, with his head covered, hiding his face with his handkerchief, he mounted on horseback, attended by four of his domestics, of whom the wretched Spo'rus† was one. 7. His journey, though short, was crowded with adventures. An earthquake gave him the first alarm. The lightning from heaven next flashed in his face. Round him he heard nothing but confused noises from the camp, and the cries of the soldiers, *imprecating* a thousand evils upon his head. 8. A traveller, meeting him on the way, cried, "Those men are in pursuit of Ne'ro." Another asked

* A sword-player, a kind of prize-fighter.

† Spo'rus was the companion and sharer of his unnatural pleasures. Among other abominable follies, he publicly married this wretch, kept him in his palace, and carried him about with him in the same litter, in the attire of an empress.

him if there was any news of Ne'ro in the city. His horse taking fright at a dead body that lay near the road, he dropped his handkerchief; when a soldier addressing him by name, he quitted his horse, and forsaking the highway, entered a thicket that led towards the back part of Pha'on's house, making the best of his way among the reeds and brambles, with which the place was overgrown. 9. During this interval, the senate, finding the Præto'rian guards had taken part with Gal'ba, declared him emperor, and condemned Ne'ro to die, *mo'ra majo'rum;* that is, according to the rigour of the ancient laws. 10. When he was told of the resolution of the senate, he asked what was meant by being punished according to the rigour of the ancient laws? To this it was answered, that the criminal was to be stripped naked, his head was to be fixed in a pillory, and in that posture he was to be scourged to death. 11. Ne'ro was so terrified at this, that he seized two poniards, which he had brought with him; after examining their points, he returned them, however, to their sheaths, pretending that the fatal moment was not yet arrived. 12. He then desired Spo'rus to begin the lamentations which were used at funerals; he next entreated that some of his attendants would die, to give him courage by his example: and afterwards began to reproach his own cowardice, crying out, "Does this become Ne'ro? Is this trifling well-timed? No! —let me be courageous!" In fact, he had no time to spare; for the soldiers, who had been sent in pursuit of him, were just then approaching the house. 13. Upon hearing therefore the sound of the horses' feet, he set a dagger to his throat, with which, by the assistance of Epaphrod'itus, his freedman and secretary, he gave himself a mortal wound *. 14. However, he was not yet

* For this assistance, Epaphrod'itus afterwards paid dear, being put to death by Domit'ian, for imbruing his hands in the blood of the Cæsars.

dead, when one of the centurions entering the room, and pretending that he came to his relief, attempted to stop the blood with his cloak. But Nero, regarding him with a stern countenance, said, "It is now too late! Is this your fidelity?" Upon which, with his eyes fixed and frightfully staring, he expired; exhibiting, even after death, a ghastly spectacle of *innoxious* tyranny. 15. He reigned thirteen years, seven months, and twenty-eight days, and died in the thirty-second year of his age.

16. Gal'ba was seventy-two years old when he was declared emperor, and was then in Spain with his legions. He soon found that his being raised to the throne was but an inlet to new disquietudes. { U. C. 820. / A. D. 89. } 17. He seemed to have three objects in view: to curb the insolence of the soldiers; to punish those vices which had risen to an enormous height in the last reign; and to replenish the *exchequer*, which had been drained by the prodigality of his predecessors. 18. However, permitting himself to be governed by favourites, he at one time shewed himself severe and frugal; at another, remiss and prodigal; condemning some illustrious persons without any hearing; and pardoning others, though guilty. In consequence of this, seditions were kindled, and factions promoted.

19. Gal'ba was sensible that, besides his age, his want of an heir rendered him less respected: he resolved, therefore, to adopt a person, whose virtues might deserve such advancement, and protect his declining age from danger; but his favourites wished to give him an heir of their own choosing; so that there arose a great contention among them upon this occasion. 20. Otho * made

* O'tho, born at Rome, A. D. 32, was descended from the ancient kings of Tuscany. Ne'ro, whose companion he was in all his debaucheries, had elevated him to the highest offices in the state. After Ne'ro's death, he endeavoured to attach himself to Gal'ba, but that emperor having made up his mind to

earnest application for himself, alleging the great services he had done the emperor, as being the first man of note who came to his assistance, when he had declared against Ne'ro. 21. However Gal'ba, being fully resolved to consult the public good alone, rejected his suit; and, on a day appointed, ordered Pi'so Licia'nus to attend him. The character given by historians of Pi'so is, that he was every way worthy of the honour designed him. 22. Taking this youth by the hand, Gal'ba adopted him to succeed in the empire, giving him the most wholesome lessons for guiding his future conduct. Piso shewed that he was highly deserving this distinction; in all his deportment there appeared such modesty, firmness, and equality of mind, as bespoke him rather capable of discharging, than ambitious of obtaining his present dignity. 23. But the army and the senate did not seem equally disinterested upon this occasion; they had been so long used to bribery and corruption, that they could now bear no emperor who was not in a capacity of satisfying their avarice. The adoption, therefore, of Piso, was coldly received: for his virtues were no recommendation in a time of universal depravity.

24. O'tho, who had long been a favourite of Gal'ba, and hoped to be adopted a successor in the empire, finding himself disappointed, and stimulated by the immense load of debt which he had contracted by his riotous way of living, resolved upon obtaining the empire by force, since he could not do it by peaceable succession. Having corrupted the fidelity of the army, he stole secretly from the emperor while he was sacrificing; and, assembling the soldiers, he, in a short speech, urged the cruelties and the avarice of Gal'ba. 25. Finding his in-

---

appoint Pi'so his heir, O'tho excited an insurrection, murdered Gal'ba and Pi'so, and ascended the throne, A. D. 69, but was opposed by Vitel'lius, who was supported by the army which he then commanded in Germany. (Crevier.)

vectives received with universal shouts by the army, he entirely threw off the mask, and avowed his intention of dethroning him. The soldiers, being ripe for sedition, immediately seconded his views, and taking O'tho upon their shoulders, declared him emperor; and to strike the citizens with terror, carried him, with their swords drawn, into the camp.

26. Soon after, finding Gal'ba in some measure deserted by his adherents, the soldiers rushed in upon him, trampling the crowds of people that then filled the forum under foot. 27. Gal'ba seeing them approach, seemed to recollect all his former fortitude; and bending his head forward, bid the assassins strike it off, if it were for the good of the people. 28. The command was quickly obeyed. The soldier who struck it off, stuck it upon the point of a lance, and contemptuously carried it round the camp; his body remaining unburied in the streets, till it was interred by one of his slaves. His short reign of seven months, was as illustrious by his own virtues, as it was *contaminated* by the vices of his favourites, who shared in his downfall.

29. O'tho who was now elected emperor, began his reign by a signal instance of clemency, in pardoning Ma'rius Cel'sus, who had been highly favoured by Gal'ba; and not content with barely forgiving, he advanced him to the highest honours, asserting, that "fidelity deserved every reward."

30. In the mean time, the legions in Lower Germany having been purchased by the large gifts and specious promises of Vitel'lius * their general, were at length induced to proclaim him emperor: and regardless of the senate, they declared that they had an equal right to appoint to that high station, with the cohorts at Rome.

---

* Au'lus Vitel'lius was descended from one of the most illustrious families of Rome, and brought up in the vicious court of Tiberius at Capreæ.

31. O'tho departed from Rome with all haste to give Vitel'lius battle. The army of Vitel'lius, which consisted of seventy thousand men, was commanded by his generals Va'lens and Cecin'na, he himself remaining in Gaul, in order to bring up the rest of his forces. Both sides hastened to meet each other with so much *animosity* and *precipitation*, that three considerable battles were fought in the space of three days; in all of which, O'tho and the Romans had the advantage. 32. These successes, however, were but of short continuance, for Va'lens and Cecin'na, who had hitherto acted separately, joining their forces, and strengthening their armies with fresh supplies, resolved to come to a general engagement. O'tho's forces were partially overthrown at Bedria'cum, a village near Cremo'na, in Lombardy, in Italy; and though he had still numerous armies at his devotion, he killed himself shortly after, having reigned three months and five days *, and was succeeded by Vitel'lius.

Questions for Examination.

1. What was the character of Sergius Galba?
2. Did he at length emerge from this obscurity?
3. Was he formidable to Nero?
4. What was the conduct of Nero on this emergency?
5. Did he actually do so?
6. Was his request complied with?
7. What befel him by the way
8. What farther happened?
9. What occurred in the interval?
10. How did Nero receive this intelligence?

---

* Although O'tho appears to have been in the early part of his life, a dissipated character, his death was truly heroic; as far as the mistaken principles of those times can render suicide excusable. His soldiers were entirely devoted to him. He had numerous garrisons in Bedria'cum and Placen'tia; the legions from Dalma'tia, Moe'tia and Panno'nia, and the Asiat'ic, Syr'ian, and Egyp'tian forces, were readily advancing to his assistance; yet he nobly resolved to die, to save his country from the horrors of a civil war.

11. Did he resolve to await this terrible punishment?
12. How did he contrive to put off the fatal moment?
13. What at length put an end to this irresolution?
14. Was he dead when the soldiers arrived?
15. How long did he reign?
16. What was the age of Galba on his accession?
17. What were his principal views?
18. Was his conduct regular and consistent?
19. What important measures did he adopt?
20. Who was the chief candidate on the occasion?
21. Was he chosen?
22. Was Piso the chosen successor, and what was his character?
23. Was this adoption generally approved?
24. Did not Otho attempt to set him aside?
25. Was he favourably received?
26. Did Galba suppress this rebellion?
27. What was his behaviour on the occasion?
28. Was this command obeyed, and what treatment did Galba experience?
29. How did Otho commence his reign?
30. Did he reign without a rival?
31. What was the consequence of this rivalship?
32. Was Otho finally successful?

SECT. IX.

A. D. 70.

4. Unan'imously, *ad.* with one accord.
10. Fluctua'tion, *s.* change, uncertainty.
Prematu're, *a.* too early.
19. Infat'uated, *part.* deprived of reason.
Impi'eties, *s.* wickednesses, irreverence to the Supreme Being.
21. Impu'nity, *s.* freedom from punishment.
22. Incen'diary, *s.* a promoter of war and devastation (it literally means one who sets fire to buildings.)
Fanat'ic, *s.* an enthusiast, one zealous in a wrong cause.
26. Ral'lying, *part.* returning to the combat.
27. Pre'cipices, *s.* steep rocky declivities.
30. Intim'idate, *v.* to alarm, to frighten.
32. Delu'ded, *v.* cheated, deceived.
36. Site, *s.* situation, place whereon any buildings stood.

1. VITEL'LIUS was declared emperor by the senate, and received the marks of distinction which were now accustomed to follow the appointments of the strongest side.

2. Upon his arrival at Rome, he entered the city, not as a place he came to govern with justice, but as a town that was become his own by the laws of conquest.

3. Vitel'lius soon gave himself up to all kinds of luxury and profuseness; but gluttony was so much his favourite vice, that he brought himself to a habit of vomiting, in order to be able to renew his meals at pleasure. His entertainments, seldom indeed at his own cost, were prodigiously expensive. He frequently invited himself to the tables of his subjects; in the same day breakfasting with one, dining with another, and supping with a third. 4. By such vices, and by enormous cruelties, he became a burden to himself, and odious to all mankind. Having become insupportable to the inhabitants of Rome, the legions of the East *unanimously* resolved to make Vespa'sian * emperor.

5. During the preparations against him, Vitel'lius, though buried in sloth and luxury, resolved to make an effort to defend the empire; and his chief commanders, Va'lens and Cecin'na, were ordered to make all possible preparations to resist the invaders. 6. The first army that entered Italy with a hostile intention, was under the com-

* Vespa'sian was by no means of an illustrious family, his father being only a collector of the tax called quadragesima. Nor was his conduct, previous to his accession to the imperial throne, calculated to do him honour, as he was guilty of the meanest flattery and servility to ingratiate himself with men in power. Yet as a general, he was indefatigable in his duties, and of unquestionable valour; abstemious in his diet, and plain in his dress. On attaining to the imperial dignity, he appears to have laid aside every vice except avarice. His elevation neither induced him to assume arrogant and lofty airs, nor to neglect those friends who had shewn themselves deserving of his favour. Desirous of convincing the world that he owed his good fortune to merit alone, he disdained to court the soldiers by largesses: in short he displayed a nobleness of disposition worthy of the most illustrious birth, and befitting the exalted station to which he had arrived. This prince was the founder of the noble amphitheatre, called the coliseum which remains to this day. Twelve thousand Jewish captives were employed in its erection, and it was capable of containing 80,000 spectators seated, and 20,000 standing. It is now in ruins.

mand of Anto'nius Pri'mus, who was met by Cecin'na, near Cremo'na. A battle was expected to ensue: but a negociation taking place, Cecin'na was prevailed upon to change sides, and declared for Vespa'sian *. His army, however, quickly repented of what they had done: and, imprisoning their general, attacked Anto'nius, though without a leader. The engagement continued the whole night; and in the morning, after a short repast, both armies engaged a second time; when the soldiers of Anto'nius saluting the rising sun, according to custom, the Vitel'lians supposed that they had received new reinforcements, and betook themselves to flight with the loss of thirty thousand men.

8. In the mean time, Vitel'lius made offers to Vespa'sian of resigning the empire in his favour, provided his life were spared, and a sufficient revenue allotted for his support. In order to enforce this proposal, he issued from his palace in deep mourning, with all his domestics weeping round him. 9. He then went to offer the sword of justice to Cecil'ius, the consul: which he refusing, the abject emperor prepared to lay down the ensigns of empire in the Temple of Concord; but being interrupted by some who cried out, that he himself was concord, he resolved upon so weak an encouragement, still to maintain his power, and immediately prepared for his defence.

10. During this *fluctuation* of councils, one Sabi'nus, who had advised Vitel'lius to resign, perceiving his desperate situation, resolved, by a bold step, to favour Vespa'sian; and accordingly seized upon the capitol. But he was *premature* in his attempt; for the soldiers of Vitel'lius attacked him with great fury; and prevailing by their numbers, soon laid that beautiful building in ashes. 11. During this dreadful conflagration, Vitel'lius was feasting in the palace of Tibe'rius, and beheld all the

* Vespa'sian was now conducting the war in Jude'a, in Asia.

horrors of the assault with satisfaction. 12. Sabi'nus was taken prisoner, and shortly after executed by the emperor's command. Young Domi"tian, his nephew, who was afterwards emperor, escaped by flight, in the habit of a priest; and the rest, who survived the fire, were put to the sword.

13. But Anto'nius, Vespa'sian's commander, being arrived before the walls of the city, the forces of Vitel'lius resolved upon defending it to the utmost extremity. It was attacked with fury; while the army within, sallying out upon the besiegers, defended it with equal obstinacy. The battle lasted the whole day; the besieged were driven back into the city, and a dreadful slaughter made of them in the streets, which they vainly attempted to defend.

14. Vitel'lius was soon found hidden in an obscure corner, whence he was taken by a party of the conquering soldiers. Still, however, desirous of adding a few hours to his miserable life, he begged to be kept in prison till the arrival of Vespa'sian at Rome, pretending that he had secrets of importance to discover. 15. But his entreaties were vain; the soldiers, binding his hands behind him, and throwing a halter round his neck, led him along, half naked, into the public forum, loading him with all the bitter reproaches their malice could suggest, or his cruelty might deserve. At length, being come to the place of punishment, they put him to death with blows: and then dragging the dead body through the streets with a hook, they threw it with all possible ignominy, into the river Tiber.

16. Vespa'sian was now declared emperor, by the una-
A.D. 79. nimous consent both of the senate and the army; and dignified with all those titles which now followed rather the power than the merit of those who were appointed to govern. 17. Having continued some months at Alexan'dria, in Egypt, where it is said he cured a blind

man and a cripple by touching them, he set out for Rome. Giving his son Ti'tus the command of the army that was to lay siege to Jerusalem*, he himself went forward, and was met many miles from Rome by all the senate, and the inhabitants, who gave the sincerest testimony of their joy, in having an emperor of such great and experienced virtue. 18. Nor did he in the least disappoint their expectations; as he shewed himself equally assiduous in rewarding merit and pardoning his adversaries; in reforming the manners of the citizens, and setting them the best example in his own.

19. In the mean time, Ti'tus carried on the war against the Jews with vigour. This obstinate and *infatuated* people had long resolved to resist the Roman power, vainly hoping to find protection from heaven, which their *impieties* had utterly offended. 20. Their own historian † represents them as arrived at the highest pitch of iniquity; while famines, earthquakes, and prodigies, all conspired to forebode their approaching ruin. 21. Nor was it sufficient that heaven and earth seemed combined against them; they had the most bitter dissensions among themselves, and were divided into two parties, who robbed and destroyed each other with *impunity*: constantly pillaging, yet boasting their zeal for the religion of their ancestors.

22. At the head of one of these parties was an *incendiary*, whose name was John. This *fanatic* affected sovereign power, and filled the whole city of Jeru'salem, and all the towns around, with tumult and pillage. In a short time a new faction arose, headed by one Si'mon, who gathering together multitudes of robbers and murderers, who had fled to the mountains, attacked many cities and towns, and reduced all Idume'a ‡ under his

* Jeru'salem, the capital of Jude'a, in A'sia. It has also had the several names of Je'bus, Sa'lem, Sol'yma, &c.

† Jose'phus.

‡ Idume'a is the same as E'dom. It was called Idume'a by

power. 23. Jeru'salem, at length, became the theatre in which these two demagogues exercised their mutual animosity; John was possessed of the temple, while Si'mon was admitted into the city; both equally enraged against each other; while slaughter and devastation were the consequence of their pretensions. Thus did a city, formerly celebrated for peace and unity, become the seat of tumult and confusion.

24. In this miserable situation, Ti'tus began his operations, within six furlongs of Jeru'salem, during the feast of the passover, when the place was filled with an infinite multitude of people, who had come from all parts to celebrate that great solemnity. 25. The approach of the Romans produced a temporary reconciliation between the contending factions within the city; so that they unanimously resolved to oppose the common enemy, and decide their domestic quarrels at a more convenient season. 26. Their first sally, which was made with much fury and resolution, put the besiegers into great disorder, and obliged them to abandon their camp, and fly to the mountains: however, *rallying* immediately after, the Jews were forced back into the city, while Ti'tus, in person, shewed surprising instances of valour and conduct.

27. The city was strongly fortified with three walls on every side, except where it was fenced by *precipices*. Ti'tus began by battering down the outward wall, which, after much fatigue and danger, he effected; in the mean time, shewing the greatest clemency to the Jews, and offering them repeated assurances of pardon. Five days after the commencement of the siege, Ti'tus broke through the second wall; and though driven back by the besieged,

---

the Greeks, and E'dom by Mo'ses. It was a district of Ara'bia Petræ'a, on the south of Jude'a. Its boundaries were different at different periods. When the Is'raelites passed through, on their way from Egypt to Ca'naan, this country appears to have been less than in the time of Solomon, when it extended to the Red Sea. (1 Kings ix. 26.).

he recovered his ground, and made preparations for battering the third wall, which was their last defence. 28. But first he sent Jose'phus their countryman into the city, to exhort them to yield; who using all his eloquence to persuade them, was answered only with scoffs and reproaches. 29. The siege was now therefore carried on with greater vigour than before; formidable engines for throwing darts and stones were constructed, and as quickly destroyed by the enemy. At length it was resolved in council to surround the whole city with a trench, and thus prevent all relief and succours from abroad. 30. This, which was quickly executed, seemed no way to *intimidate* the Jews. Though famine, and pestilence its necessary attendant, began now to make the most horrid ravages among them, yet this desperate people still resolved to hold out. 31. Ti'tus now cut down all the woods within a considerable distance of the city; and, causing more batteries to be raised, he at length beat down the wall, and in five days entered the citadel by force. 32. The Jews however continued to deceive themselves with absurd expectations, while many false prophets *deluded* the multitude, by declaring that they should soon have assistance from God. The heat of the battle was now gathered round the inner wall of the temple, while the defendants desperately combated from the top. 33. Ti'tus was desirous of saving this beautiful structure; but a soldier casting a brand into some adjacent buildings, the fire communicated to the temple; and notwithstanding the utmost endeavours on both sides, the whole edifice was quickly consumed. 34. The sight of the temple in ruins effectually served to damp the ardour of the Jews. They now began to suppose that heaven had forsaken them, while their cries and lamentations echoed from the adjacent mountains. Even those who were almost expiring, lifted up their dying eyes to bewail the loss of their temple, which they valued more than life

itself. 35. The most resolute, however, still endeavoured to defend the upper and stronger part of the city, named Sion; but Ti'tus, with his battering engines, soon made himself entire master of the place. 36. John and Si'mon were taken from the vaults where they had concealed themselves; the former was condemned to perpetual imprisonment, and the latter reserved to grace the conqueror's triumph. The greatest part of the populace were put to the sword; and the city was, after a six months siege, entirely razed, and its *site* ploughed up; so that, according to our Saviour's prophecy, not one stone remained upon another. Those who perished in this siege, amounted to above a million; the captives to almost a hundred thousand *.

Questions for Examination.

1. Who succeeded Otho?
2. In what way did he assume the sovereignty?
3. How did he conduct himself in his new station?
4. What were the consequences of this conduct?
5. Did Vitellius tamely submit to his rival?
6. Who first commenced hostilities?
7. What followed?
8. What was the conduct of Vitellius on this occasion?
9. What farther measures did he adopt?
10. Were the friends of Vespasian idle at this juncture?
11. How was Vitellius engaged at the time of this disaster?
12. What became of Sabinus?
13. What was the consequence of this success on the part of Vitellius?
14. What became of the fallen emperor?
15. Was his request granted?
16. Did Vespasian quietly succeed?
17. What were his first measures?
18. Were they disappointed in their expectations?
19. What was the state of the Jewish war?

---

* The destruction of Jeru'salem happened in the year of our Lord 89.

20. What was the state of the Jewish nation?
21. Were they united among themselves?
22. Who were at the head of these factions?
23. What was the chief theatre of their enormities?
24. At what remarkable season did Titus commence his attack?
25. What effect did this attack produce?
26. Did the Jews bravely defend their city?
27. What progress did Titus make in the siege?
28. Did he make no attempt to persuade the Jews to surrender?
29. What measures were then adopted?
30. Did these formidable measures terrify the Jews?
31. By what means did Titus gain the city?
32. Was all opposition now at an end?
33. Was the temple destroyed?
34. What effect did this sad event produce?
35. Were there none who attempted farther resistance?
36. What became of the inhabitants and their chiefs?

SECT. X.

3. Profu'sion, *s.* abundance.
5. Rapa"city, *s.* greediness, seizing by violence.
   Im'post, *s.* a tax.
9. Brid'ling, *part.* restraining.
10. Discard'ed, *v.* dismissed.
14. Court'esy, *s.* civility, politeness.
15. Erup'tion, *s.* a breaking forth with violence.
16. Refrac'tory, *s.* obstinate, disobedient.
26. Ostenta'tion, *s.* shew, magnificence.
27. Malev'olence, *s.* ill-will, spite, hatred.

Note.—Exche"quer, *s.* the treasury.

1. UPON the taking of Jeru'salem, the soldiers would have crowned Ti'tus as conqueror; but he modestly refused the honour, alleging, that he was only an instrument in the hand of heaven, that manifestly declared its wrath against the Jews. 2. At Rome however all men's mouths were filled with the praises of the conqueror, who had not only shewed himself an excellent general, but a courageous combatant. His return therefore in triumph, with Vespa'sian his father, was marked with all the mag-

nificence and joy in the power of men to express. All things that were esteemed valuable or beautiful were brought to adorn this great occasion. 3. Among the rich spoils were exposed vast quantities of gold, taken out of the temple; but the Book of the Holy Law was not the least remarkable among the magnificent *profusion*. 4. This was the first time that ever Rome saw the father and the son triumph together. A triumphal arch was erected upon this occasion, on which were described the victories of Ti'tus over the Jews; and it remains almost entire to this day.

5. Few emperors have received a better character from historians than Vespa'sian *; yet his numerous acts of generosity and magnificence could not preserve his character from the imputation of *rapacity* and avarice *; for it is well known that he descended to some very unusual and dishonorable *imposts*.

6. Having reigned ten years, beloved by his subjects and deserving their affection, he was seized with an indisposition at Campa'nia, which he perceived would be fatal. 7. Finding his end approaching, he exerted himself, and cried out, "An emperor ought to die standing;" whereupon, raising himself upon his feet, he expired in the arms of those who sustained him.

---

* Even that avarice, with which he stands charged, has found its advocates, who assert that it did not arise from a sordid disposition, but from the emptiness of the *exchequer*, and the necessities of the state, for he always employed his revenues to great and noble purposes, and expended them with uncommon generosity. His abhorrence of effeminacy was so great, that on a certain nobleman's coming to return him thanks for his appointment to a considerable command, and smelling fragrantly of rich oils and perfumes, the emperor sternly told him, that he had rather he had smelt of garlic, and immediately deprived him of his commission. He was of so merciful a disposition that it was with great reluctance he adjudged the most atrocious criminals to death. He was affable to all, and so far from attempting to conceal the meanness of his origin, that he frequently discoursed of it himself.

8. Ti'tus was joyfully received as emperor *, and began his reign with the practice of every virtue that became a sovereign and a man. During the life of his father, there had been many imputations against him, both for cruelty, lust, and prodigality; but upon his exaltation to the throne, he seemed to have entirely taken leave of his former vices, and became an example of the greatest moderation and humanity. 9. His first step towards gaining the affections of his subjects, was the moderating of his passions, and *bridling* his inclination. 10. He had long loved Berni'ce, sister to Agrip'pa, king of Jude'a, a woman of the greatest beauty, and refined allurements; but knowing that the connection was entirely disagreeable to the people of Rome, he gained the victory over his affections, and sent her away, notwithstanding their mutual passion, and the arts she used to induce him to change his resolution. He next *discarded* those who had been the ministers of his pleasures, though he had formerly taken great pains in the selection. 11. This moderation, added to his justice and generosity, procured him the love of all good men, and the appellation of the *Delight of Mankind;* which all his actions seemed calculated to insure. { A. D. 79.

12. Ti'tus took particular care to punish all informers, false witnesses, and promoters of dissension. Wretches who had their rise in the licentiousness and *impunity* of former reigns, were now become so numerous, that their crimes called loudly for punishment. 13. Of these he daily made public examples; condemning them to be scourged in the public streets, dragged through the theatre, and then banished into the uninhabited parts of the empire, or sold as slaves. 14. His *courtesy* and readiness to do good have been celebrated even by Christian writers;

* This is denied by Sueto'nius, who affirms that his former profligate life gave rise to gloomy apprehensions on his accession, but they were soon dissipated by the correctness of his subsequent conduct.

his principal rule being, not to send away a petitioner dissatisfied. One night, recollecting that he had done nothing beneficial to mankind during the day, he cried out, "I have lost a day!" A sentence too remarkable not to be had in remembrance.

15. In the first year of his reign, an *eruption* of Mount Vesu'vius overwhelmed many towns *, throwing its ashes into countries more than a hundred miles distant. Upon this memorable occasion, Pliny, the naturalist, lost his life; being impelled by too eager a curiosity to observe the eruption, he was suffocated in the flames. 16. This and other disasters were, in some measure, counterbalanced by the successes in Britain, under Agric'ola. This excellent general, having been sent into Britain towards the latter end of Vespasian's reign, shewed himself equally expert in quelling the *refractory*, and civilizing those who had formerly submitted to the Roman power.

---

* Hercula'neum, Pompe'ia, &c. This eruption happened August 24, A. D. 79. These towns, after having been buried under the lava for more than 1600 years, were discovered in the beginning of the last century: Hercula'neum in 1713, about 24 feet under ground, by labourers digging a well; and Pompe'ia, 40 years after, about 12 feet below the surface: and, from the houses and streets which, in a great measure, remain perfect, have been drawn busts, statues, manuscripts, paintings, &c. which contribute much to enlarge our notions concerning the ancients, and develop many classical obscurities. (Mala.) In the year following this dreadful eruption, a serious fire happened at Rome, which consumed the Capitol, the pantheon, the library of Augus'tus, the theatre of Pompey, and a great many other buildings. In the ruins of Hercula'neum there have lately been found loaves which were baked under the reign of Ti'tus, and which still bear the baker's mark, indicating the quality of the flour, which was probably prescribed by the regulation of the police. There have also been found utensils of bronze, which, instead of being tinned, like ours, are well silvered. The ancients doubtless preferred this method, as more wholesome and more durable. The excavations at Pompe'ia continue to furnish the royal museum at Na'ples with all kinds of valuable objects: some buildings have lately been discovered at Pompe'ii, remarkable for the richness of their architecture. At Paggo'ia, another town buried by the lava from Vesu'vius, some sepulchres have been found, which are stated to be magnificently adorned with sculpture of the finest kind.—*Literary Gazette*, Nov. 15, 1817.

17. The Ordovi'ces, or inhabitants of North Wales, were the first that were subdued. He then made a descent upon the isle of An'glesey, which surrendered at discretion. 18. Having thus rendered himself master of the whole country, he took every method to restore discipline to his own army, and to introduce politeness among those whom he had conquered. He exhorted them, both by advice and example, to build temples, theatres, and stately houses. He caused the sons of their nobility to be instructed in the liberal arts, and to be taught the Latin language; and induced them to imitate the Roman modes of dress and living. 19. Thus, by degrees, this barbarous people began to assume the luxurious manners of their conquerors, and even to outdo them in all the refinements of sensual pleasure. 20. Upon account of the successes in Britain, Titus was saluted Impera'tor * for the fifteenth time; but he did not long survive this honour, being seized with a violent fever at a little distance from Rome. He expired shortly after, but not without suspicion of treachery from his brother Domit'ian †, who had long wished to govern. He died in the forty-first year of his age, having reigned two years, two months, and twenty days.

21. The beginning of Domit'ian's reign was universally acceptable to the people, as he appeared equally remarkable for his clemency, liberality, and justice ‡. 22. But he soon began to show the natural deformity of his mind. Instead of cultivating literature, as

{A.D 81.

* Impera'tor, a title of honour among the Romans, conferred on victorious generals by their armies, and afterwards by the senate.

† Domit'ian is supposed to have caused the death of his brother by poison.

‡ It is a remarkable fact, that the most odious tyrants that ever sat on the Roman throne, commenced their reigns with a display of all the virtues that adorn humanity; on the contrary, Augus'tus, who was truly the father of his people, began his reign with cruelties that afforded but a melancholy presage of his future administration.

his father and brother had done, he neglected all kinds of study, addicting himself wholly to meaner pursuits, particularly archery and gaming. 23. He was so very expert an archer, that he would frequently cause one of his slaves to stand at a great distance, with his hand spread as a mark, and would shoot his arrows with such exactness, as to stick them all between his fingers. 24. He instituted three sorts of contests to be observed every five years, in music, horsemanship, and wrestling; but at the same time he banished all philosophers and mathematicians from Rome. 25. No emperor before him entertained the people with such various and expensive shows. During these diversions he distributed great rewards, sitting as president himself, adorned with a purple robe and crown, with the priests of Ju'piter, and the college of Fla'vian priests about him. 26. The meanness of his occupations in solitude, was a just contrast to his exhibitions of public *ostentation*. He usually spent his hours of retirement in catching flies, and sticking them through with a bodkin; so that one of his servants, being asked if the emperor were alone, answered, that he had not so much as a fly to bear him company. 27. His vices seemed every day to increase, and his ungrateful treatment of Agric'ola afforded a convincing proof of his natural *malevolence*. 28. Domit'ian was always particularly fond of obtaining a military reputation, and therefore felt jealous of it in others. He had marched some time before into Gaul, upon a pretended expedition against the Cat'ti, a people of Germany, and without even seeing the enemy, resolved to have the honour of a triumph upon his return to Rome. For that purpose he purchased a number of slaves, whom he dressed in German habits, and at the head of this miserable procession entered the city, amid the apparent acclamations and concealed contempt of all his subjects.

Questions for Examination.

1. Was Titus proud of this important conquest?
2. How was he received at Rome?
3. What were the most remarkable among the spoils?
4. What peculiarity attended this triumph?
5. What was the character of Vespasian?
6. How many years did Vespasian reign?
7. Did he not display great resolution at the hour of death?
8. How did Titus commence his reign?
9. By what means did he gain the love of his subjects?
10. What sacrifices did he make for this purpose?
11. Did he succeed in his views?
12. What class of delinquents met his most decided disapprobation?
13. What punishment was inflicted on them?
14. What were his chief virtues?
15. What remarkable event occurred in this reign; and what eminent personage became its victim?
16. By what successes was this disaster counterbalanced?
17. What were his first enterprizes?
18. What methods did he take to civilize the conquered countries?
19. Were his measures successful?
20. Did Titus long enjoy the glory of this conquest?
21. How did Domitian commence his reign?
22. Did he persevere in this meritorious conduct?
23. In what exercise did he excel?
24. Did he encourage the arts and sciences?
25. Was he magnificent in his exhibitions?
26. How did he employ himself in private?
27. Did time render him less vicious?
28. By what means did he attempt to acquire military fame?

SECT. XI.

2. Ta″cit, *a.* silent.
8. Appella'tions, *s.* names, titles.
9. Novelty, *s.* newness.
   Poig'nancy, *s.* sharpness, quickness of wit.
   Astrol'oger, *s.* a person who foretels future events by the stars.
11. Junc'ture, *s.* point of time, critical time.
13. Hypoc'risy, *s.* deceit.
   Comp'troller, *s.* one who has the power of over-ruling or governing the actions of another.

14. Extir'pate, *v.* to root out, to destroy.
21. Circumspec'tion, *s.* care, caution.
22. Alac'rity, *s.* cheerfulness, readiness.
24. Sub'altern, *a.* inferior.
25. Incred'ible, *a.* difficult to be believed.
Magi''cian, *s.* one who performs miracles by the power of the devil.
26. Prist'ine, *a.* ancient.
Impos'ture, *s.* deceit, imposition.

1. THE success of Agric'ola in Britain, affected Domit'ian with an extreme degree of envy. This excellent general pursued the advantages which he had already obtained; he subdued the Caledo'nians *, and overcame Gal'gacus, the British chief, who commanded an army of thirty thousand men; afterwards sending out a fleet to scour the coast, he discovered Great Britain to be an island. He likewise discovered and subdued the Orkneys †; and thus reduced the whole into a civilized province of the Roman empire. 2. When the account of these successes was brought to Domit'ian, he received it with a seeming pleasure, but real uneasiness. He thought Agric'ola's rising reputation a *tacit* reproach upon his own inactivity; and instead of attempting to emulate, he resolved to suppress the merits of his services. 3. He ordered him, therefore, external marks of approbation, and took care that triumphal ornaments, statues, and other honours should be decreed him; but at the same time he removed him from his command, under a pretence of appointing him to the government of Syria. 4. By these means Agric'ola surrendered up his province to Sallus'tius Lucul'lus, but soon found that Syr'ia was otherwise disposed of. Upon his return to Rome, which was privately, and by night, he was coolly received by

* Caledo'nians, the ancient inhabitants of Scotland. Caledo'nia, the ancient name of Scotland; Caledo'nii, the people. (Tacitus.)

† Ork'neys, anciently called the Or'cades. They are about 30 in number, of which 26 are inhabited. They are situated to the north of Scotland; and contain about 24,000 inhabitants.

the emperor; and dying some time after in retirement, it was generally supposed that his end was hastened by Domit'ian's direction.

5. Domit'ian soon after found the want of so experienced a commander, in the many irruptions of the barbarous nations that surrounded the empire. The Sarma'tians * in Europe, joined with those of Asia, made a formidable invasion, at once destroying a whole legion, and a general of the Romans. The Da'cians †, under the conduct of Dece'balus, their king, made an irruption, and overthrew the Romans in several engagements. 6. At last, however, the barbarians were repelled, partly by force, and partly by the assistance of money, which only served to enable them to make future invasions with greater advantage. 7. But in whatever manner the enemy might have been repelled, Domit'ian was resolved not to lose the honours of a triumph. He returned in great splendour to Rome; and, not contented with thus triumphing twice without a victory, he resolved to take the surname of German'icus, for his conquests over a people with whom he never contended.

8. In proportion as the ridicule increased against him, his pride seemed every day to demand greater homage. He would permit his statues to be made only of gold and silver; he assumed to himself divine honours; and ordered that all men should address him by the same *appellations* which they gave to the divinity. 9. His cruelty was not inferior to his arrogance; he caused numbers of the most illustrious senators, and others, to be put to death, upon the most trifling pretences. One Æ'lius

* Sarma'tians, the inhabitants of Sarma'tia. This country, in its full extent, was divided into two parts, European and Asiatic. (Ptolemy.) It was sometimes called Scyth'ia, (Strabo, Pliny, Herodotus, Diodorus.) Sarma'tæ, the people. (Stephanus, and by the Romans.)

† Da'cians, the inhabitants of Da'cia. This country comprises part of Hun'gary, all Transylva'nia and Walachia; and part of Moldavi. (Cellarius.)

La'ma* was condemned and executed only for jesting, though there was neither *novelty* nor *poignancy* in his humour. Coccea'nus was murdered only for celebrating the nativity of O'tho. Pomposia'nus shared the same fate, because it was foretold by an *astrologer* that he should be emperor. Sallus'tius Lucul'lus, his lieutenant in Britain, was destroyed only for having given his name to a new sort of lances of his own invention. Ju'nius Rus'ticus died for publishing a book, in which he commended Thra'sea and Pris'cus, two philosophers who opposed Vespa'sian's coming to the throne.

10. Lu'cius Anto'nius, governor of Upper Germany, knowing how much the emperor was detested at home, resolved upon striking for the throne; and accordingly assumed the ensigns of imperial dignity. 11. As he was at the head of a formidable army, his success remained a long time doubtful; but a sudden overflow of the Rhine dividing his army, he was set upon at that *juncture* by Norman'dus, the emperor's general, and totally routed. The news of this victory, we are told, was brought to Rome by supernatural means, on the same day that the battle was fought. 12. Domit'ian's severity was greatly increased by this short-lived success. In order to discover the accomplices with the adverse party, he invented new tortures; sometimes cutting off the hands, at other times thrusting fire into the bodies of those whom he suspected of being his enemies. 13. In the midst of these severities, he aggravated his guilt by *hypocrisy*, never pronouncing sentence without a preamble full of gentleness and mercy. The night before he crucified the *comptroller* of his household, he treated him with the most flattering marks of friendship, and ordered him a dish of meat from his own table. He carried Areti'nus Cle'mens

* Domit'ian had previously taken from him his wife Domit'ia, and married her himself; the jest for which he suffered was an allusion to this.

with him in his own litter the day he resolved upon his death. 14. He was particularly terrible to the senate and nobility; the whole body of whom he frequently threatened to *extirpate* entirely. At one time, he surrounded the senate-house with his troops, to the great consternation of the senators. At another, he resolved to amuse himself with their terrors in a different manner. 15. Having invited them to a public entertainment, he received them all very formally at the entrance of his palace, and conducted them into a spacious hall, hung round with black, and illuminated by a few melancholy lamps, that diffused no more light than was just sufficient to shew the horrors of the place. All around were to be seen coffins, with the names of each of the senators written upon them, together with other objects of terror, and instruments of execution. 16. While the company beheld all these preparations with silent agony, several men, having their bodies blackened, each with a drawn sword in one hand, and a flaming torch in the other, entered the hall, and danced round them. 17. After some time, when from their knowledge of Domit'ian's capricious cruelty, the guests expected nothing less than instant death, the doors were set open, and one of the servants came to inform them, that the emperor gave all the company leave to withdraw.

18. His cruelties were rendered still more odious by his lust and avarice. Frequently after presiding at an execution, he would retire with the lewdest prostitutes, and use the same baths which they did. 19. The last part of the tyrant's reign was more insupportable than any of the preceding. Ne'ro exercised his cruelties without being a spectator; but a principal part of the Roman miseries, during his reign, was to see and to be seen; to behold the stern air and fiery visage of the tyrant, which he had armed against sensibility by continued intempe-

rance, directing the tortures, and maliciously pleased with adding poignance to every agony.

20. But a period was soon to be put to this monster's cruelties. Among the number of those whom he at once caressed and suspected, was his wife Domit'ia, whom he had taken from Æ'lius La'ma, her former husband. 21. It was the tyrant's method to put down the names of all such as he intended to destroy, in his tablets, which he kept about him with great *circumspection*. Domit'ia fortunately happening to get a sight of them *, was struck at finding her own name in the catalogue of those destined to destruction. 22. She shewed the fatal list to Norba'nus and Petro'nius, præfects of the prætorian bands, who found themselves among the number of devoted victims; as likewise to Steph'anus, the comptroller of the household, who came into the conspiracy with *alacrity*. They fixed upon the eighteenth day of September, for the completion of their great attempt. 23. Upon the emperor's preparing to go to the bath on the morning of that day, Petro'nius his chamberlain came to inform him that Steph'anus desired to speak to him upon an affair of the utmost importance. The emperor having given orders that his attendants should retire, Steph'anus entered with his hand in a scarf, which he had worn thus for some days, the better to conceal a dagger, as none were permitted to approach the emperor with arms. 24. He began by giving information of a pretended conspiracy, and exhibited a paper, in which the particulars were specified. While Domit'ian was reading the contents with eager curiosity, Steph'anus

* The manner in which she otained these tablets was as follows: a young child, with whom Domit'ian frequently amused himself, happening one day to enter his chamber, while he was asleep, took the tablets from under his pillow; but being soon after met by the empress, she desired to see them, and thus became acquainted with the fate destined for her and many others.

drew his dagger and struck him with much violence; but the wound not being mortal, Domit'ian caught hold of the assassin and threw him upon the ground, calling out for assistance. But Parthe'nius, with his freedman, a gladiator, and two *subaltern* officers, now coming in, they ran furiously upon the emperor and dispatched him: Steph'anus, however, was slain by the guards, but the other conspirators escaped in the tumult.

25. It is rather *incredible*, what some writers relate concerning Apollo'nius Tyane'us, who was then at Eph'esus. This person, whom some call a *magician*, and some a philosopher, but who more probably was only an impostor, was, just at the minute in which Domit'ian was slain, lecturing in one of the public gardens of the city; but stopping short, on a sudden he cried out, "Courage, Steph'anus, strike the tyrant!" then, after a pause, "Rejoice, my friends, the tyrant dies this day;—this day do I say?—the very moment in which I kept silence he suffered for his crimes! He dies!"

26. Many prodigies are said to have portended his death; and, if the Roman historians are to be credited, more preternatural appearances and predictions announced this event, than its importance deserved. The truth seems to be, that a belief in omens and prodigies was again become prevalent, as the people were evidently relapsing into *pristine* barbarity, ignorance being ever the proper soil for a harvest of *imposture**.

---

* In the reign of Domit'ian, a violent persecution raged against the Christians. During this persecution St. John was confined to the Isle of Patmos, in the Archipel'ago, where he wrote the Apoc'alypse, or Revelation.

Questions for Examination.

1. What advantages did Agricola gain in Britain?
2. How did Domitian receive the account of Agricola's successes?
3. In what way did the emperor treat him?
4. To whom did Agricola surrender up his province?
5. What nations afterwards made irruptions in the Roman provinces?
6. By what means were the barbarians at length repelled?
7. What surname did Domitian assume?
8. To what extravagances did his pride lead him?
9. What trifling pretexts were made used of by Domitian to put to death some of the most illustrious Romans?
10. Who now assumed the ensigns of the imperial dignity?
11. By what general was Lucius Antonius defeated?
12. What new cruelties were resorted to by the emperor?
13. By what hypocritical conduct was he distinguished?
14. To whom was he particularly terrible?
15—16—17. What terrific ceremonies did he invent on one occasion?
18. Was the result fatal to them?
19. Did not his cruelties become still more insupportable at the latter part of his reign?
20. Who was among the number that he at the same time caressed and suspected?
21. Did not Domitia discover her own name among his list of victims?
22. To whom did she shew the fatal list, and what was resolved on?
23. What means were used by Stephanus to assassinate the emperor?
24. Relate the particulars of the assassination?
25. What exclamation is Apollonius Tyaneus said to have made at Ephesus, at the time of Domitian's death?
26. Did not the Romans relapse into their pristine state of barbarity about this period?

CHAPTER XXIII.

SECT. I.

The Five good Emperors of Rome.

1. Ob'sequies, *s.* rites, ceremonies.
2. Lar'gesses, *s.* presents, gifts.
5. Imbecil'ity, *s.* weakness.

12. Ignomin'ious, *a.* disgraceful.
Co'horts, *s.* subdivisions of the legions, a body of soldiers.
17. Panegy'ric, *s.* praise.
20. Vas'sal, *s.* a dependant.
23. Ar'chitects, *s.* (pro. *arkitects*) builders.

1. When it was publicly known that Domi'tian * was slain, the senate began to load his memory with every reproach. His statues were commanded to be taken down, and a decree was made, that all his inscriptions should be erased †, his name struck out of the registers of fame, and his funeral *obsequies* omitted. 2. The people, who now took but little part in the affairs of government, looked on his death with indifference; the soldiers alone, whom he had loaded with favours, and enriched by *largesses*, sincerely regretted their benefactor.

3. The senate therefore resolved to provide a successor before the army could have an opportunity of taking the appointment upon itself, and Cocce'ius Ner'va was chosen to the empire the same day on which the tyrant was slain. 4. He is said to have been of an illustrious family in Spain ‡ and above sixty-five years old when he was called to the throne, an elevation which he owed solely to his virtues, moderation, respect to the laws, and the blameless tenor of his life.

5. The people, long accustomed to tyranny, regarded Nerva's gentle reign with rapture, and even gave to his *imbecility* (for his humanity was carried too far for justice) the name of benevolence. 6. Upon coming to the throne, he solemnly swore, that no senator of Rome should be put to death by his command during his reign, though guilty of the most heinous crimes. This oath he so reli-

* Domi'tian was the last of those emperors commonly called the Twelve Cæsars.

† Some ancient inscriptions, with the name of Domi'tian erased, remain to this day.

‡ This is a mistake; his family was originally of Crete, now called Candia.

giously observed, that when two senators had conspired his death, he used no kind of severity against them; but, sending for them to let them see he was not ignorant of their designs, he carried them with him to the public theatre; there, presenting each a dagger, he desired them to strike, assuring them that he should make no resistance. 8. He had so little regard for money, that when one of his subjects found a large treasure, and wrote to the emperor for instructions how to dispose of it, he received for answer, that he might use it; the finder however replying, that it was a fortune too large for a private person to use, Nerva, admiring his honesty, wrote him word that then he might abuse it *.

9. A sovereign of such generosity and mildness was not, however, without his enemies. Vigil'ius Ru'fus, who had opposed his accession, was not only pardoned, but made his colleague in the consulship. Calpur'nius Cras'sus also, with some others, formed a conspiracy to destroy him; but Nerva was satisfied with banishing those who were culpable, though the senate were for inflicting more rigorous punishments. 10. But the most dangerous insurrection was that of the prætorian bands, who, headed by Caspa'rius Olia'nus, insisted upon revenging the late emperor's death, whose memory was still dear to them, from his frequent liberalities. 11. Nerva, whose kindness to good men rendered him more obnoxious to the vicious, did all in his power to stop the progress of this insurrection; he presented himself to the mutinous soldiers, and, laying bare his bosom, desired them to strike there, rather than be guilty of so much injustice. 12. The soldiers, however, paid no regard to his remonstrances: but, seizing upon Petro'nius and Parthe'nius, slew them in the most *ignominious* manner. Not content with this, they

* Nerva, the most remarkable man in Rome for his virtues, recalled all the Christians who had been banished, or had emigrated, under the persecution of Domi'tian.

even compelled the emperor to approve of their sedition, and to make a speech to the people, in which he thanked the *cohorts* for their fidelity.

13. So disagreeable a constraint upon the emperor's inclinations, was in the end attended with the most happy effects, as it caused the adoption* of Trajan to succeed him; for, perceiving that in the present turbulent disposition of the times, he stood in need of an assistant in the empire, setting aside all his own relations, he fixed upon Ul'pius Tra'jan, an utter stranger to his family, who was then governor in Upper Germany, as his successor.

14. About three months after this, having put himself into a violent passion with one Reg'ulus, a senator, he was seized with a fever of which he died, after a reign of one year, four months, and nine days.

15. He was the first foreigner that ever reigned in Rome, and justly reputed a prince of great generosity and moderation. He is also celebrated for his wisdom, though with less reason; the greatest instance given of it during his reign, being the choice of his successor.

16. On hearing of the death of Nerva, Tra'jan† prepared to come to Rome from Germany, where he was governor. He received upon his arrival a letter from Plu'tarch‡, the philosopher, who had the

U. C. 851. A. D. 98.

* It was customary among the Romans, for a person destitute of a son, to adopt one from another family, and the son thus adopted became immediately invested with the same rights and privileges as if he had been born to that station; but he had no longer any claim on the family to which he originally belonged.

† Tra'jan was a Spaniard by birth, and of an ancient, but not very illustrious family. He possessed, in an eminent degree, all those qualities which form a great and excellent prince. His skill in military affairs was equal to that of the greatest generals of antiquity; and he had rendered himself, by warlike exercises, capable of enduring all the fatigues incident to the most rigorous campaign.

‡ Plu'tarch, a celebrated historian, was a native of Cheronea, a city of Bœo'tia, in Greece, where he died, A.D. 140. The most celebrated of his works are, his Lives of Illustrious Men, and his Morals: both these works have been translated into English; the former by Dryden and Langhorne; in delineating which,

honour of being his master, to the following purport:—"Since your merits, and not your importunities, have advanced you to the empire, permit me to congratulate you on your virtues, and my own good fortune. If your future government proves answerable to your former worth, I shall be happy; but if you become worse for power, yours will be the danger, and mine the ignominy, of your conduct. The errors of the pupil will be charged upon his instructor. Sen'eca* is reproached for the enormities of Ne'ro; and Soc'rates † and Quintil'ian ‡ have not escaped censure for the misconduct of their respective scholars. But you have it in your power to make me the most honoured of men, by continuing what you are. Retain the command of your passions; and make virtue the rule of all your actions. If you follow these instructions, then will I glory in having presumed to give them; if you neglect what I advise, then will this letter be my testimony, that you have not erred through the counsel and authority of Plu'tarch." I insert this letter, because it is a striking picture of this great philosopher's manner of addressing that best of princes.

17. This good monarch's application to business, his moderation towards his enemies §, his modesty in exalta-

---

Plu'tarch has shewn great impartiality, an abhorrence of tyranny and vice, and an accurate acquaintance with the human mind. (Vossius de Hist. Græc.)

* Sen'eca, a famous philosopher, was born at Cor'duba, in Spain; sometimes written Cordo'via.

† Soc'rates, the most celebrated philosopher of all antiquity, was a native of Athens, in Greece. He was the son of a sculptor, and followed the same profession for some years. The actions, sayings, and opinions of this great man, have been carefully and faithfully recorded by two of the most celebrated of his pupils, Xen'ophon and Pla'to.

‡ Quintil'ian, a celebrated orator and critic, was a native of Spain, but became a public teacher at Rome. His Institutiones Oratoricæ, may be justly pronounced the finest system of rhetoric ever written.

§ He used to say, that it was better a thousand criminals should escape, than one innocent person suffer; yet he was rigorous towards himself. On presenting a sword to the captain of his guard, on his appointment to that office, he made use of

tion, his liberality to the deserving, and his frugal management of the resources of the state, were the subjects of *panegyric* among his cotemporaries, and continue to be the admiration of posterity.

18. The first war he was engaged in after his coming to the throne, was with the Da'cians, who, during the reign of Domi'tian, had committed numberless ravages upon the provinces of the empire. To revenge these, he raised a powerful army, and with great expedition marched into those barbarous countries, where he was vigorously opposed by Deceb'alus, the Da'cian king; who for some time withstood his boldest efforts. 19. At length, however, this monarch being constrained to come to a general battle, and no longer able to protract the war, was routed with great slaughter. The Roman soldiers upon this occasion, wanting linen to bind up their wounds, the emperor tore his own robes to supply them. 20. This victory compelled the enemy to sue for peace, which they obtained upon very disadvantageous terms; their king coming into the Roman camp, and acknowledging himself a *vassal* of the Roman empire.

21. Upon Trajan's return, after the usual triumphs and rejoicings, he was surprised with an account that the Da'cians had renewed hostilities. Deceb'alus, their king, was a second time adjudged an enemy to the Roman state, and Tra'jan again entered his dominions. 22. In order to be enabled to invade the enemy's territories at pleasure, he undertook a most stupendous work, which was no less than building a bridge across the Danube *. 23. This amazing structure, which was built over a deep, broad, and rapid river, consisted of more than twenty-two

---

these memorable words:—"Employ this sword for me, but turn it against me if I deserve it."

* The Dan'ube, usually called by the Romans Danu'bius, the noblest river of Europe, (Herodotus.) It was the boundary to Germany on the south, (Ptolemy.) It was called by the Greeks, Is'tros; and by the Germans, Do'nau.

arches; the ruins, which remain to this day, shew modern *architects* how far they were surpassed by the ancients, both in the greatness and boldness of their designs. 24. Upon finishing this work, Tra'jan continued the war with great vigour, sharing, with the meanest of his soldiers, the fatigues of the campaign, and continually encouraging them to their duty by his own example. 25. By these means, notwithstanding the country was spacious and uncultivated, and the inhabitants brave and hardy, he subdued the whole, and added the kingdom of Da'cia as a province to the Roman empire. Deceb'alus made some attempts to escape; but being surrounded, he slew himself. 26. These successes seemed to advance the empire to a greater degree of splendour than it had hitherto acquired. Ambassadors came from the interior parts of India, to congratulate Trajan's success, and solicit his friendship*. On his return, he entered Rome in triumph, and the rejoicings for his victories lasted a hundred and twenty days.

27. Having given peace and prosperity to the empire, he was loved, honoured, and almost adored. He adorned the city with public buildings; he freed it from such men as lived by their vices; he entertained persons of merit with familiarity; and so little did he fear his enemies, that he could scarcely be induced to suppose he had any.

Questions for Examination.

1. How was the account of Domitian's death received?
2. Was he regretted by any description of his subjects?
3. What consequence ensued from this regret?
4. Who was Cocceius Nerva?
5. Was his government acceptable to the people?
6. What afforded a presage of his future mild administration?
7. Did he keep this oath inviolate?

---

* India, an extensive country of the eastern world, divided by the Ganges into two great parts; namely, India intra Gangem, and India extra Gangem. (Ptolemy.) It was anciently, and still is, a rich country. (Strabo.) Indi, the people. (Ovid.)

8. Was Nerva avaricious?
9. Was his reign free from disturbances?
10. Were all conspiracies repressed from this time?
11. Did Nerva exert himself to quell it?
12. Were his endeavours successful?
13. What important consequences ensued from these commotions?
14. What occasioned his death?
15. What was his character?
16. How did Trajan act on his accession, and what advice did he receive?
17. What sentiments did his subjects entertain of their new emperor?
18. With whom did he commence hostilities?
19. What was the event of the campaign?
20. What was the consequence of this victory?
21. Did peace long continue?
22. What great undertaking did he accomplish in this expedition?
23. Was it a difficult work?
24. What followed the building of the bridge?
25. What was the event of this second campaign?
26. What advantages arose from this conquest?
27. Did Trajan suffer prosperity to make him neglectful of his duties?

SECT. II.

1. Judi"cial, *a.* legal, belonging to trial.
3. Mas'sacre, *v.* to kill.
6. Retalia'tion, *s.* a return of like for like.
   Outra'geous, *a.* violent.
   Pests, *s.* plagues.
8. Predeces'sor, *s.* the former emperor Trajan, literally an ancestor.
11. Contrast'ed, *part.* opposed.
    Devia'tion, *s.* a departure from.
19. Molesta'tion, *s* disturbance, interruption.
    Ini"tiated, *part.* instructed.
24. Ag'gravate, *v.* to heighten, to make worse.
25. Insur'gents, *s.* rebels, seditious persons.
    Demoli"tion, *s.* destruction.

It had been happy for this great prince's * memory, had he shewn equal clemency to all his subjects; but,

* Tra'jan.

about the ninth year of his reign, he was persuaded to look upon the Christians with a suspicious eye, and great numbers of them were put to death, by popular tumults and *judicial* proceedings. (U. C. 860. A. D. 107.) 2. However, the persecution ceased after some time; for the emperor, finding that the Christians were an innocent and inoffensive people, suspended their punishments.

3. During this emperor's reign there was a dreadful insurrection of the Jews in all parts of the empire. This wretched people, still infatuated, and ever expecting some signal deliverance, took the advantage of Tra'jan's expedition to the east, to *massacre* all the Greeks and Romans whom they could get into their power. 4. This rebellion first began in Cyre'ne *, a Roman province in Africa; from thence the flame extended to Egypt, and next to the island of Cy'prus. Dreadful were the devastations committed by these infatuated people, and shocking the barbarities exercised on the unoffending inhabitants. 5. Some were sawn asunder, others cast to wild beasts, or made to kill each other, while the most unheard-of torments were invented and exercised on the unhappy victims of their fury. Nay, to such a pitch was their animosity carried, that they actually ate the flesh of their enemies, and even wore their skins. 6. However, these cruelties were of no long duration: the governors of the respective provinces,

* Cyre'ne, a city of great note in Lib'ya, in the north of Africa, and one of those called Pentap'olis; distant eleven miles from the Mediterranean sea. (Pliny.) It was once so powerful as to contend with Carthage for pre-eminence. It was situated in the western part of Lib'ya, properly so called; and as it was the chief city, it sometimes gave the name of Cyrena'ica to the whole country; which, by the sacred writer, is called Lib'ya, about Cyre'ne. (Acts ii. 10.) The city itself is famous in profane history for being the birth-place of Erastosthe'nes, the mathematician; of Callim'achus, the poet; and, (in sacred history) of Si'mon, who was compelled to bear our Saviour's cross, after himself had fainted under it. This country has been in the possession of the Per'sians, Egyp'tians, Gre'cians, Ro'mans, Sa'racens, and lastly Turks, under whom it has become almost a desert. The greater part of this country is now called Barca; Cyre'ne, the city, now Carin. (Allen's Ancient Geography.)

making head against their tumultuous fury, caused them to experience the horrors of *retaliation*, and put them to death, not as human beings, but as *outrageous pests* of society. In Cy'prus it was made capital for any Jew to set foot on the island.

7. During these bloody transactions, Tra'jan was prosecuting his successes in the east, where he carried the Roman arms farther than they had ever before penetrated; but resolving to visit Rome once more, he found himself too weak to proceed in his usual manner. He therefore determined to return by sea; but on reaching the city of Seleu'cia, he died of an apoplexy, in the sixty-third year of his age, after a reign of nineteen years, six months, and fifteen days *. { A. D. 117.

8. A'drian, the nephew of Tra'jan, was chosen to succeed him. He began his reign by pursuing a course opposite to that of his *predecessor*, taking every method of declining war, and promoting the arts of peace. His first care was to make peace with the Par'thians, and to restore Chos'roes, for he was satisfied with preserving the ancient limits of the empire, and seemed no way ambitious of extensive conquest.

9. A'drian was one of the most remarkable of the Roman emperors for the variety of his endowments. He was highly skilled in all the accomplishments both of body and mind. He composed with great beauty, both in prose and verse; he pleaded at the bar, and was one of the best orators of his time. 10. Nor were his virtues fewer than his accomplishments. His moderation and clemency appeared by pardoning the injuries which he

* Tra'jan was not only a just, wise, and warlike prince, but a great benefactor to the empire, by the useful and magnificent works which he undertook and completed; the limits of a note will not admit of an enumeration and description of them. Suffice it to mention, that he levelled a hill in Rome, 144 feet high, and erected the famous pillar, still existing, which is exactly the height of the hill. It is generally supposed that Tra'jan's ashes were deposited at its base.

had received when he was yet but a private man *. One day, meeting a person, who had formerly been his most inveterate enemy: "My good friend," said he, "you have escaped; for I am made emperor." He was affable to his friends, and gentle to persons of meaner stations; he relieved their wants, and visited them in sickness: it being his constant maxim, that he had been elected emperor, not for his own good, but for the benefit of mankind at large.

11. These virtues were, however, *contrasted* by vices of considerable magnitude †; or rather he wanted strength of mind to preserve his rectitude of character without *deviation*.

12. He was scarcely settled on the throne, when several of the northern barbarians began to devastate the frontier provinces of the empire. These hardy nations, who now found the way to conquer, by issuing from their forests, and then retiring upon the approach of a superior force, began to be truly formidable to Rome. 13. A'drian had thoughts of contracting the limits of the empire, by giving up some of the most remote and least defensible provinces; in this however he was overruled by friends, who wrongly imagined that an extensive frontier would intimidate an invading enemy. 14. But though he complied with their remonstrances, he broke down the bridge over the Dan'ube, which his predecessor had built, sensible that the same passage which was open to him, was equally convenient to the incursions of his barbarous neighbours.

15. Having staid a long time at Rome, to see that all things were regulated and established for the safety of the public, he prepared to make a progress through his

* This moderation and clemency were not lasting.

† Among these, cruelty was not the least conspicuous, particularly in the latter part of his reign; when a painful distemper rendered him furious, he not only put to death many illustrious persons, but even attempted to lay violent hands on himself.

whole empire. 16. It was one of his maxims, that an emperor ought to imitate the sun, which diffuses warmth and vigour over all parts of the earth. He therefore took with him a splendid court, and a considerable force, and entered the province of Gaul, where he caused the inhabitants to be numbered. 17. From Gaul, he went into Germany, thence to Holland *, and afterwards passed over into Britain; where, reforming many abuses, and reconciling the natives to the Romans, he, for the better security of the southern parts of the kingdom, built a wall of wood and earth, extending from the river E'den, in Cum'berland, to the Tyne, in Northum'berland, to prevent the incursions of the Picts, and other barbarous nations of the north. 18. From Britain, returning through Gaul, he directed his journey to Spain, his native country, where he was received with great joy. 19. Returning to Rome, he continued there for some time, in order to prepare for his journey into the east, which was hastened by a new invasion of the Par'thians. His approach compelling the enemy to peace, he pursued his travels without *molestation*. He visited the famous city of Athens †; there making a considerable stay, he was *initiated* into the Eleusin'ian mysteries ‡, which were accounted the most sacred in the Pagan mythology; and took upon him the office of archon, or chief magistrate. 20. In this place, also, he remitted the severity of the Christian persecution. He was even so far reconciled to this sect, as to think of

* The seven united provinces, which are so called from the chief province.

† A'thens, the celebrated capital of Attica in Greece. It was generally called by the Grecians As'tu, the city, by way of eminence, as Rome was called Urbs; and as urba'nus, or urbanity, denoted politeness of manners, expressed either in behaviour or language, among the Romans, so As'teum did among the Greeks.

‡ These were mysteries instituted in honour of Ceres. The initiated, after performing many previous ceremonies, were first terrified with the most appalling scenes, and afterwards gratified with the most delightful visions which it was possible for the ingenuity of men to present to the eyes of the deluded votaries.

introducing Christ among the number of the Gods. 21. From thence he crossed over into Africa, and spent much time in reforming abuses, regulating the government, deciding controversies, and erecting magnificent buildings. Among the rest, he ordered Carthage * to be rebuilt, calling it after his own name, Ad'rianople †. 22. Again he returned to Rome; travelled a second time into Greece‡; passed over into Asia Minor§; from thence into Syria‖; gave laws and instructions to all the neighbouring kings; entered Palestine ¶, Arabia **, and Egypt††, where he caused Pompey's tomb, that had been long neglected, and almost covered with sand, to be repaired and beautified. 23. He gave orders for the rebuilding of Jerusalem; which was performed with great expedition by the assistance of the Jews, who now began to conceive hopes of being restored to their long lost kingdom. 24. But these expectations only served to

* Car'thage, the celebrated capital of Africa Pro'pria, was built by the Tyr'ians, under Di'do. This city, the mistress of Spain, Si"cily, and Sardin'ia, was long the rival of Rome, till it was totally destroyed by Scip'io the Second, surnamed Africa'nus, B.C. 147. In its height of prosperity, it contained upwards of 700,000 inhabitants.

† Ad'rianople, the second city of European Turkey, was founded about A.M. 2782, and repaired by the emperor Adrian, A.D. 122. Hence its name.

‡ Greece, comprising the greater part of European Turkey.

§ Asia Minor, now called Anate'lia, comprised Bithyn'ia, Paphlago'nia, Gala'tia, Pon'tus, My"sia, Lyd'ia, Cari'a, Ly'cia, Pamphy"lia, with Pisi"dia, Insau'ria, Fili"cia, Phry"gia, and Cappado'cia. (Allen's Ancient Geography.)

‖ Syr'ia, a very considerable country of Asia, generally including with it Pal'estine, Mesopota'mia, and Phœni"cia.

¶ Pal'estine properly denotes the country of the Philistines, which name was given them by the Hebrews. (Josephus.) By the Greeks and Romans, they were generally called Pal'estines. The country has had the several names of Ca'naan, the Land of Promise, the Land of Is'rael, and Jude'a; but more generally the Holy Land.

** Ara"bia, an extensive country in Asia, extending from Egypt to Chalde'a, and from Syr'ia to the ocean.

†† Egypt, a celebrated country in the north-east part of Africa, and on the south-west of Ca'naan. It was anciently called Che'mia, or the Land of Ham. The Hebrews called it Miz'raim; and the A'rabs, to this day, call it Meii, from Miz'raim, the son of Ham, who peopled it.

aggravate their calamities; for, being incensed at the privileges which were granted the Pagan worshippers in their new city, they fell upon the Romans and Christians that were dispersed throughout Jude'a, and unmercifully put them all to the sword. 25. A'drian, sending a powerful body of men against them, obtained many signal, though bloody victories, over the *insurgents*. The war was concluded in two years, by the *demolition* of above one thousand of their best towns, and the destruction of nearly six hundred thousand men in battle.

26. Having thus effectually quelled this dangerous insurrection, he banished all those who remained in Judea; and by a public decree forbade them to come within view of their native soil. But he was soon after alarmed by a dangerous irruption of the barbarous nations to the northward of the empire; who entering Me'dia * with great fury, and passing through Arme'nia, carried their devastations as far as Cappado'cia. Preferring peace, however, upon any terms, to an unprofitable war, A'drian bought them off by large sums of money; so that they returned peaceably into their native wilds, to enjoy their plunder, and to meditate fresh invasions.

Questions for Examination.

1. Was Trajan uniformly merciful?
2. Was the persecution of long duration?
3. What remarkable event happened in this reign?
4. Where did the rebellion principally rage?
5. What were these barbarities?
6. Were no steps taken to repress this insurrection?
7. How was Trajan employed at this time, and what was his end?
8. Who succeeded him?
9. What was the character of Adrian?
10. Was he a virtuous character?

---

* Me'dia, a very extensive country of Asia, on the south of the Cas'pian sea, and to the north of ancient Persia.

11. Were not his virtues counterbalanced?
12. By whom was the empire now invaded?
13. What wise measure did Adrian contemplate?
14. What remarkable edifice did he destroy?
15. Was he attentive to the concerns of the empire?
16. Why did he do this?
17. What places did he next visit?
18. Whither did he next proceed?
19. Mention his further progress, and the incidents that occurred.
20. Was he merciful to the Christians?
21. Whither did he next repair, and how did he employ himself?
22. Proceed in the description of his route.
23. Did he not favour the Jews?
24. Did they not profit by this favourable disposition in the emperor?
25. Was this cruelty punished?
26. What followed this dangerous insurrection?

SECT. III.

5. Len'ity, *s.* mildness, mercy.
7. Ve'hemently, *ad.* earnestly, ardently.
9. Re"gimen, *s.* rule of diet, &c.
14. Ar'rogantly, *ad.* proudly.
23. Volup'tuous, *a.* luxurious, fond of pleasure.
30. Feign'ing, *part.* pretending.
32. Dissem'inated, *v.* spread, scattered as seed.
33. Inunda'tions, *s.* floods.
34. Lectister'nia, *s.* funeral banquets to the gods.
Mar'tyrdom, *s.* the act of suffering death for the cause of virtue or religion.
Persecu'tion, *s.* the act of harassing or pursuing with malignity; the act of punishing for the sake of religion.

1. HAVING spent thirteen years in travelling and reforming the abuses of the empire, A'drian at last resolved to end his fatigues at Rome. 2. Nothing could be more grateful to the people than his resolution of coming to reside for the rest of his days among them; they received him with the loudest demonstrations of joy; and though

he now began to grow old and unwieldy, he remitted not the least of his former assiduity and attention to the public welfare. 3. His chief amusement was in conversing with the most celebrated men in every art and science, frequently asserting, that he thought no kind of knowledge inconsiderable, or to be neglected, either in his private or public capacity. 4. He ordered the knights and senators never to appear in public, but in the proper habits of their orders. He forbade masters to kill their slaves, as had been before allowed; but ordained that they should be tried by the laws. 5. He still further extended the *lenity* of the laws to those unhappy men, who had been long thought too mean for justice: if a master was found killed in his house, he would not allow all his slaves to be put to the torture as formerly, but only such as might have perceived and prevented the murder.

6. In such employments he spent the greatest part of his time; but at last finding the duties of his station daily increasing, and his own strength proportionally upon the decline, he resolved on adopting a successor, and accordingly chose Antoni'nus to that important station.

7. While he was thus careful in providing for the future welfare of the state, his bodily infirmities became so insupportable, that he *vehemently* desired some of his attendants to dispatch him. 8. Antoni'nus, however, would by no means permit any of the domestics to be guilty of so great an impiety, but used all the arts in his power to reconcile the emperor to sustain life. 9. His pain daily increasing, he was frequently heard to cry out, "How miserable a thing it is to seek death, and not to find it!" After enduring some time these excruciating tortures, he at last resolved to observe no *regimen*, saying, that kings sometimes died merely by the multitude of their physicians. 10. This conduct served to hasten that death he seemed so ardently to desire; and it was probably joy upon its approach which dictated the cele-

brated stanzas that are so well known *, and while repeating which he expired, in the sixty-second year of his age, after a prosperous reign of twenty-one years and eleven months.

11. Titus Antoni'nus, his successor, was born at Lavin'ium, near Rome, but his ancestors came originally from Nismes †, in Gaul. His father was a noble-man, who had enjoyed the highest honours of the empire. At the time of his succeeding to the throne he was above fifty years old, and had passed through many of the most important offices of the state with great integrity and application. 12. His virtues in private life were no way impaired by his exaltation, as he shewed himself one of the most excellent princes for justice, clemency, and moderation: his morals were so pure, that he was usually compared to Nu'ma, and was surnamed the Pious, both for his tenderness to his predecessor A'drian, when dying, and his particular attachment to the religion of his country.

U. C. 891.

13. He was an eminent rewarder of learned men, to whom he gave large pensions and great honours, collecting them around him from all parts of the world. 14.

---

* These stanzas are—

Animula, vagula, blandula
Hospes, comesque corporis
Quæ nunc abibis in loca,
Pallidula, rigida, nudula?
Nec, ut soles, dabis jocos.

Thus imitated by Prior:—

Poor, little, pretty, fluttering thing,
Must we no longer live together?
And dost thou prune thy trembling wing
To take thy flight, thou know'st not whither?
Thy hum'rous vein, thy pleasing folly,
Lie all neglected, all forgot;
And pensive, wav'ring, melancholy,
Thou dread'st and hop'st thou know'st not what.

† Nis'mes, anciently called Nemau'sus. (Strabo, Ptolemy.) Nemau'sum. (Pliny.) Here are the remains of a Roman amphitheatre, and several other vestiges of its former magnificence.

Among the rest, he sent for Apollo'nius, the famous stoic * philosopher, to instruct his adopted son, Mar'cus Aure'lius. Apollo'nius being arrived, the emperor desired his attendance; but the other *arrogantly* answered, that it was the scholar's duty to wait upon the master, not the master upon the scholar. 15. To this reply, Antoni'nus only returned with a smile, "That it was surprising how Apollo'nius, who made no difficulty of coming from Greece to Rome, should think it hard to walk from one part of Rome to another;" and immediately sent Mar'cus Aure'lius to him †. 16. While the good emperor was thus employed in making mankind happy, in directing their conduct by his own example, or reproving their follies with the keenness of rebuke, he was seized with a violent fever, and ordered his friends and principal officers to attend him. 17. In their presence he confirmed the adoption of Mar'cus Aure'lius; then commanding the golden statue of Fortune, which was always in the chamber of the emperors, to be removed to that of his successor, he expired in the seventy-fourth year of his age, after a prosperous reign of twenty-two years and almost eight months ‡.

18. Mar'cus Aure'lius, though left sole successor to the throne, took Lu'cius Ve'rus as his associate and equal, in governing the state. 19. Aure'lius was the son of An'nius Ve'rus, of an ancient and illustrious

U. C. 914.

* Stoic philosopher is one who follows the sect of Zeno, holding all things indifferent, being void of passions, and destitute of mental feelings. This sect received its name from a Greek word, signifying *a porch*, because Zeno taught his disciples in a common porch of the city of Athens.

† Antoni'nus being made a model of wisdom and virtue, he was as much respected by foreigners as by his own people.

‡ This emperor was remarkably favourable to the Christians, and wrote thus to his governors in Asia:—"If any one shall, for the future, molest the Christians, and accuse them merely on account of their religion, let the person who is arraigned be discharged, though he is found to be a Christian, and the accuser be punished according to the rigour of the law."

family, which claimed its origin from Nu'ma. Lu'cius Ve'rus was the son of Com'modus, who had been adopted by A'drian, but died before he succeeded to the throne. 20. Aure'lius was as remarkable for his virtues and accomplishments, as his partner in the empire was for his ungovernable passions and debauched morals. The one was an example of the greatest goodness and wisdom; the other of ignorance, sloth, and extravagance *.

21. The two emperors were scarcely settled on the throne, when the empire was attacked on every side, from the barbarous nations by which it was surrounded†. The Cat'ti‡ invaded Germany and Rhœ'tia§, ravaging all with fire and sword; but were repelled by Victori'nus. The Britons likewise revolted, but were repressed by Capur'nius. 22. But the Par'thians, under their king Volog'esus, made an irruption still more dreadful than either of the former; destroying the Roman legions in Arme'nia; then entering Syria, they drove out the Roman governor, and filled the whole country with terror and confusion. To repel this barbarous eruption, Ve'rus went in person, being accompanied by Aure'lius part of the way.

---

* The only reproach that can be made against Aure'lius is for having associated Ve'rus in the empire, and suffered the Christians to be persecuted under his reign.

† A little time previous to this invasion, a domestic calamity occurred of no small importance; a dreadful inundation of the Tiber overturned many private and public edifices in the city, carried away great numbers of people and cattle, and laid the neighbouring country under water to a great distance. This inundation was followed by earthquakes, conflagrations, and a general infection of the air, which produced an infinite number of insects, that destroyed what the flood had spared, and caused a grievous famine.

‡ Cat'ti; these people were very extensive, and widely spread throughout Germany, occupying Hes'se, the territory on the Rhine, &c. The Hercyne'an forest began and ended in their territory. (Tacitus.)

§ Rhœ'tia was situated partly in Germany and partly in Italy. It was peopled by Rhœ'tis, B. C. 185, who left Tuscany to avoid the oppression of the Gauls, and planted a colony between the Tyrol and Helve'tia, to which he gave the name of Rhœ'tia. (Justin, Pliny, Stephanus.)

23. Ve'rus, however, proceeded no farther than An'tioch *, and there gave an indulgence to every appetite, rioting in excesses unknown even to the *voluptuous* Greeks; leaving all the glory of the field to his lieutenants, who were sent to repress the enemy. 24. These, however, fought with great success; for in the four years that the war lasted, the Romans entered far into the Par'thian country, and entirely subdued it; but upon their return their army was wasted to less than half its original number by pestilence and famine †. This, however, was no impediment to the vanity of Ve'rus, who resolved to enjoy the honours of a triumph, so hardly earned by others. Having appointed a king over the Arme'nians, and finding the Par'thians entirely subdued, he assumed the titles of Arme'nius and Par'thicus; and on his return to Rome he partook of a triumph with Aure'lius, which was solemnized with great pomp and splendour.

26. While Ve'rus was engaged in this expedition, Aure'lius was sedulously intent upon distributing justice and happiness to his subjects at home. He first applied himself to the regulation of public affairs, and to the correcting of such faults as he found in the laws and policy of the state. 27. In this endeavour he shewed a singular respect for the senate, often permitting them to determine without appeal ‡; so that the commonwealth seemed in a manner once more revived under his equitable administra-

---

* An'tioch, the capital of Syr'ia: there were no less than sixteen cities of this name in Asia, which were all founded by Seleu'cus Nica'tor, the first Sy'ro-Grecian monarch, to perpetuate the name of Anti'ochus his father.

† We may be ready to consider this as a just judgment on them for their atrocious cruelties. The city of Selecucia, on the Ti'gris, opened its gates to Cas'sius, and received him in a friendly manner, yet he inhumanly ordered the whole of the inhabitants, amounting to 400,000 persons, to be slaughtered.—*O bella, horrida bella!*

‡ He used to say, that it was more reasonable for him to follow the advice of so many wise men, than for so many wise men to follow his!

tion. 28. Besides, such was his application to business, that he often employed ten days together upon the same subject, maturely considering it on all sides, and seldom departing from the senate-house till the assembly was dismissed by the consul. 29. But he was daily mortified with accounts of the enormities of his colleague; being repeatedly assured of his vanity, lewdness, and extravagance. 30. However, *feigning* himself ignorant of these excesses, he judged marriage to be the best method of reclaiming him; and therefore sent him his daughter Lucil'la, a woman of great beauty, whom Ve'rus married at An'tioch. 31. But even this was found ineffectual, for Lucil'la proved of a disposition very unlike her father; and, instead of correcting her husband's extravagancies, only contributed to inflame them. 32. Aure'lius still hoped that, upon the return of Ve'rus to Rome, his presence would keep him in awe, and that happiness would at length be restored to the state. In this also he was disappointed. His return seemed fatal to the empire; for his army carried back the plague from Par'thia, and *disseminated* the infection into the provinces through which it passed.

33. Nothing could exceed the miserable state of things upon the return of Ve'rus. In this horrid picture were represented an emperor, unawed by example or the calamities surrounding him, giving way to unheard-of debaucheries *; a raging pestilence spreading terror and desolation through all parts of the western world; earthquakes, famines, and *inundations*, almost unexampled in history; the products of the earth through all Italy devoured by locusts; the barbarous nations around the empire taking advantage of its various calamities, and

* Among other follies, he erected a statue of gold to his horse Celer, fed him with raisins and almonds, covered him with purple, ordered him to be kept in a room in the palace, and, when he died, erected a stately monument to him in the Vatican.

making their irruptions even into Italy itself. 34. The priests doing all they could to put a stop to the miseries of the state, by attempting to appease the gods*, vowing and offering numberless sacrifices; celebrating all the sacred rites† that had ever been known in Rome; and exhibiting the solemnity called *lectisternia*, seven days together. 35. To crown the whole, these enthusiasts, as if the impending calamities had not been sufficient, ascribed the distresses of the state to the impieties of the Christians. A violent persecution ensued in all parts of the empire; and Justin Martyr, Polycarpus, and a prodigious number of less note, suffered *martyrdom*.

Questions for Examination.

1. Did Adrian enjoy repose from this time?
2. Was this resolution agreeable to the people?
3. How did he amuse himself?
4. What new edicts did he issue?
5. Did he not ameliorate the condition of slaves?
6. Was he still equal to the fatigues of the empire?
7. Were not his sufferings great?
8. Were his wishes complied with?
9. Were these arts successful?
10. What was the consequence of this conduct
11. Who was his successor?
12. Did he preserve his virtue on his exaltation
13. Was he a favourer of learning?
14. What anecdote is related of one of these?
15. What was the emperor's reply?
16. Did he experience a long and prosperous reign?
17. Whom did he appoint as his successor?
18. Was Marcus Aurelius sole emperor?
19. Who were Aurelius and Lucius Verus?
20. Were their characters similar?
21. Was their reign peaceable?
22. Was there not a more formidable invasion still?
23. Did Verus shew himself worthy of the trust?
24. Were they successful?
25. Did Verus appear to feel this misfortune?
26. How was Aurelius employed in the mean time?

---

* False deities, idols. † Religious ceremonies.

27. Did he do this solely by his own authority?
28. Was he hasty in his decisions?
29. Was he acquainted with the follies of his colleague?
30. How did he attempt his reformation?
31. Was this effectual?
32. What farther hopes did Aurelius entertain?
33. What was the state of the empire at this period?
34. What were the means made use of to avert these calamities?
35. To whom were they imputed?

SECT. IV.

5. Col'league, *s.* a partner or associate in the same office.
8. Pa'gan, *a.* heathen, idolatrous.
   Mirac'ulous, *a.* supernatural, above the powers of human nature.
9. Subli'mely, *ad.* nobly, greatly.

1. IN this scene of universal tumult, desolation, and distress, there was nothing left but the virtues and the wisdom of one man to restore tranquillity and happiness to the empire. 2. Aure'lius began his endeavours by marching against the Marcoman'ni* and Qua'di†, taking Ve'rus with him, who reluctantly left the sensual delights of Rome for the fatigues of a camp. 3. They came up with the Marcoman'ni near the city of Aquile'ia‡, and, after a furious engagement, routed their whole army; then pursuing them across the Alps, overcame them in

---

* Marcoman'ni (the same as Mora'vi, Mora'vians), a people of Germany, occupying the territory on the eastern part of the Rhine, and on the north of the Dan'ube. (Tacitus, Cæsar). Cluverius allots to them the duchy of Wurtemberg, part of Sua'bia, the Brisgau, &c. who on being expelled their country took up their abode in Bohe'mia. (Strabo, Velleius).

† Qua'di, or Qua'dians, a people of Germany, who inhabited part of Mora'via, Bohe'mia, and Hun'gary. (Tacitus).

‡ Aquile'ia, a celebrated city in the north of Italy. It was a place of great renown in the time of Julius Cæsar. It was destroyed by At'tila. In this city St. Mark wrote his gospel, which manuscript is said to be preserved with great care at Venice.

several contests; and, at last, entirely defeating them, returned into Italy without any considerable loss. 4. As the winter was far advanced, Ve'rus was determined upon going to Rome, in which journey he was seized with an apoplexy that put an end to his life, at the age of thirty-nine, have reigned in conjunction with Aure'lius nine years. { U. C. 922. A. D. 169.

5. Aure'lius, who had hitherto sustained the fatigues of governing, not only an empire, but his *colleague*, began to act with greater diligence, and more vigour than ever. After thus subduing the Marcoman'ni, he returned to Rome, where he resumed his attempts to benefit mankind by a farther reformation.

6. But his good endeavours were soon interrupted by a renewal of the former wars. In one of the engagements that ensued, he is said to have been miraculously relieved when his army was perishing with thirst, by the prayers of a Christian legion * which had been levied in his service: for we are told, that there fell such a shower of rain, as instantly refreshed the fainting army. The soldiers were seen holding their mouths and their helmets towards heaven, to catch the water which came so wonderfully to their relief. 7. The same clouds which served for their rescue, discharged so terrible a storm of hail, accompanied with thunder, against the enemy, as astonished and confused them. By this unlooked for aid, the Romans, recovering strength and courage, renewed the engagement with fresh vigour, and cut the enemy in pieces. 8. Such are the circumstances of an event, acknowledged by *Pagan* as well as Christian writers; only with this difference, that the latter ascribe the miracle to their own, the former to the prayers of their emperor †. However this

* Legion, a body of soldiers in the Roman army, consisting of 300 horse and 4,000 foot. Figuratively, an army, a military force, or any great number.

† Very cogent reasons have, by some critics, been brought to prove that this deliverance of the Roman army was no miracle, but merely the result of a natural occurrence.

be, Aure'lius seemed so sensible of *miraculous* assistance, that he immediately relaxed the persecution against the Christians, and wrote to the senate in their favour.

9. Soon after this event, Avid'ius Cas'sius *, one of the generals who had fought with such success against the Parthians, assumed the imperial purple, but was shortly after killed in an engagement. When his head was brought to Aure'lius, he expressed great sorrow, turned his eyes away, and caused it to be honourably interred; complaining that he been robbed of an opportunity of shewing mercy. On being blamed for his too great lenity to the relatives and friends of Cas'sius, he *sublimely* replied, "We have not lived nor served the gods so ill, as to think that they would favour Cas'sius."

10. He usually called philosophy his mother, in opposition to the court, which he considered as his stepmother. He also frequently said, "the people are happy whose kings are philosophers." He was, independent of his high dignity, one of the most considerable men then existing; and though he had been born in the meanest station, his merits as a writer (for his works remain to this day,) would have insured him immortality.

11. Having thus restored prosperity to his subjects, and peace to mankind, news was brought him that the Scythians †, and the barbarous nations of the north, were

---

* This Cas'sius was remarkable as a strict disciplinarian, of which the following is an instance: as he was encamped near the Danube, some of his soldiers, understanding that the enemy lay carelessly on the banks of that river, attacked them without orders, killed 3,000 of them, and returned to the camp loaded with booty. Instead, however, of receiving from Cas'sius the praises they expected, their centurions who had promoted this enterprise, were seized and crucified. This severity occasioned mutiny; but Cas'sius undauntedly appeared, unarmed, amidst the incensed soldiers, crying out, "Kill me; and to your neglect of duty add, if you dare, the murder of your general." This intrepidity put an end to the tumult, and firmly established his authority.

† Scyth'ians, the inhabitants of Tartary, now Asiatic Russia, were for the greater part wanderers.

up in arms, and invading the empire. 12. He once more, therefore, resolved to expose his aged person in the defence of his country, and made speedy preparations to oppose them. He went to the senate, and desired to have money out of the public treasury. He then spent three days in giving the people lectures on the regulation of their lives; and, having finished, departed upon his expedition, amidst the prayers and lamentations of his subjects. 13. Upon going to open his third campaign, he was seized at Vienna* with the plague, which stopped his farther progress. Nothing, however, could abate his desire of being beneficial to mankind. 14. His fears for the youth and unpromising disposition of Com'modus, his son and successor, seemed to give him great uneasiness. He therefore addressed his friends and the principal officers that were gathered round his bed; expressing his hope, that as his son was now losing his father, he would find many in them. 15. While thus speaking, he was seized with a weakness which stopped his utterance, and brought on death. He died in the fifty-ninth year of his age, having reigned nineteen years. It seemed as if the glory and prosperity of the empire died with this greatest of the Roman emperors.

Questions for Examination.

1. To whom did the Romans look for a restoration of the tranquillity of the empire?
2. Against whom did Aurelius march, and who accompanied him?
3. Where did they come up with the Marcomanni, and what was the result of the engagement?
4. What was the fate of Verus?
5. How did Aurelius act on his return to Rome?
6. What miraculous event was ascribed to the prayers of a Christian legion?

---

* Vienna (so called even in the time of Cæsar) the metropolis.

7. How did it operate on the enemy?
8. Did not Aurelius in consequence interest himself in favour of the Christians?
9. What reply did Aurelius make to those who blamed him for his lenity to the friends of Cassius?
10. What sayings are recorded of him, and what was his character?
11. What news was brought to Aurelius soon after peace had been restored?
12. In what way did he occupy himself previous to his departure to oppose the enemy?
13. At what place was he seized with the plague?
14. What seemed to give him great uneasiness?
15. How old was Aurelius when he died, and how many years had he reigned?

CHAPTER XXIV.

SECT. I.

U. C. 933.——A. D. 180.

From Commodus to the transferring of the Seat of Empire, under Constantine, from Rome to Constantinople.

2. Tis'sue, *s.* a continued series.
Simil'itude, *s.* likeness, resemblance.
3. Chap'man, *s.* a dealer, a tradesman.
13. Par'ricide, *s.* a parent-killer.
15. Profu'sion, *s.* too great liberality, extravagance.
Par'simony, *s.* frugality, sparingness.
21. Lacon'ic, *a.* brief, short.
24. Impreca'tions, *s.* curses.
38. Timid'ity, *s.* fearfulness.

1. The merits of Aure'lius procured Com'modus an easy accession to the throne*. He was acknowledged emperor by the army, by the senate and people, and afterwards by all the provinces.

* Com'modus was the first emperor that was born in his father's reign, and the second that succeeded his father in the empire.

2. But his whole reign was a *tissue* of wantonness and folly, cruelty and injustice, rapacity and corruption. So strong a *similitude* was there between his conduct and that of Domit'ian, that a reader might imagine he was going over the history of the same reign. 3. He went with his associates to brothels; spent the day in feasting, and the night in the most abominable debaucheries. He would sometimes go about the markets in a frolic, with small wares, as a petty *chapman;* sometimes he affected to be a horse-courser; at other times he drove his own chariot, in a slave's habit. Those he promoted resembled himself, being the companions of his pleasures, or the ministers of his cruelty.

4. If any person desired to be revenged on an enemy, by bargaining with Com'modus for a sum of money, he was permitted to destroy him in any manner that he thought proper. He commanded a person to be cast to the wild beasts for reading the life of Calig'ula in Sueto'nius. He ordered another to be thrown into a burning furnace, for accidentally overheating his bath*. He would sometimes, when he was in a pleasant humour, cut off men's noses, under pretence of shaving their beards; and yet, he was himself so jealous of all mankind, that he thought it necessary to be his own barber.

5. At length, upon the feast of Janus†, resolving to fence naked before the people, as a common gladiator, three of his friends remonstrated with him upon the indecency of such behaviour‡: these were Læ'tus, his gene-

* This barbarous command was not executed, though Com'modus was made to believe that it was.

† Ja'nus, (in heathen mythology,) supposed to be the first king of Italy, was deified at his death, and depicted with two faces. The temple dedicated to him at Rome, was always kept shut in time of peace, and open in time of war.

‡ He was of such uncommon strength, that he is said to have killed, in the amphitheatre, a hundred lions, each with one blow; and to have conquered seven hundred and thirty-five times in combat with gladiators. Hence he often subscribed himself the conqueror of a thousand gladiators.

ral; Elec'tus, his chamberlain; and Mar'cia, a concubine, of whom he always appeared excessively fond. 6. Their advice was attended with no other effect than that of exciting him to resolve upon their destruction. 7. It was his method, like that of Domit'ian, to set down the names of all such as he intended to put to death in a roll, which he carefully kept by him. However, at this time, happening to lay the roll on his bed, while he was bathing in another room, it was taken up by a little boy whom he passionately loved. The child, after playing with it some time, brought it to Mar'cia, who was instantly alarmed at the contents. 8. She immediately discovered her terrors to Læ'tus and Elec'tus, who perceiving their dangerous situation, instantly resolved upon the tyrant's death. 9. After some deliberation, it was agreed to dispatch him by poison; but this not succeeding, Mar'cia hastily introduced a young man, called Narcis'sus, whom she prevailed upon to assist in strangling the tyrant *. Com'modus died in the thirty-first year of his age, after an impious reign of twelve years and nine months.

10. Such were the secrecy and expedition with which Com'modus was assassinated, that few were acquainted with the real circumstances of his death. His body was wrapt up as a bale of useless furniture, and carried through the guards, most of whom were either drunk or asleep †.

U. C. 45. A. D. 192.

* These circumstances so nearly resemble what has been related of the death of Domit'ian, as to lead to a suspicion that they are wrongly applied; indeed Dio Cas'sius, who relates these particulars in the death of Domit'ian, mentions nothing of the kind on the present occasion, but merely that Com'modus was cut off by a conspiracy of Læ'tus, Elec'tus, and Mar'cia.

† The senate, on hearing of the death of Com'modus, assembled the same night, and declared him a public enemy, loaded him with curses, ordered his statues to be broken, his name to be erased out of all public inscriptions, and demanded his body, that it might be dragged through the streets, and thrown into the Tiber. Being told that it was already buried, they expressed great indignation that such an honour should be paid to so vile a wretch.

11. Hel'vius Per'tinax, whose virtues and courage rendered him worthy of the most exalted station, and who had passed through many changes of fortune, had been previously fixed upon to succeed him *. When, therefore, the conspirators repaired to his house, to salute him emperor, he considered it as a command from the emperor Com'modus for his death. 12. Upon Læ'tus entering his apartment, Per'tinax, without any shew of fear, cried out, that for many days he had expected to end his life in that manner, wondering that the emperor had deferred it so long. He was not a little surprised when informed of the real cause of their visit; and being strongly urged to accept of the empire, he at last complied. 13. Being carried to the camp, Per'tinax was proclaimed emperor, and soon after was acknowledged by the senate and citizens. They then pronounced Com'modus a *parricide*, an enemy to the gods, his country, and all mankind; and commanded that his corpse should rot upon a dunghill. 14. In the mean time they saluted Perti'nax as emperor and Cæsar, with numerous acclamations, and cheerfully took the oaths of obedience. The provinces soon after followed the example of Rome; so that he began his reign, with universal satisfaction to the whole empire, in the sixty-eighth year of his age.

15. Nothing could exceed the justice and wisdom of this monarch's reign, during the short time it continued. But the prætorian soldiers, whose manners he had attempted to reform, having been long corrupted by the indulgence and *profusion* of their former monarch, began to hate him for his *parsimony*, and the discipline he had

* Hel'vius Per'tinax was of low extraction; his father, an enfranchised slave, procuring his livelihood by making charcoal. This mean employment Per'tinax followed for some time, but afterwards kept a grammar school in Rome. Finding little encouragement, he renounced this profession, and entered the army, where, by his courage and conduct, he rose to eminence, and at length mounted the imperial throne.

introduced among them. 16. They therefore resolved to dethrone him; and accordingly, in a tumultuous manner, marched through the streets of Rome, entered his palace without opposition, where a Tungrian soldier* struck him dead with a blow of his lance. 17. From the number of adventures, he was called the tennis-ball of fortune; and certainly no man ever experienced such a variety of situations, with so blameless a character. He reigned but three months.

18. The soldiers having committed this outrage, made proclamation, that they would sell the empire to whoever would purchase it at the highest price. (U.C. 954. A.D. 201.) 19. In consequence of this proclamation, two bidders were found, namely, Sulpicia'nus and Did'ius. The former a consular person, prefect of the city, and son-in-law to the late emperor Per'tinax. The latter a consular person likewise, a great lawyer, and the wealthiest man in the city. 20. Sulpicia'nus had rather promises than treasure to bestow. The offers of Did'ius, who produced immense sums of ready money, prevailed. He was received into the camp, and the soldiers instantly swore to obey him as emperor. 21. Upon being conducted to the senate-house, he addressed the few that were present in a *laconic* speech, "Fathers, you want an emperor, and I am the fittest person you can choose." The choice of the soldiers was confirmed by the senate, and Did'ius was acknowledged emperor, in the fifty-seventh year of his age. 22. It should seem, by this weak monarch's conduct when seated on the throne, that he thought the government of an empire rather a pleasure than a toil. Instead of attempting to gain the hearts of his subjects, he gave himself up to ease and inactivity, utterly regardless of the duties of his station. He was mild and gentle indeed, neither injuring any, nor expecting to be

* Tun'grian soldier, one of the Tungri, a people of Gal'lia Bel'gica, the northern part of Gaul.

injured. 23. But that avarice by which he became opulent, still followed him in his exaltation; so that the very soldiers who elected him soon began to detest him, for qualities so very opposite to a military character. 24. The people also, against whose consent he was chosen, were not less his enemies. Whenever he issued from his palace, they openly poured forth their *imprecations* against him, crying out, that he was a thief, and had stolen the empire. 25. Did'ius, however, patiently bore all their reproach, and testified his regard by every kind of submission. 26. Soon after, Seve'rus, an African by birth, being proclaimed by his army*, began his reign by promising to revenge the death of Per'tinax.

27. Did'ius, upon being informed of his approach towards Rome, obtained the consent of the senate to send him ambassadors, offering to make him a partner in the empire. 28. But Seve'rus rejected this offer, conscious of his own strength, and of the weakness of the proposer. The senate appeared to be of the same sentiments; and perceiving the *timidity* and weakness of their present master, abandoned him. 29. Being called together, as was formerly practised in the times of the commonwealth, by the consuls, they unanimously decreed, that Did'ius should be deprived of the empire, and that Seve'rus should be proclaimed in his stead. They then commanded Did'ius to be slain, and sent messengers for this purpose to the palace, who, having found him, with a few friends that still adhered to his interest, they struck off his head.

* Seve'rus was now commanding his army in Illyr'ia, the north-west part of European Turkey.

Questions for Examination.

1. Did Commodus succeed peaceably?
2. Did he imitate his father's virtues?
3. Mention some of his follies.
4. Was he cruel likewise?
5. Was he permitted thus to act without remonstrance?
6. What effect did this remonstrance produce?
7. How was this discovered?
8. What was the consequence?
9. How was it effected?
10. Were the circumstances of his death generally known?
11. Who succeeded him?
12. Did he discover any signs of fear?
13. What ensued on his compliance?
14. Was he acceptable to the Roman people?
15. How did he govern?
16. What was the consequence?
17. By what appellation was he distinguished, and why?
18. How was the imperial purple next disposed of?
19. Who were the candidates?
20. Who was the successful candidate?
21. Was he acknowledged by the senate?
22. What was his conduct as emperor?
23. What gained him the hatred of the soldiers?
24. Was he a favourite of the people?
25. How did Didius bear this?
26. What new competitor for the throne appeared?
27. How did Didius act on this occasion?
28. Was his offer accepted?
29. What was the event?

SECT. II.

1. Compet'itors, *s.* rivals.
2. Ex'ecrated, *part.* hated, detested, cursed.
   Per'fidy, *s.* a breach of faith, treachery.
3. Ar'biters, *s.* deciders.
11. Ingen'uously, *ad.* openly.
15. In'tricate, *a.* entangled.
30. Mu'tinying, *part.* rebelling.

Note. Eques'trian, *a.* of the degree of a knight; such being privileged to serve on horseback in the Roman armies.

1. SEVE'RUS having overcome Ni'ger*, A.D. 194, and Albi'nus†, A.D. 198, who were his *competitors* for the empire, assumed the reins of government, uniting great vigour with the most refined policy; yet his African cunning was considered as a singular defect in him. 2. He is celebrated for his wit, learning, and prudence; but *execrated* for his *perfidy* and cruelty‡. In short, he seemed equally capable of the greatest acts of virtue, and the most bloody severities.

3. He loaded his soldiers with rewards and honours, giving them such privileges as strengthened his own power, while they destroyed that of the senate. For the soldiers, who had hitherto shewed the strongest inclinations to an abuse of power, were now made *arbiters* of the fate of emperors.

4. Being thus secure of his army, he resolved to give

---

* Pescen'nius Niger was proclaimed emperor on the death of Per'tinax, he was of an *equestrian* family, and served originally as a centurion, but rose by his merits to the first military employments in the empire. He was a gallant soldier, an excellent officer, an experienced general, an illustrious consul, but an unfortunate emperor.

†Clo'dius Albi'nus, though a native of Africa, was descended from the most illustrious families of Rome, and distinguished for his learning and knowledge. His martial genius, however, did not allow him to pursue the peaceable profession of letters. He filled many important posts, and was governor of Britain at the time that he assumed the imperial purple. He was extremely severe, never pardoning the least fault, and even crucified the centurions who were remiss in their duty. He is said to have possessed an extraordinary appetite, having ate, at one breakfast, 500 figs, 100 peaches, 10 melons, 20 bunches of grapes, 100 beccaficos, and 400 oysters. On being completely defeated by Seve'rus in Gaul, he killed himself; and such was the hatred that emperor bore him, that he rode over his dead body repeatedly, causing his horse to tread it under foot; then leaving it to be torn by dogs, he at last ordered the miserable remains to be cast into the Rhone. His wife and children were likewise inhumanly massacred.

‡ Within a few days forty-two senators were put to death, and many other persons, whose only crime was their great wealth. Narcis'sus, the wrestler, who strangled Com'modus, was thrown to be devoured by wild beasts. All the partizans of Albi'nus were cut off, and the city was said to have been floating in blood.

way to his natural desire of conquest, and to turn his arms against the Parthians, who were then invading the frontiers of the empire. 5. Having, therefore, previously given the government of domestic policy to one Plau'tian, a favourite, to whose daughter he married his son Caracal'la, he set out for the east, and prosecuted the war with his usual expedition and success. 6. He compelled submission from the king of Arme'nia, destroyed several cities in Ara'bia Fe'lix, landed on the Par'thian coast, took and plundered the famous city of Ctes'iphon *, marched back through Pal'estine and Egypt, and at length returned to Rome in triumph.

7. During this interval, Plau'tian †, who was left to direct the affairs of Rome, began to think of aspiring to the empire himself. Upon the emperor's return, he employed a tribune of the prætorian cohorts, of which he was commander, to assassinate him, and his son Caracal'la.

8. The tribune informed Seve'rus of his favourite's treachery. He at first received the intelligence as an improbable story, and as the artifice of one who envied his favourite's fortune. However, he was at last persuaded to permit the tribune to conduct Plau'tian to the emperor's apartments, to be a testimony against himself. 9. With this intent, the tribune went and amused him with a pretended account of his killing the emperor and his son; desiring him, if he thought fit to see him dead, to go with him to the palace. 10. As Plau'tian ardently desired their death, he readily gave credit to the relation, and, follow-

* Ctes'iphon, a fine city of Chaloni'tis, the most southern province of Assyria. (Pliny.) It was situated on the east side of the Tigris, opposite to Seleu'cia, on the west side. It was built by the Par'thians, to rival Seleu'cia. Here the Parthian kings passed their winter, (Strabo); and their summer at Ecbat'ana, the capital of Me'dia.

† Plau'tian, or Plautia'nus, was captain of the prætorian guards, and possessed of vast power and riches. His table was better served than the emperor's, and his equipages far more magnificent. All orders of men paid court to him; and he frequently put to death persons of the highest rank, without consulting Seve'rus.

ing the tribune, was conducted at midnight into the innermost apartments of the palace. But what must have been his surprise and disappointment, when, instead of finding the emperor lying dead, as he expected, he beheld the room lighted up with torches, and Seve'rus, surrounded by his friends, prepared in array to receive him. 11. Being asked by the emperor, with a stern countenance, what had brought him there at that unseasonable time, he *ingenuously* confessed the whole, intreating forgiveness for what he had intended. 12. The emperor seemed inclined to pardon; but Caracal'la, his son, who from the earliest age shewed a disposition to cruelty, ran him through the body with his sword.

13. After this, Seve'rus spent a considerable time in visiting some cities in Italy, permitting none of his officers to sell places of trust or dignity, and distributing justice with the strictest impartiality. He then undertook an expedition into Britain, where the Romans were in danger of being destroyed, or compelled to fly the province. After appointing his two sons, Caracal'la and Ge'ta, joint successors in the empire, and taking them with him, he landed in Britain, A.D. 208, to the great terror of such as had drawn down his resentment. 14. Upon his progress into the country, he left his son Ge'ta in the southern part of the province which had continued in obedience, and marched, with his son Caracal'la, against the Caledo'nians. In this expedition his army suffered prodigious hardships in pursuing the enemy; they were obliged to hew their way through *intricate* forests, to drain extensive marshes, and form bridges over rapid rivers; so that he lost fifty thousand men by fatigue and sickness. 16. However, he surmounted these inconveniences with unremitting bravery, and prosecuted his successes with such vigour, that he compelled the enemy to beg for peace; which they did not obtain without the surrender of a considerable part of their country. 17. It was there that for

its better security he built that famous wall, which still goes by his name, extending from Solway Frith, on the west, to the German Ocean, on the east. He did not long survive his successes here, but died at York, in the sixty-sixth year of his age, after an active, though cruel reign of about eighteen years.

18. Caracal'la* and Ge'ta, his sons, being acknowledged as emperors by the army, began to shew a mutual hatred to each other, even before their arrival at Rome. But this opposition was of no long continuance; for Caracal'la, being resolved to govern alone, furiously entered Ge'ta's apartment, and, followed by ruffians, slew him in his mother's arms †.

U. C. 964. A. D. 211.

19. Being thus sole emperor, he went on to mark his course with blood. Whatever was done by Domit'ian or Ne'ro, fell short of this monster's barbarities ‡.

20. His tyrannies at length excited the resentment of Macri'nus, the commander of the forces in Mesopota'mia, who employed one Mar'tial, a man of great strength, and a centurion of the guards, to dispatch him. 22. Accordingly, as the emperor was riding out one day, near a little city, called Carræ §, he happened to withdraw himself privately, upon a natural occasion, with only one page to hold his horse. This was the opportunity Mar'tial had so long and ardently desired; when, running to him hastily, as if he had been called, he stabbed the emperor

---

* Caracal'la was merely a nickname, in consequence of his having introduced a kind of short cassock, called, in the Gaulish language, by that name among the Romans. His real name was Bassi'anus.

† His murderer afterwards ordered that he should be worshipped as a god.

‡ Being offended by the Alexan'drians, he commanded them to be put to the sword, without distinction of sex, age, or condition; every house was filled with carcases, and the streets were obstructed with dead bodies; this was merely in revenge for some lampoons which they had published against him.

§ This place is also memorable for the defeat and death of Cras'sus. (Pli''ny, Flo'rus, and Lu'can.)

in the back, and killed him instantly. 22. Having performed this hardy attempt, he, with apparent unconcern, returned to his troop; but, retiring by insensible degrees, he endeavoured to secure himself by flight. His companions, however, soon missing him, and the page giving information of what had been done, he was pursued by the German horse, and cut in pieces.

23. During the reign of this execrable tyrant, which continued six years, the empire was every day declining; the soldiers were entirely masters of every election; and as there were various armies in different parts, so there were as many interests opposed to each other.

24. The soldiers, after remaining without an emperor two days, fixed upon Macri'nus, who took all possible methods to conceal his being privy to Caracal'la's murder. The senate confirmed their choice shortly after; and likewise that of his son Diadumenia'nus, whom he took as a partner in the empire. 25. Macri'nus was fifty-three years old when he entered upon the government. He was of obscure parentage; some say by birth a Moor, who, by the mere gradation of office, being made first præfect of the prætorian bands, was now, by treason and accident, called to fill the throne. U. C. 970. A. D. 217.

26. He was opposed by the intrigues of Mosa, and her grandson Heliogab'alus; and being conquered by some seditious legions of his own army, he fled to Chalce'don *, where those who were sent in pursuit overtook him, and put him to death, together with his son Diadumenia'nus, after a short reign of one year and two months.

27. The senate and citizens of Rome being obliged to submit, as usual, to the appointment of the army, Heliogab'alus ascended the throne at the age of fourteen. His short life was a mixture of effeminacy, lust, and extravagance. 28. He married U. C. 971. A. D. 218.

* A city of Bithyn'ia, in Asia Minor, opposite to Constantinople.

six wives in the short space of four years, and divorced them all. He was so fond of the sex, that he carried his mother with him to the senate-house, and demanded that she should always be present when matters of importance were debated. He even went so far as to build a senate-house for women, appointing them suitable orders, habits, and distinctions, of which his mother was made president. 29. They met several times; all their debates turned upon the fashions of the day, and the different formalities to be used at giving and receiving visits. To these follies he added cruelty and boundless prodigality; he used to say, that such dishes as were cheaply obtained were scarcely worth eating. It is even said that he attempted to foretel what was to happen, by inspecting the entrails of young men; and that he chose the most beautiful youths throughout Italy to be slain for that horrid purpose.

30. However, his soldiers *mutinying*, as was now usual with them, they followed him to his palace, pursuing him from apartment to apartment, till at last he was found concealed in a privy. Having dragged him from thence through the streets, with the most bitter invectives, and dispatched him, they attempted once more to squeeze his pampered body into a privy; but not easily effecting this, they threw it into the Tiber, with heavy weights, that none might afterwards find it, or give it burial. This was the ignominious death of Heliogab'alus, in the eighteenth year of his age, after a detestable reign of four years.

Questions for Examination.

1. Who succeeded Didius Julianus?
2. What was the character of Severus?
3. By what means did he strengthen his power?
4. What were his first acts?
5. To whom did he commit the government in his absence?
6. What were his exploits?

7. How did Plautian conduct himself in his important post?
8. How was this treachery discovered?
9. How was this effected?
10. Did Plautian fall into the snare?
11. How did he act on the occasion?
12. Was he pardoned?
13. How did Severus next employ himself?
14. What were his first measures in Britain?
15. Was it a difficult campaign?
16. Did he overcome these difficulties?
17. What famous work did he execute, and where did he die?
18. Who succeeded him, and how did the two emperors regard each other?
19. What was the conduct of Caracalla on thus becoming sole emperor?
20. Were these cruelties tamely suffered?
21. How was this effected?
22. Did the assassin escape?
23. What was the state of the empire during this reign?
24. Who succeeded Caracalla?
25. Who was Macrinus?
26. By whom was he opposed, and what was his fate?
27. How did Heliogabalus govern?
28. Give a few instances of his folly.
29. Did they enter into his views, and of what farther follies and vices was he guilty?
30. What was his end?

SECT. III.

1. Adula'tion, *s.* flattery.
2. Sculp'ture, *s.* the art of making statues.
7. Sym'metry, *s.* proportion.
9. Athlet'ic, *a.* robust, strong.
14. Alie'nated, *v.* changed, estranged.
19. Mutineer's, *s.* rebels, seditious soldiers.
21. Foment'ed, *v.* encouraged.

Note. Vers'ed, *part.* instructed, skilful.
Def'erence, *s.* respect.

1. HELIOGAB'ALUS was succeeded by Alexander, his cousin-german*, who, being declared emperor without

* A term generally applied to the children of brothers or sisters.

U. C. 975. A. D. 222. } opposition, the senate, with their usual *adulation*, were for conferring new titles upon him; but he modestly declined them all. 2. To the most rigid justice he added the greatest humanity. He loved the good, and was a severe reprover of the lewd and infamous. His accomplishments were equal to his virtues. He was an excellent mathematician, geometrician, and musician; he was equally skilful in painting and *sculpture;* and in poetry few of his time could equal him. In short, such were his talents, and such the solidity of his judgment, that though but sixteen years of age, he was considered equal in wisdom to a sage old man *.

3. About the thirteenth year of his reign, the Upper Germans, and other northern nations, began to pour down in immense swarms upon the more southern parts of the empire. They passed the Rhine and the Danube with such fury, that all Italy was thrown into the most extreme consternation. 4. The emperor, ever ready to expose his person for the safety of his people, made what levies he could, and went in person to stem the torrent; which he speedily effected. It was in the course of his successes against the enemy, that he was cut off by a mutiny among his own soldiers. He died in the twenty-ninth year of his age, after a prosperous reign of thirteen years and nine days †.

---

* To compensate for the inexperience of extreme youth, he chose sixteen senators for his council, all men of known probity, and long *versed* in public affairs, by whose advice he constantly acted; he paid likewise the utmost *deference* to his mother Ju'lia Mamme'a, and his grandmother Mæ'sa, both women of great understanding, experience, and honour. Alexander was considered one of the best princes ever seated on the throne. Artaxerx'es, king of Persia, having made irruptions upon some of the Roman provinces, Alexander marched against him, and after a successful war of four years, returned to Rome in triumph. Soon after this followed the incursions of the Germans into Illyr'ia, Gaul, &c.

† One instance of the noble-mindedness of Alexander ought not to be omitted. Hearing that Ovin'ius Camil'lus was making

5. The tumults occasioned by the death of Alexander being appeased, Max'imin, who had been the chief promotor of the sedition, was chosen emperor. (U. C. 988. A. D. 235.) 6. This extraordinary man, whose character deserves a particular attention, was born of very obscure parentage, being the son of a poor herdsman of Thrace *. He followed his father's humble profession, and had exercised his personal courage against the robbers who infested that part of the country in which he lived. Soon after, his ambition increasing, he left his poor employment, and enlisted in the Roman army, where he soon became remarkable for his great strength, discipline, and courage. 7. This gigantic man, we are told, was eight feet and a half high; he had strength corresponding to his size, being not more remarkable for the magnitude, than the *symmetry* of his person. His wife's bracelet usually served him for a thumb-ring; and his strength was so great, that he was able to draw a carriage which two oxen could not move. He could strike out the teeth of a horse with a blow of his fist, and break its thigh with a kick. 8. His diet was as extraordinary as his endowments: he generally ate forty pounds weight of flesh every day, and drank six gallons of wine, without committing any debauch in either. 9. With a frame so *athletic*, he was possessed of a mind undaunted in danger, and neither fearing nor regarding any man. 10. The first time he was made known to the emperor Seve'-

---

interest to raise himself to the empire, he sent for him, thanked him for offering to take upon him so great a burthen; styled him his colleague, offered him the command of the army, and took him with him on an expedition. They both set out together on foot, but Camil'lus soon growing fatigued, was allowed a horse, and afterwards a chariot; ashamed of conspiring against a prince of such magnanimity, he resigned all pretensions to sovereignty, and returned to his former private station.

* Thrace, an extensive province of ancient Greece, now called Roma'nia, in Turkey.

rus, was while he was celebrating games on the birth-day of his son Ge'ta. He overcame sixteen in running, one after the other; he then kept up with the emperor on horseback; and having fatigued him in the course, he was opposed to seven of the most active soldiers, and overcame them with the greatest ease. 11. These extraordinary exploits caused him to be particularly noticed; he had been taken into the emperor's body guard, and, by the usual gradation of preferment, came to be chief commander. In this situation he had been equally remarkable for his simplicity, discipline, and virtue; but, upon coming to the empire, was found to be one of the greatest monsters of cruelty that ever disgraced power; fearful of nothing himself, he seemed to sport with the terrors of all mankind *.

12. However, his cruelties did not retard his military operations, which were carried on with a spirit becoming a better monarch. He overthrew the Germans in several battles, wasted all their country with fire and sword for four hundred miles together, and formed a resolution of subduing all the northern nations, as far as the ocean. 13. In these expeditions, in order to attach the soldiers more firmly to him, he increased their pay; and, in every duty of the camp he himself took as much pains as the meanest centinel in his army, shewing incredible courage and assiduity. In every engagement, where the conflict was hottest, Max'imin was seen fighting in person, and destroying all before him; for, being bred a barbarian, he considered it as his duty to combat as a common soldier, while he commanded as a general.

14. In the mean time, his cruelties had so *alienated*

* So ashamed was he of the meanness of his origin, that he is said to have privately put to death all those who knew his parents, or any of his family; a sure way to reveal it more effectually to the world. He was by birth a Goth, from the north of Germany.

the minds of his subjects, that several conspiracies were secretly aimed against him *. None of them, however, succeeded, till at last his own soldiers, long harassed by famine and fatigue, and hearing of revolts on every side, resolved to terminate their calamities by the tyrant's death. 15. His great strength, and his being always armed, at first deterred them from assassinating him; but at length the soldiers, having made his guards accomplices in their designs, set upon him, while he slept at noon in his tent, and without opposition, slew both him and his son, whom he had made his partner in the empire. 16. Thus died this most remarkable man, after an usurpation of about three years, and in the sixty-fifth year of his age. His assiduity, when in humble station, and his cruelty when in power, serve to evince, that there are some men whose virtues are fitted for obscurity; as there are others who only shew themselves great when placed in an exalted station.

17. The tyrant being dead, and his body thrown to dogs and birds of prey, Pupie'nus† and Balbie'nus, who had usurped the imperial purple, continued for some time emperors, without opposition. 18. But, differing between themselves, the prætorian soldiers, who were the enemies of both, set upon them in their palace, at a time when their guards were amused with seeing the Capit'oline games‡, and dragging them

U. C. 991. A. D. 238.

* Of these, the most formidable was that of the two Gordians, father and son; who, after wearing the imperial diadem for little more than a month, with the entire approbation of the senate and people, were slain in battle with the troops of Max'imin (who were commanded by Capel'lian, governor of Maurita'nia), near Carthage, in Africa.

† Pupie'nus was of low birth, the son of a blacksmith, but of extraordinary merit; Balbie'nus, of an illustrious family; the former was celebrated for his military, the latter for his political talents. They were chosen to the empire by the senate, but were soon afterwards killed, as mentioned in the text.

‡ Capit'oline games were those which were celebrated in honour of Jupiter Capitoli'nus, who was so named from Capito'-

from the palace towards the camp, slew them both, leaving their dead bodies in the street, as a dreadful instance of unsuccessful ambition.

19. In the midst of this sedition, as the *mutineers* were proceeding along, they by accident met Gor'dian, the grandson of him who was slain in Africa: him they declared emperor on the spot. U. C. 991 A. D. 238. 20. This prince was but sixteen years old when he began his reign, but his virtues seemed to compensate for his want of experience. His principal aims were to unite the opposing members of government, and to reconcile the soldiers and citizens to each other. 21. The army, however, began as usual to murmur; and their complaints were artfully *fomented* by Philip, an Arabian, who was prætorin præfect, and aspired to the sovereignty. Things thus proceeded from bad to worse. 22. Philip was, at first, made equal to Gor'dian in the command of the empire; shortly after he was invested with the sole power, and at length, finding himself capable of perpetrating his long meditated cruelty, Gor'dian was by his order slain, in the twenty-second year of his age, after a successful reign of nearly six years *.

Questions for Examination.

1. Who succeeded Heliogabalus?
2. What was his character?
3. Was his reign peaceable?
4. How did Alexander act on the occasion?
5. Who succeeded Alexander?

---

lium, a superb temple at Rome, situated on the Tarpe'ian Rock, which was dedicated to Jupiter.

* Two years preceding this event, the frontiers of the Roman empire were invaded by Sapor, king of Persia, when Gor'dian advanced against him, and after having, in his way through Illyr'ia, reduced the Goths and Sarma'tians, he gained a great victory over Sapor, and retook several cities. It was in his return from this successful campaign against the Persians, in 244, when his army revolted, and he was slain.

6. Who was Maximin?
7. Describe his person?
8. What farther distinguished him?
9. Was his mind proportioned to his body?
10. How did he attract the notice of Severus?
11. By what means did he attain rank in the army?
12. Was he equally a terror to his foreign enemies?
13. By what means did he gain the confidence of his soldiers?
14. What effect had his cruelties on the minds of his subjects?
15. How did they accomplish their purpose?
16. How long did he reign, and what inference may be drawn from his conduct?
17. Who next mounted the imperial throne?
18. What was their end?
19. Who succeeded Pupienus and Balbienus?
20. What were the character and views of this prince?
21. Was his administration approved of by all?
22. Did Philip accomplish his ambitious designs?

SECT. IV.

U. C. 996.—A. D. 243.

13. At'titude, *s.* posture.

1. PHILIP, having thus murdered his benefactor, was so fortunate as to be immediately acknowledged emperor by the army. Upon his exaltation he associated his son, a boy of six years of age, as his partner in the empire; and, in order to secure his power at home, made peace with the Persians, and marched his army towards Rome. 2. However, the army revolting in favour of De'cius, his general, and setting violently upon him, one of his centinels at a blow cut off his head, or rather cleft it asunder, separating the under jaw from the upper. He died in the forty-fifth year of his age, after a reign of about five years *.

* Philip, the Arabian, was the son of a chief of banditti. He commanded in Mesopotamia; and, with the view of expediting his journey to Rome, he gave it up to the Persians. He celebrated the secular games, with a magnificence exceeding all that

3. De'cius was universally acknowledged as his successor. His activity and wisdom seemed, in some measure, to stop the hastening decline of the Roman empire. The senate seemed to think so highly of his merits, that they voted him not inferior to Tra'jan; and indeed he appeared in every instance to consult their dignity, and the welfare of all the inferior ranks of people. 4. But no virtues could now prevent the approaching downfall of the state: the obstinate disputes between the Pagans and the Christians within the empire, and the unceasing irruptions of barbarous nations from without, enfeebled it beyond the power of remedy. 5. He was killed in an ambuscade of the enemy, in the fiftieth year of his age, after a short reign of two years and six months *.

U. C. 1001. A. D. 248.

6. Gal'lus, who had betrayed the Roman army, had address enough to get himself declared emperor by that part of it which survived the defeat: he was forty-five years old when he began to reign †, and was descended from an honourable family in Rome. 7. He was the first who bought a dishonourable peace from the enemies of the state, agreeing to pay a considerable annual tribute to the Goths, whom it was his duty to repress. He was regardless of every national ca-

U. C. 1004. A. D. 251.

---

had been seen before. Decius revolted in Panno'nia, where Philip was defeated and killed by his own soldiers.

* Though Decius was in other respects as here described, a good and virtuous prince, he was a furious persecutor of the Christians, many thousands of whom were tortured and put to cruel deaths. Great numbers betook themselves to barren mountains, rocks, and deserts; choosing rather to dwelt among wild beasts, than with men who had divested themselves of reason and humanity.

† He took his son Valu'sian as his associate. The dishonourable peace which he made with the Goths was soon broken by the latter; and, about the same time, Sapor, the king of the Persians, invaded Mesopota'mia and Syria, and conquered Arme'nia. It was from his not seeming to notice these invasions, that his soldiers were exasperated at his indolence, and killed him with his son.

lamity, and was lost in debauchery and sensuality. The Pagans were allowed a power of persecuting the Christians through all parts of the state. 8. These calamities were succeeded by a pestilence from heaven, that seemed to have spread over every part of the earth, and continued raging for several years, in an unheard-of manner; as well as by a civil war, which followed shortly after: between Gallus and his general Æmilia'nus, who having gained a victory over the Goths, was proclaimed emperor by his conquering army. 9. Gallus, hearing this, soon roused from the intoxications of pleasure, and prepared to oppose his dangerous rival: but both he and his son were slain by Æmilia'nus, in a battle fought in Mesia. His death was merited, and his vices were such as to deserve the detestation of posterity. He died in the forty-seventh year of his age, after an unhappy reign of two years and four months, in which the empire suffered inexpressible calamities.

10. The senate refused to acknowledge the claims of Æmilia'nus *; and an army that was stationed near the Alps chose Vale'rian †, who was their commander to succeed to the throne. 11. He (U. C. 1006. A. D. 253.) set about reforming the state with a spirit that seemed to mark a good and vigorous mind. But reformation was now grown almost impracticable. 12. The Persians, under their king Sapor, invading Syr'ia, took the unfortunate Vale'rian prisoner ‡, as he was making prepara-

* He was slain by his own troops, after a short reign of three or four months, as he was marching against Vale'rian, who had been proclaimed emperor in Rhe'tia.

† Vale'rian was of an illustrious family, and adored by all ranks for his integrity, prudence, modesty, and extraordinary accomplishments. He was a friend to virtue, and an enemy to all wickedness and tyranny.

‡ Some say that this disaster was occasioned by the treachery of one Macria'nus, a celebrated magician, who persuaded Vale'rian to engage on disadvantageous ground; others affirm that, after his defeat, being prevailed upon to confer in person with Sapor, he was by that treacherous prince seized and carried into Persia.

tions to oppose them; and the indignities as well as the cruelties, which were practised upon this unhappy monarch, thus fallen into the hands of his enemies, are almost incredible. 13. Sapor, we are told, used him as a footstool for mounting his horse; he added the bitterness of ridicule to his insults, and usually observed, that an *attitude* like that to which Vale'rian was reduced, was the best statue that could be erected in honour of his victory. 14. This horrid life of insult and sufferance continued for seven years; and was, at length, terminated by the cruel Persian commanding his prisoner's eyes to be plucked out, and afterwards causing him to be flayed alive *.

U. C. 1012. A. D. 259. 15. When Vale'rian was taken prisoner, Galie'nus, his son, promising to revenge the insult, was chosen emperor, being then about forty-one years old. However, he soon discovered, that he sought rather the splendours than the toils of empire; for, after having overthrown Inge'nuus, who had assumed the title of emperor, he sat down, as if fatigued with conquest, and gave himself up to ease and luxury †. 16. At this time, no less than thirty pretenders were seen contending with each other for the dominion of the state, and adding the calamities of civil war to the rest of the misfortunes of this devoted empire. These are usually mentioned in history by the name of the thirty tyrants. 17. In this

* That he was flayed, and his skin dressed, dyed red, and exposed as a monument of the Persian monarch's triumph, is allowed by all historians; but that he was flayed alive, rests merely on the authority of Aga'thias, who is contradicted by all the rest.

† The cruelty of his disposition may be inferred from the following letter to one of his officers: "I shall not be satisfied with your putting to death only such as have borne arms against me, and might have fallen in the field; you must, in every city, destroy all the males, old and young; spare none who have wished ill to me, none who have spoken ill of me, the son of Vale'rian, the father and brother of princes. Ingen'uus emperor!! Tear, kill, and cut in pieces without mercy; do as you know I would do, who have written to you with my own hand." He was too well obeyed.

general calamity, Galie'nus, though at first seemingly insensible, was at length obliged, for his own security, to take the field, and led an army to besiege the city of *Milan*, which had been taken by one of the thirty usurping tyrants. In this expedition he was slain by his own soldiers; Mar'tian, one of his generals, having conspired against him.

18. Fla'vius Clau'dius being nominated to succeed, was joyfully accepted by all orders of the state, and his title confirmed by the senate and the people. { U. C. 1021. A. D. 268.

19. He was a man of great valour and conduct, having performed the most excellent services against the Goths, who had long continued to make irruptions into the empire; but, after a great victory over that barbarous people *, he was seized with a pestilential fever at Ser'mium in Panno'nia, of which he died, to the great regret of his subjects, and the irreparable loss of the Roman empire.

20. Upon the death of Clau'dius, Aure'lian was acknowledged by all the states of the empire, and assumed the command with a greater share of power than his predecessors had enjoyed for a long time before. { U. C. 1023. A. D. 270.

21. This active monarch was of mean and obscure parentage in Da'cia, and about fifty-five years old at the time of his coming to the throne †. He had spent the early part of his life in the army, and had risen through all the gradations of military duty. He was of unshaken courage and amazing strength. He, in one engagement, killed forty of the enemy with his own hand; and at different times above nine hundred. In short, his valour and expedition were such, that he was compared to Julius Cæsar; and, in fact, only wanted

* With a comparatively small body of men, he defeated and destroyed 320,000 of the barbarians; and for this memorable victory the emperor took the surname of Goth'icus.

† At the time of his being chosen emperor, he was general of the armies of Thrace and Illyr'ia.

mildness and clemency to be every way his equal. 22. Among those who were compelled to submit to his power, was the famous Zeno'bia, queen of Palmy'ra. He subdued her country, destroyed her city, and took her prisoner*. Longi'nus, the celebrated critic, who was secretary to the queen, was by Aure'lian's order put to death. Zeno'bia was reserved to grace his triumph; and afterwards was allotted such lands, and such an income, as served to maintain her in almost her former splendour. 23. But the emperor's severities were at last the cause of his own destruction. Mnes'theus, his principal secretary, having been threatened by him for some fault which he had committed, formed a conspiracy against him, and as the emperor passed, with a small guard, from Ura'clea, in Thrace, towards Byzan'tium†, the conspirators set upon him at once and slew him, in the sixtieth year of his age, after a very active reign of almost five years.

24. After some time‡ the senate made choice of Ta'- U. C. 1028. A. D. 275. citus, a man of great merit, and no way ambitious of the honours that were offered him, being at that time seventy-five years old. 25. A reign begun with much moderation and justice, only wanted continuance to have made his subjects happy: but, after enjoying the empire about six months, he died of a fever in his march to oppose the Persians and Scyth'ians, who had invaded the eastern parts of the empire. 26. During this short period, the senate seemed to have possessed a large share of authority, and the historians of the times are liberal of their praises to such emperors as were thus willing to divide their power.

---

* This was but an ungrateful return for the services her husband, Odena'tus, had rendered the empire; who, for his victories over the Persians, had been associated with Galie'nus in the imperial throne.

† Byzan'tium, a noble city of Thrace, now called Constan'tinople.

‡ The interregnum was eight months.

27. Upon the death of Ta"citus, his half-brother took upon himself the title of emperor, in Cile'sia; but being twice defeated by Pro'bus, he killed himself in despair, when the whole army, as if by common consent, cried out that Pro'bus* should be emperor. 28. He was then forty-four years old; was born of noble parentage, and bred a soldier. He began early to distinguish himself for his discipline and valour; being frequently the first man that scaled the walls, or that burst into the enemy's camp. He was equally remarkable for single combat, and for having saved the lives of many eminent citizens. Nor were his activity and courage, when elected to the empire, less apparent than in his private station. 29. Every year now produced new calamities to the state; and fresh irruptions on every side threatened universal desolation. Perhaps at this time no abilities, except those of Pro'bus, were capable of opposing such united invasions. 30. However, in the end, his own mutinous soldiers, taking their opportunity, as he was marching into Greece, seized and slew him, after he had reigned six years and four months with general approbation †. He was succeeded by Ca'rus.

Questions for Examination.

1. Did Philip succeed without opposition?
2. Was his reign of long duration?
3. What was the character of Decius?
4. Did he restore the empire to its former grandeur?
5. What was his end?
6. Who succeeded him?
7. What was his character?

---

* A native of Panno'nia.

† Pro'bus was every where victorious, and Vara'nes II. king of Persia, was so much terrified by his triumph over the Sarma'tians, in Illyr'ia, that he went in person to meet him, and ask for peace. Pro'bus having restored tranquillity to his empire, paid particular attention to agriculture, when he was taken off, as mentioned in the text.

8. What farther calamities distinguished this reign?
9. What effect had this news on Gallus?
10. Who succeeded Gallus?
11. What were his first acts and their effects?
12. What disaster befel him?
13. How was he treated in captivity?
14. Did he long survive this cruelty?
15. Who succeeded him?
16. Was Galienus the only pretender to the throne?
17. What measures did Galienus adopt on this?
18. Who succeeded Galienus?
19. What were his character and end?
20. Who succeeded Claudius?
21. Who was Aurelian?
22. Over whom did he triumph?
23. What occasioned his destruction?
24. Who succeeded Aurelian?
25. Did he govern well?
26. What distinguished his reign?
27. Who succeeded Tacitus?
28. What were the qualifications of Probus?
29. What was the state of the empire at this time?
30. What was the end of Probus?

SECT. V.

U. C. 1035.—A. D. 282.

1. Sul'lied, *v.* soiled, defiled.
3. Inconso'lable, *a.* not to be comforted.
4. Merc'enary, *a.* one who acts for hire.
7. Saga"city, *s.* wisdom, acuteness.
8. Inacces'sible, *a.* not to be approached.
9. Perseve'rance, *s.* steadiness in pursuit.
13. Dispar'ity, *s.* inequality.
    Baf'fled, *v.* confounded.
16. Sub'lunary, *a.* terrestrial, earthly.
    Ejacula'tions, *s.* short, but fervent prayers.
17. Arus'pices, *s.* diviners who foretold future events from the entrails of the victim sacrificed.
    Inauspi"cious, *a.* unlucky.
18. Celes'tial, *a.* heavenly.

1. CA'RUS, who was prætorian prefect to the deceased emperor, was chosen by the army to succeed him; and he, to strengthen his authority, united his two sons,

Cari'nus and Nume'rian, with him in command; the elder of whom was as much *sullied* by his vices, as the younger was remarkable for his virtues, his modesty, and courage.

2. The next object of Ca'rus was to punish the murderers of Pro'bus, and procure public tranquillity. Several nations of the west having revolted, he sent his son Cari'nus against them, and advanced himself against the Sarma'tians, whom he defeated, with the loss of sixteen thousand men killed, and twenty thousand prisoners. Soon after this he entered Persia, and recovered Mesopota'mia. Vara'nes the Second, king of Persia, advancing against him was defeated, and lost Ctes'iphon, his capital. This conquest gained Ca'rus the surname of Per'sicus; but he had not enjoyed it long, when he was struck dead by lightning, in his tent, with many of his attendants, after a reign of about sixteen months. Upon the death of Ca'rus, the imperial power devolved on his sons Cari'nus and Nume'rian, who reigned jointly. In the first year of their accession, having made peace with the Persians, Cari'nus advanced against Ju'lian; who had caused himself to be proclaimed in Vene'tia *, and whom he defeated; when he returned again into Gaul.

3. Cari'nus was at this time in Gaul, but Nume'rian, the younger son, who accompanied his father in his expedition, was *inconsolable* for his death, and brought such a disorder upon his eyes with weeping, that he was obliged to be carried along with the army, shut up in a close litter. 4. The peculiarity of his situation, after some time, excited the ambition of A'per, his father-in-law, who supposed that he could now, without any great danger, aim at the empire himself. He therefore hired a *mercenary* villain to murder the emperor in his litter; and, the better to conceal the fact, gave out that he was still alive,

* Now called Ven'ice.

but unable to endure the light. 5. The offensive smell, however, of the body, at length discovered the treachery, and excited an universal uproar throughout the whole army. 6. In the midst of this tumult, Diocle'sian, one of the most noted commanders of his time, was chosen emperor, and with his own hand slew A'per; having thus, as it is said, fulfilled a prophecy, that Diocle'sian should be emperor after he had slain a boar *.

7. Diocle'sian was a person of mean birth; he received his name from Dio'clea†, the town in which he was born, and was about forty years old when he was elected to the empire‡. He owed his exaltation entirely to his merit; having passed through all the gradations of office with *sagacity*, courage, and success.

U. C. 1057. A. D. 284.

8. In his time, the northern hive, as it was called, poured down its swarms of barbarians upon the Roman empire §. Ever at war with the Romans, they issued forth, whenever that army was to repress their invasions was called away; and, upon its return, they as suddenly withdrew into their cold, barren, and *inaccessible* retreats, which themselves alone could endure. 9. In this manner the Scyth'ians, Goths, Sarma'tians, Ala'ni, Car'sii, and Qua'di, came down in incredible numbers, while every defeat seemed but to increase their strength

* A'per signifies a boar.

† A town on the coast of Dalma'tia, on the eastern shore of the Gulf of Ven'ice.

‡ Cari'nus, on hearing of his brother's death, and Dioclesian's accession, hastened from Gaul to oppose the usurper, and completely routed him in a general engagement; but, while pursuing the enemy, was killed by his own soldiers.

§ On account of the numerous enemies which Diocle'sian had to oppose on every side, he made Maxim'ian his associate; and, in 292, took two other colleagues, Constan'tius Chlo'rus and Galerus. In 296, Dioclesian went into Egypt, against the tyrant Achil'leus, whom he defeated and took prisoner. In 303, he began to persecute the Christians; and his great cruelty against them has been justly branded with the appellation of unbounded tyranny, and insolent wantonness.

and *perseverance*. 10. After gaining many victories over these, and in the midst of his triumphs, Diocle'sian and Maxim'ian*, his partner in the empire, surprised the world by resigning their dignities on the same day, and both retiring into private stations. 11. In this manner Diocle'sian lived some time, and at length died either by poison or madness, but by which of them is uncertain. His reign of twenty years was active and useful; and his authority, which was tinctured with severity, was adapted to the depraved state of morals at that time.

12. Upon the resignation of the two emperors, the two Cæsars, whom they had before chosen, were universally acknowledged as their successors, namely, Constan'tius Chlo'rus, so called from the paleness of his complexion, a man virtuous, valiant, and merciful; and Gale'rius†, who was brave, but brutal, incontinent, and cruel. 13. As there was such a *disparity* in their tempers, they readily agreed, upon coming into full power, to divide the empire. Constan'tius was ap-

U. C. 1057. A. D. 304.

* Maxim'ian was of a mean extraction, and of a savage and cruel disposition; but a valiant, experienced, and trusty commander; which was also a reason why Diocle'sian chose him for his colleague. Soon after his association in sovereign power, he went into Gaul, where he subdued the Bau'gaudi, a faction of peasants, who had rebelled. Afterwards he made war against the Burgun'dians, He'ruli, and Germans. In 297 he went into Africa, and reduced five towns of Lybia. Diocle'sian and Maxim'ian abdicated the throne the 1st of May, A.D. 304; this was not done willingly, but to avoid a civil war, which was threatened by Galie'nus, if they refused. Diocle'sian retired to his palace near Salo'na, now Spala'to, where he amused himself by cultivating his garden. Maxim'ian, after his death, resumed the empire, and reigned with great glory twenty years; but, making some unsuccessful attempts on Con'stantine, his colleague, he was arrested, condemned, and nothing left him but to choose his own death, when he strangled himself at Marseilles, A. D. 310, in the 60th year of his age. His body was found fresh and entire in a leaden coffin, about the middle century.

† Gale'rius was originally a cowherd, afterwards a common soldier; but by his valour and conduct rose by degrees to the imperial throne. He governed principally over the provinces of Thra'cia and Illy'ria.

pointed to govern the western parts, and died at York, in Britain, A. D. 396, appointing Con'stantine, his son, as his successor. Gale'rius was seized with a very extraordinary disorder, which *baffled* the skill of his physicians, and carried him off.

14. Con'stantine, afterwards surnamed the Great, had some competitors at first for the throne. Among the rest was Maxen'tius, who was at that time in possession of Rome, and a steadfast asserter of Paganism. 15. It was in Con'stantine's march against that usurper, we are told, that he was converted to Christianity, by a very extraordinary appearance. 16. One evening, the army being on its march towards Rome, Con'stantine was intent on various considerations upon the fate of *sublunary* things, and the dangers of his approaching expedition. Sensible of his own incapacity to succeed without divine assistance, he employed his meditations upon the opinions that were then agitated among mankind, and sent up his *ejaculations* to heaven to inspire him with wisdom to choose the path he should pursue. As the sun was declining, there suddenly appeared a pillar of light in the heavens, in the fashion of a cross, with this inscription, ΤΟΥΤΩ ΝΙΚΑ, IN THIS OVERCOME. 17. So extraordinary an appearance did not fail to create astonishment, both in the emperor and his whole army, who reflected on it as their various dispositions led them to believe. Those who were attached to Paganism, prompted by their *aruspices*, pronounced it to be a most *inauspicious* omen, portending the most unfortunate events; but it made a different impression on the emperor's mind: who, as the account goes, was farther encouraged by visions the same night. 18. He therefore, the day following, caused a royal standard to be made, like that which he had seen in the heavens, and commanded it to be carried before him in his wars,

U. C. 1064. A. D. 211.

as an ensign of victory and *celestial* protection. After this he consulted with the principal teachers of Christianity, and made a public avowal of that holy religion.

19. Con'stantine having thus attached his soldiers to his interest, who were mostly of the Christian persuasion, lost no time in entering Italy, with ninety thousand foot and eight thousand horse, and soon advanced almost to the very gates of Rome. Maxen'tius advanced from the city with an army of a hundred and seventy thousand foot and eighteen thousand horse. 20. The engagement was fierce and bloody, till the cavalry of the latter being routed, victory declared upon the side of his opponent, and he himself was drowned in his flight by the breaking down of a bridge, as he attempted to cross the Tiber.

21. In consequence of this victory, Con'stantine entered the city, but disclaimed all the praises which the senate and people were ready to offer; and ascribed his success to a superior power. He even caused the cross, which he was said to have seen in the heavens, to be placed at the right of all his statues, with this inscription: "That under the influence of that Victorious Cross, Con'stantine had delivered the city from the yoke of tyrannical power, and had restored the senate and people of Rome to their ancient authority." 22. He afterwards ordained that no criminal should, for the future, suffer death upon the cross, which had formerly been the most usual way of punishing slaves convicted of capital offences. Edicts were soon after issued, declaring that the Christians should be eased of all their grievances, and received into places of trust and authority.

23. Things continued in this state for some time. Con'stantine contributing every thing in his power to the interest of religion, and the revival of learning, which had long been upon the decline, and was almost wholly extinct in his dominions. 24. But, in the midst of these assiduities, the peace of the empire was again disturbed by

the preparations of Max'imin, who governed in the east; and who, desirous of a full participation of power, marched against Licin'ius with a very numerous army. 25. In consequence of this step, after many conflicts, a general engagement ensued, in which Max'imin suffered a total defeat; many of his troops were cut to pieces, and those that survived submitted to the conqueror. Having, however, escaped the general carnage, he put himself at the head of another army, resolving to try the fortune of the field; but his death prevented the design. 26. As he died by a very extraordinary kind of madness, the Christians, of whom he was the declared enemy, did not fail to ascribe his end to a judgment from heaven. But this was the age in which false opinions and false miracles made up the bulk of every history.

Questions for Examination.

1. Who succeeded Probus?
2. Mention the actions of Carus, and the manner of his death?
3. How were his sons affected by this catastrophe?
4. What was the consequence?
5. How was this atrocious act discovered?
6. Did Aper reap the reward of his treachery?
7. Who was Dioclesian?
8. By whom was the empire now invaded?
9. Were they effectually repelled?
10. What remarkable event now occurred?
11. What was the end of Dioclesian?
12. Who succeeded Dioclesian and Maximian?
13. How did they conduct the administration?
14. Did Constantine succeed without any opposition?
15. Did not a remarkable occurrence happen about this time
16. Repeat the particulars?
17. What effect had this appearance on the emperor and his men?
18. What orders did he issue in consequence?
19. What was the respective strength of the hostile armies?
20. What was the result of the engagement?
21. What use did Constantine make of his victory?
22. What edicts did he publish on the occasion?

23. How was Constantine employed after this?
24. Did the peace long continue?
25. What was the consequence?
26. To what was his death ascribed?

SECT. VI.

8. Impli"citly, *ad.* without hesitation, without resistance.
Her'esy, *s.* an error in religion.
9. Pres'byters, *s.* priests or elders.
Dea'cons, *s.* inferior priests, officers of the church.
11. Plau'sible, *a.* specious, likely.

1. CON'STANTINE and Licin'ius thus remaining undisputed possessors of, and partners in, the empire, all things promised a peaceable continuance of friendship and power. 2. However, it was soon found that the same ambition that aimed after a part, would be content with nothing less than the whole. Pagan writers ascribe the rupture between these two potentates to Con'stantine; while the Christians, on the other hand, impute it wholly to Licin'ius. 3. Both sides exerted all their power to gain the ascendancy; and, at the head of very formidable armies, came to an engagement near Cy'balis, in Panno'nia. 4. Con'stantine, previous to the battle, in the midst of his Christian bishops, begged the assistance of heaven; while Licin'ius, with equal zeal, called upon the Pagan priests to intercede with the gods in their favour *. 5. The success was on the side of truth. Con'stantine, after experiencing an obstinate resistance, became victorious, took the enemy's camp, and after some time compelled Licin'ius to sue for a truce, which was agreed upon. 6. But this was of no long continu-

* Writers of credit assert, that Licin'ius designed, if victorious, to commence a most furious persecution against the Christians.

ance; for, soon after, the war breaking out afresh, the rivals came once more to a general engagement, and it proved decisive. Licin'ius was entirely defeated, and pursued by Con'stantine into Nicome'dia, where he surrendered himself up to the victor; having first obtained an oath that his life should be spared, and that he should be permitted to pass the remainder of his days in retirement. 7. This, however, Constantine shortly after broke; for, either fearing his designs, or finding him actually engaged in fresh conspiracies *, he commanded him to be put to death, together with Mar'tian, his general, who some time before had been created Cæsar.

8. Con'stantine being thus become sole monarch, resolved to establish Christianity on so sure a basis, that no new revolution should shake it. He commanded that, in all the provinces of the empire, the orders of the bishops should be *implicitly* obeyed. He called also a general council †, in order to repress the *heresies* that had already crept into the church, particularly that of A'rius ‡. 9. To this council, at which he presided in person, repaired about three hundred and eighteen bishops, besides a multitude of *presbyters* and *deacons;* who all, except about seventeen, concurred in condemning the tenets of A'rius, who, with his associates, was banished into a remote part of the empire.

10. Thus he restored universal tranquillity to his dominions, but was not able to ward off calamities of a more domestic nature. As the wretched historians of this period are entirely at variance with each other, it is not easy to explain the motives which induced him to put his wife Faus'ta, and his son Cris'pus, to death. 11. The

* Soc'rates (not the celebreted Athenian philosopher) asserts that this was actually the case.

† Called, from the place where it assembled, the Council of Nice.

‡ A'rius was the head of the sect who denied the proper divinity of Christ.

most *plausible* account is this: Faus'ta, the empress, who was a woman of great beauty, but of extravagant desires, had long, though secretly, loved Cris'pus, Constantine's son by a former wife. 12. She had tried every art to inspire this youth with a mutual passion; and, finding her more distant efforts ineffectual, had even the confidence to make him an open confession of her desires. 13. This produced an explanation which was fatal to both. Cris'pus received her addresses with detestation; and she, to be revenged, accused him him to the emperor. 14. Con'stantine, fired at once with jealousy and rage, condemned him to death without a hearing; nor did his innocence appear till it was too late for redress *. 15. The only reparation, therefore, that remained, was the putting Faus'ta to death, which was accordingly executed upon her, together with some others, who had been accomplices in her falsehood and treachery.

16. But it is supposed, that all the good he did was not equal to the evil the empire sustained by his transferring the imperial seat from Rome to Byzan'tium, or Constan'tinople, as it was afterwards called. 17. Whatever might have been the reasons which induced him to this undertaking; whether it was because he was offended at some affronts he had received at Rome, or that he supposed Constan'tinople more in the centre of the empire, or that he thought the eastern parts more required his presence, experience has shewn that they were all weak and groundless. 18. The empire had long before been in a most declining state; but this, in a great measure, gave precipitation to its downfall. After this, it never resumed its former splendour, but, like a flower transplanted into

* Cris'pus was a prince of extraordinary endowments, and was universally beloved by the people and soldiery, on account of his bravery, his obliging behaviour, generosity, and other excellent qualities. This cruel execution is a sad blot in the character of Con'stantine.

a foreign clime, languished by degrees, and at length sunk into nothing.

19. At first, his design was to build a city, which he might make the capital of the world; and for this purpose he made choice of a situation at Chal'cedon, in Asia Minor; but we are told that, in laying out the ground plan, an eagle caught up the line, and flew with it over to Byzan'tium, a city which lay upon the opposite side of the Bos'phorus. 20. Here, therefore, it was thought expedient to fix the seat of empire; and, indeed, nature seemed to have formed it with all the conveniences, and all the beauties which might induce power to make it the seat of residence. 21. It was situated on a plain, that rose gently from the water: it commanded that strait which unites the Mediterranean with the Euxine sea, and was furnished with all the advantages which the most indulgent climate could bestow. 22. The city, therefore, U. C. 1084. A. D. 330. } he beautified with the most magnificent edifices; he divided it into fourteen regions; built a capitol, an amphitheatre, many churches, and other public works; and having thus rendered it equal to the magnificence of his idea, he dedicated it in a very solemn manner to the God of Martyrs; and in about two years after repaired thither with his whole court.

23. This removal produced no immediate alteration in the government of the empire. The inhabitants of Rome, though with reluctance, submitted to the change; nor was there, for two or three years, any disturbance in the state, until at length the Goths, finding that the Romans had withdrawn all their garrisons along the Danube, renewed their inroads, and ravaged the country with unheard of cruelty. 24. Con'stantine, however, soon repressed their incursions, and so straitened them, that nearly a hundred thousand of their number perished by cold and hunger.

25. Another great error ascribed to him is, the dividing

the empire among his sons. Con'stantine, the emperor's eldest son, commanded in Gaul and the western provinces; Constan'tius, his second, governed Af'rica and Illyr'icum; and Con'stans, the youngest, ruled in Italy. 26. This division of the empire still further contributed to its downfall; for the united strength of the state being no longer brought to repress invasion, the barbarians fought with superior numbers, and conquered at last, though often defeated. When Con'stantine was above sixty years old, and had reigned about thirty, he found his health decline. 27. His disorder, which was an ague, increasing, he went to Nicome'dia, where, finding himself without hopes of a recovery, he caused himself to be baptized. He soon after received the sacrament and expired *.

Questions for Examination.

1. What was the state of the empire at this period?
2. Was this peace lasting, and by whom was it broken?
3. Was the contest likely to be vigorous?
4. In what way did the two emperors prepare for the conflict?
5. What was the result?
6. Was this truce religiously observed?
7. Did Constantine fulfil his engagement?
8. What was Constantine's resolution on becoming sole monarch, and what steps did he take?
9. By whom was it attended, and what was the result?
10. Was he happy in his domestic relations?
11. What is the most plausible account?
12. Was Crispus aware of her love?
13. How was it received?
14. How did Constantine act on the occasion?
15. What reparation was made for this injustice?

---

* The character of Constantine is variously represented, according to the affections or passions of the writers. By the Heathens, he is represented as a compound of every vice; by the Christians, as pious and virtuous in the extreme; but all agree, that he possessed the qualities requisite to form a great, if not a good prince.

16. Was the removal of the seat of the empire beneficial to the state?
17. Were his reasons for doing so well grounded?
18. What was the consequence?
19. What was his original intention, and what induced him to alter it?
20. Was it a convenient spot?
21. Describe its situation?
22. What alteration did he make, and to whom was it dedicated?
23. What was the immediate effect of this transfer?
24. Were they vigorously opposed?
25. Of what error is Constantine accused besides?
26. What was the consequence of this division?
27. Relate the particulars of his death?

Dr. Goldsmith having concluded his History too abruptly, it has been thought advisable to cancel his last chapter, and substitute the following brief notice of the events which occurred from the death of Constantine to the final extinction of the Empire of the West.

CHAPTER XXV.

From the Death of Constantine the Great, to the Death of Theodosius the Great.

1. Tran'sient, *a.* short-lived, passing away.
2. Frater'nal, *a.* brotherly.
6. Alle'giance, *s.* the duty of a subject to a sovereign.
10. Circumvent'ed, *part.* deceived.
19. Ob'elisks, *s.* small pyramids.
22. Supre'macy, *s.* highest authority.
23. Asper'ity, *s.* roughness, sharpness.
29. Pre'mature, *a.* early.
34. Confid'ed, *part.* entrusted.
45. Stip'ulating, *part.* making an agreement.
46. Contraven'tion, *s.* opposition.
47. Perfid'ious, *a.* treacherous.

1. FROM this dreary period, the recovery of the empire became desperate, no wisdom could obviate its declension, no courage effectually oppose the evils that surrounded it on every side; and though the increasing

gloom was now and then dispelled by a few *transient* flashes, they served only to render the succeeding darkness more horrible.

2. After the death of Con'stantine, his three sons continued for a short time to govern their respective portions of the empire in peace; but ambition soon getting the better of *fraternal* affection, Con'stantine invaded the dominions of his brother Con'stans, spreading terror and devastation wherever he appeared. 3. Being opposed, however, by a body of troops detached by Con'stans to retard his progress, he was decoyed into a wood, and there met with the fate his unprincipled ambition and covetousness deserved. { A. D. 333.

3. By this event, Con'stans became master of the territories of his brother, which he added to his own: but, as it is easier to acquire dominion than to rule with wisdom and moderation, Con'stans soon lost the affections of his subjects, which encouraged Magnen'tius, an enterprising soldier, of barbarian extraction, to proclaim himself emperor. 5. Against this usurper Con'stans could make no resistance; for so completely had he disgusted the army by his vices and his weakness, that they almost to a man deserted his standard, and went over to his rival: he himself was overtaken and slain as he was attempting to escape, about thirteen years after the death of his father had placed the sceptre in his hands. 6. The legions of Illyr'icum, however, refused to acknowledge Magnen'tius for their sovereign, and swore *allegiance* to their general, Vetra'nio. { A. D. 340.

7. In the mean time, Constan'tius had been carrying on an inglorious and unsuccessful war against Sa'por, king of Persia, who had invaded his territories, and penetrated as far as An'tioch. 6. In this war Constan'tius sustained repeated defeats, but the battle of Singa'ra * having ter-

* A city of Mesopota'mia, now Singar.

minated in his favour, and put the two sons of Sa'por in his power, he is said to have caused the princes to be inhumanly scourged, and publicly executed in the Roman camp; an action more becoming a barbarous savage, than the ruler of an enlightened empire, and a professor of the Christian religion.

9. No sooner, however, did he hear of the death of Con'stans, and of the usurpation of Magnen'tius and Vetra'nio, than he hastened to conclude a treaty with Sa'por, and marched with all expedition to oppose these intruders on his rights. 10. Vetra'nio he *circumvented* by a stratagem, and generously pardoned, allotting him the city of Pru'sa* for his residence, and permitting him to spend the remainder of his life in ease and affluence. 11. But Magnen'tius proved a more formidable opponent, determined to maintain by arms what he had by treachery acquired. The spot chosen to decide the contest was at Mursa, on the Drave, in Panno'nia†. 12. Here Constan'tius, after having animated his soldiers by an eloquent harangue, retired to a place of safety, and committed to his generals the fate of this important day. 13. Nor was his confidence misplaced. After a long and bloody contest, in which fifty thousand are computed to have fallen on both sides, victory declared in favour of Constan'tius. 14. Magnen'tius after this made several efforts to retrieve his shattered fortunes, but finding them ineffectual, and having nothing to hope from the victor, he put an end to his existence by falling on his sword, and thus the Roman empire became again united under one head.

15. Soon after this event, Constan'tius bestowed the title of Cæsar, and his sister Constan'tia, on Gal'lus, the

---

* A town of Bithy'nia.

† Panno'nia contained the modern provinces of Croa'tia, Carnio'la, Sclavo'nia, Bos'nia, Win'disch, March, part of Ser'via, with Hungary and Austria.

nephew of Con'stantine the Great. 16. Gal'lus fixed his residence at An'tioch; but, conducting himself improperly in his government, he was recalled, thrown into prison, and there beheaded. 17. His brother Ju'lian succeeded to the vacant title, and was appointed to govern the provinces beyond the Alps. 13. Though brought up in retirement, and utterly unversed in military affairs, Ju'lian displayed a courage and conduct worthy a veteran commander. He freed Gaul from the incursions of the barbarians, and fixing his residence at Paris, adorned that city with many useful and magnificent works.

19. While Ju'lian was thus employed in Gaul, Constan'tius visited the ancient capital of the Roman world; but was constrained to shorten his stay by the distress of the Illyr'ian provinces: before his departure, however, he caused the largest of the *obelisks* that had been brought from Egypt, to be erected in the Circus Maximus at Rome. 20. The renown which Ju'lian had acquired by his brave and prudent administration, began to arouse the jealousy of Constan'tius, who thereupon sent him orders to quit Gaul with his legions, and hasten into Asia, to repel the Persians. 21. His troops, however, warmly attached both to their commander and their native soil, boldly refused to obey the mandate; and, saluting Ju'lian as Augus'tus, compelled him to assume the imperial purple.

22. Finding resistance useless, he wrote a respectful letter to Constan'tius, acknowledging his *supremacy*. 23. To this the emperor replied with great *asperity*, commanding him to resign his newly acquired dignity, and to this mandate he prepared to enfore obedience by arms; but his designs were interrupted by death, which cut him off in the forty-fifth year of his age, and the twenty-fourth of his reign, leaving Ju'lian in quiet possession of that throne, which seemed likely to have cost him a vast effusion of blood. 24. Though Ju'lian had been educated in the principles of Christianity, he early shewed a predi-

lection for the religion of his forefathers; and no sooner was he released from all constraint, by the death of Constan'tius, than he hastened to restore it to its original splendour. 25. But while he thus rejected the truths of the Gospel, and bowed down to idols, the work of men's hands, he treated all those who differed from him in opinion with the utmost lenity and mildness, compelling none to worship God contrary to the dictates of their own conscience.

26. Determined to prosecute the Persian war with vigour, Ju'lian raised an army of sixty-five thousand well disciplined troops, a formidable body of Scyth'ian auxiliaries, and a considerable number of irregular forces; a fleet of eleven hundred ships carried stores and provisions on the Euphrates, along whose banks he marched. 27. With the fortitude of a hero, he shared the perils and fatigues of the enterprise with the meanest soldier, marching on foot at the head of his legions, and partaking with them of their coarse and homely fare. 28. At length, however, after having given repeated proofs of his generalship, as well as of his personal valour, he was pierced by a javelin, in a skirmish with the enemy, and died praising the gods that they had vouchsafed him so glorious an end, in the midst of an honourable career.

29. So contradictory are the accounts given us by Christian and Heathen writers, of the actions of this prince, that it is almost impossible to draw his character with impartiality. Candour, however, obliges us to say, that his conduct in general was such as might put many Christians to the blush, and his *premature* death may be considered as hastening the downfall of that empire he appeared so well calculated to govern *.

* Christian writers have given a very unfavourable character of Ju'lian, and represented him as a monster of cruelty and hypocrisy. St. Gregory Nazienzen affirms, that during his residence at An'tioch, the river Orontes was choked up with the dead bodies of such as had been by his order privately murder-

30. The army being left in perilous circumstances by the decease of the emperor, elected Jo'vian, one of their own body, to the imperial command. 31. He was a person of mean birth, and but little fitted for the important station to which he was elevated, as appears by his immediately making a disgraceful peace with the Persians, surrendering to them the greatest part of Mesopota'mia, which had cost so much blood and treasure in the acquirement. No sooner was he invested with the imperial purple, than he restored the Christian religion, and shut up the Heathen temples, which had been opened with such magnificence by his predecessor. 32. On his return, however, to Constan'tinople, he was suffocated by the fumes of charcoal, which had been placed in his apartment, after a short reign of eight months, A.D. 364.

33. On the death of Jo'vian, Valentin'ian, an officer of rank, was elected to fill the imperial throne. 34. He was a native of Panno'nia, and the son of Count Gra'tian, who had filled the highest offices in the state. Finding the concerns of his extensive empire too much for him to attend to with the care which their importance required, he conferred the title of Augus'tus on his brother Va'lens, and *confided* the eastern provinces to his care, together with Constan'tinople, the capital. 35. He himself governed Illyr'icum, Italy, and Gaul, and fixed his residence at Mi'lan. Thus were the Roman dominions finally divided into the eastern and western empires; and as the latter seems more immediately connected with the history of Rome, we shall confine ourselves to a brief narrative of its principal events, adverting to those of the eastern division only when peculiar circumstances render it necessary.

36. During the reign of Valentin'ian, the repose of the empire was repeatedly disturbed by the revolt of disaf-

---

ed; and that the ponds and ditches were filled with the bodies of young virgins and children, whom he had inhumanly sacrificed with the hope of discovering future events by their entrails.

fected provinces, or by the incursions of the neighbouring barbarians; by his prudence and military skill, however, he brought back the former to their allegiance, and repelled the inroads of the latter, chastising them with fire and sword. 37. Unable himself to manage the war in Britain against the Picts* and Scots, who dreadfully harassed that province, he sent thither his general Theodo'sius, who defeated the invaders in several engagements, compelled them to take shelter in the most northerly part of the island, and restored the cities and fortresses to their former strength and splendour. 38. In the mean time the emperor continued his successes in Gaul, and having subdued the Qua'di,† that nation sent ambassadors to deprecate his anger. 39. Valentin'ian received them with the utmost haughtiness, and while in the act of warmly upbraiding them for their perfidy and cruelty, he ruptured a blood-vessel, and soon after expired, in the fifty-fifth year of his age, and the twelfth of his reign, A.D. 375.

40. Valentin'ian was succeeded by his sons Gra'tian and Valentin'ian the Second; the latter of whom was but an infant at the death of his father. 41. Scarcely was Gra'tian seated on the throne, than he was called on to oppose the united forces of the Huns‡, the Goths, and the Alleman'ni, which he did with such conduct and courage, that in one battle he slew thirty thousand of them. 42. By the death of his uncle Va'lens, having become monarch of both the eastern and western empires, he as-

* Inhabitants of the northern part of Scotland, but originally from Scyth'ia.

† An ancient nation of Germany, on the borders of the Danube, in modern Mora'via.

‡ The Huns were a people of Sarma'tia, who invaded the territories of the Goths, and drove them to seek new habitations: these latter presented themselves on the banks of the Danube, and humbly solicited of Va'lens a place of refuge. Lands were accordingly assigned them in Thrace; but no measures being taken to supply their immediate necessities, they rose against their protectors, and, in a dreadful engagement, destroyed Va'lens, and almost all his army.

sociated the brave Theodo'sius with him in the imperial dignity, and committed Constan'tinople and the east to his care. 43. But the zeal with which he endeavoured to root out idolatry, having displeased great numbers of his Pagan subjects, Max'imus, his commander in Britain, was encouraged to declare against him. 44. Gra'tian hastened to chastise the usurper; but being deserted by his army, he was basely murdered, in the twenty-fourth year of his age, and the eighth of his reign, A. D. 383.

45. Theodo'sius was deeply affected by the fate of Gra'tian, but as yet no fit opportunity offered for revenging his death; he therefore contented himself with *stipulating* that Max'imus should content himself with the countries beyond the Alps, and leave Valentin'ian, the brother of Gra'tian, in quiet possession of Italy, Af'rica, and the Western Illyr'icum.

46. In direct *contravention*, however, of this treaty, Maxi'mus entered Italy with a numerous army, and ravaged it, even to the gates of Rome, which were readily opened to the invader. 47. Roused by this *perfidious* conduct, and stimulated by the entreaties of his empress, Galla, the sister of Valentin'ian, Theodo'sius marched against the usurper, and defeated him near Aquile'a *. 48. Maxi'mus himself having fallen into the hands of the conqueror, was divested of the purple, and beheaded on the spot, A. D. 388. His son Victor, who shared the imperial dignity with him, was soon after sacrificed to the fury of the soldiers.

49. Valentin'ian, thus put in peaceable possession of the western empire, enjoyed it but a short time; for, before he had completed his twentieth year, he was strangled by the contrivance of Arbogas'tes, præfect of the palace, whom he had loaded with honours and power.

* A town built by a Roman colony, to the north of the Adriatic sea, and called, from its size and grandeur, Roma Secunda.

50. To escape the punishment due to his crime, the traitor bestowed the imperial purple on Euge'nius, a creature of his own, whom he had raised from an humble station.

51. Theodo'sius, though solicited to form an alliance with the new emperor, lost not a moment in revenging the assassination of Valentin'ian. He raised a large army, and, after a long and bloody contest, defeated the army of Euge'nius, and having taken him prisoner, caused him to be beheaded; Arbogas'tes perished by his own hand.

52. For a short time the whole Roman empire again acknowledged only one head; but Theodo'sius falling ill at Milan, he there died, the 17th of January, A.D. 395, in the sixteenth year of his reign *.

Questions for Examination.

1. What was the state of the empire from this period?
2. Did the sons of Constantine continue satisfied with their respective portions of the empire?
3. What was the result of this unprincipled attack?
4. What advantages did Constans obtain from this event?
5. Did the usurper prevail?
6. Was the army unanimous in the choice of Magnentius?
7. How was Constantius employed in the mean time?
8. Was he successful, and how did he use his victories?
9. How did he act on hearing of the death of his brother?
10. Did he suppress the usurpers?
11. Was Magnentius an easy conquest?
12. How did Constantius act on this occasion?
13. Were they worthy of his confidence?
14. What was the fate of Magnentius?
15. What happened after this?
16. Was Gallus deserving of this honour?
17. Who succeeded Gallus?
18. Was Julian equal to his station?
19. What engaged the attention of Constantius at this period?

---

* In the reign of Theodo'sius, defensive armour is said to have been laid aside, a circumstance which not a little contributed to the repeated defeats the Romans from that time sustained.

20. How were Julian's praises received at court?
21. What was the consequence of this mandate?
22. How did Julian act on the occasion?
23. Did Constantius acknowledge him as his colleague?
24. Did Julian profess Christianity?
25. Was he a persecutor?
26. What was his first enterprise?
27. How did he conduct himself at the head of his troops?
28. What was his end?
29. What was the character of Julian?
30. Who succeeded Julian?
31. Who was Jovian, and what were his first acts?
32. What was his end?
33. Who succeeded Jovian?
34. Who was Valentinian, and with whom did he share the government?
35. What portion did he reserve for himself?
36. Was his reign a peaceful one?
37. How did he manage the war in Britain?
38. How was the emperor at the same time employed?
39. What occasioned his death?
40. By whom was Valentinian succeeded?
41. What enemies had he to contend with?
42. With whom did he share the fatigues of government?
43. What encouraged a usurper to declare against him?
44. What was the result?
45. How did Theodosius act on the occasion?
46. Did Maximus observe this treaty?
47. Did Theodosius avenge this outrage?
48. What was the fate of Maximus?
49. Did Valentinian II. enjoy a long and peaceful reign?
50. What was the next act of the traitor?
51. Did their treachery prosper?
52. What was the end of Theodosius?

CHAPTER XXVI.

3. San'guinary, *a.* bloody.
4. Pusillani'mous, *a.* cowardly, timidly.
8. Ta''cit, *a.* silent.
9. Pil'laged, *part.* plundered.
19. Invei'gled, *part.* enticed.
26. Ab'dicated, *part.* gave up, resigned.
Sub'lunary, *a.* beneath the moon, earthly.

1. On the death of Theodo'sius, his two sons succeeded to his dominions: to Ar'cadius was committed the

sceptre of the East, to Hono'rius that of the West. 2. These princes inherited none of the talents and virtues of their father; indeed, so totally unfit was Hono'rius to prop the falling empire, and to stem the torrent which assailed him on every side, that his name need scarcely be mentioned, in relating the important events which took place during his long reign.

3. Al'aric, a Gothic chieftain, who had served with bravery and fidelity under the banners of Theodo'sius, encouraged by the weakness of his successors, assumed the title of king of the Goths, and fought many *sanguinary* battles with the Romans, in which, though often defeated by the courage and conduct of Stil'icho, the general of Hono'rius, he seemed to gather strength by defeat, and advanced even to the gates of Rome. 4. The *pusillanimous* emperor of the West retreated for safety to the strong city of Raven'na*, and purchased a short-lived peace of this formidable invader. 5. While these things were transacting in Italy, the provinces of Gaul were successfully invaded by the Vandals† and the Ala'ni‡, and the rest of the Roman dominions, beyond the Alps, fell by degrees an almost unresisting prey to the troops of barbarians that poured in on every side; so that Hono'rius saw his empire circumscribed within the bounds of Italy, and the most formidable preparations making to deprive him of what still owned his sway.

6. As though the infatuated Hono'rius desired to hasten the ruin that awaited him, he with the most impolitic cruelty caused the wives and children of the barbarians who served in his army, that had been delivered to him

---

* Raven'na is a town in Italy, on the Adria'tic sea; though now but a poor place, it was formerly remarkable for its strength and beauty; but particularly for its noble harbour, which was capable of containing 250 ships. The sea appears to have gradually retreated, as Raven'na is now four miles from it, and surrounded with swamps and marshes.

† A people of Germany.

‡ A people of Sarma'tia, (now Russia, Poland, &c.)

as pledges of their fidelity, to be massacred. 7. This inhuman butchery caused an instant defection of thirty thousand of those hardy soldiers, who went over to Al'aric, and thus at the same time weakened the forces of the empire, and strengthened those of his inveterate foe. 8. To complete the measure of his follies, he put the brave Stil'icho to death, on pretence of being engaged in a conspiracy, but in reality because his valour and activity were *tacit* reproaches on the timidity and indolence of his infatuated master.

9. So many favourable circumstances concurring to promise Al'aric the accomplishment of his designs, he lost no time in recommencing hostilities; and by bold and rapid marches, took and *pillaged* some of the richest cities of Italy. 10. Rome, however, was the chief object of his ambition, and he sat down before it with a numerous army, totally cutting off all communication with the surrounding country, and intercepting the supplies necessary for the maintenance of its immense population *. 11. Famine, and its attendant, pestilence, soon made their appearance in this devoted city, and vast numbers became the victims of these dreadful scourges of mankind. 12. At length Al'aric was induced, by the payment of five thousand pounds weight of gold, thirty thousand pounds of silver, and many precious commodities, to break up the siege, and for a time retire. 13. But the respite so dearly purchased was but of short continuance; the following year Alaric again appeared beneath the walls of Rome, and one of its gates having been opened to him by the treachery of some slaves, this magnificent city was abandoned to the avarice and licentious fury of men, who neither valued nor respected the glorious monuments of literature and the arts which it contained. They spread slaughter and devastation into every quarter, and those who escaped the unrelenting

* Rome at this time contained about 1,200,000 inhabitants.

sword of the barbarians were destined to the still severer fate of becoming captives and exiles from their native land.

14. Nor was this devastation confined to Rome alone; after six days the savage conqueror abandoned the ruins of the imperial city, and extended his ravages through the finest provinces of Italy. 15. But while he was meditating fresh conquests, he was cut off by a premature death, and the miserable remnant of this once flourishing empire was thus delivered from its most formidable enemy *.

15. After a long and inglorious reign, Hono'rius expired, in the 39th year of his age, A.D. 423; and, leaving no issue, was succeeded by Valentin'ian III. the son of his sister Placid'ia, then only six years of age. 16. In his reign a new enemy appeared, in the person of At'tila, king of the Huns; who, after a memorable defeat, still rendered himself so formidable that his alliance was sought; and Hono'ria, the sister of the emperor, bestowed on him in marriage. 17. The night of his nuptials was the last of his life, for he was found dead in his bed the next morning †.

18. Instead of attempting, by wise and prudent measures, to bring back the empire to something like its for-

* The ferocious character of the barbarians was displayed in the funeral of their chief. The unhappy captives were compelled to divert the stream of the river Busenti'nus, which washes the walls of Consen'tia (now Cosenza, in farther Cala'bria, Italy,) in the bed of which the royal sepulchre was formed: with the body were deposited much of the wealth, and many of the trophies obtained at Rome. The river was then permitted to return to its accustomed channel, and the prisoners employed in the work were inhumanly massacred, to conceal the spot in which the deceased hero was entombed.

† With At'tila vast quantities of the spoils obtained in his wars were interred; and the same horrid means were had recourse to, to conceal the spot, (namely, the massacre of those who opened the ground,) as at the funeral of Al'aric.—Though this is the reason usually assigned for the murder of the captives, is it not more probable that it was done to secure their services to their master in the other world, (a custom still kept up in some heathen countries) as the place of interment must have been known to many besides those who contructed the tomb? *Editor.*

mer grandeur and vigour, Valentin'ian abandoned himself to all kinds of folly and debauchery; and at length fell a victim to his unbridled licentiousness. 19. Having conceived a passion for a virtuous lady, the wife of Petro'nius Max'imus, he *inveigled* her to the palace by false pretences, and there violated her chastity. 20. Her husband, exasperated at this outrage, procured the assassination of the emperor, and assumed the imperial purple. 21. His reign however was short, for Gen'seric, king of the Vandals, having, at the instigation of Eudox'ia, widow of Valentin'ian, whom Petro'nius had forcibly married, invaded the empire, he was killed in an insurrection of the populace. 22. The invader entered Rome, and delivered it up to a pillage which lasted fourteen days and nights; thus what Al'aric and At'tila had spared, now became the prey of the forces of Gen'seric, and was either destroyed or carried off to Carthage. 23. On the death of Petro'nius, Majo'rian was elevated to the imperial dignity: he appears to have been an active, humane, and virtuous prince, but perished in a sedition of his subjects.

24. Lib'ius Seve'rus performed nothing remarkable, and was poisoned after a reign of six years. During this period Italy suffered much from the incursions of the Vandals, who spread devastation from the columns of Hercules to the mouth of the Nile*. 26. From this period no monarch deserving of mention mounted the imperial throne, and the title of emperor of the west became extinct in the person of Augus'tulus, who *abdicated* his power at the command of Odoa'cer, general of the Heruli†, who from that time assumed the title of king of Italy.

Such was the end of this great empire, which had risen from the most contemptible beginning to be mistress of the world, thus fulfilling the law which governs all *sublu-*

* That is, from Gibraltar to Carthage.

† A people of Germany, anciently called Lemo'vii, whose country was on the Baltic, between the Oder and the Vis'tula.

nary things, by progressively arriving at maturity, and as progressively declining till it sunk into ruin, and existed only in the pages of the poet and historian!

"Cast back thine eye, and ponder upon all
Which in her ample bosom the vast earth
Enfolds: there shalt thou see the fatal scythe
Of time mow all before it, like the grass
Of spring; shalt see the temples, palaces,
The pride of empire, and the wealth of kings,
From their foundations rock, and nought remain
Of state or city, once renowned in fame,
Save the faint rumour, that it once had been."

Questions for Examination.

1. Who succeeded Theodosius the Great?
2. Were they equally fitted to govern the Roman empire?
3. Who first took advantage of the weakness of Honorius?
4. Was he bravely opposed by Honorius?
5. What other invaders opposed the peace of the empire?
6. Did Honorius adopt judicious measures for repelling these attacks?
7. What was the consequence of this butchery?
8. What other act of folly and cruelty disgraced his reign?
9. What consequences arose from these measures?
10. Did Rome suffer in this invasion?
11. What was the result of this?
12. By what means was Rome delivered from these calamities?
13. Did the city enjoy a long peace?
14. Was Rome alone the sufferer?
15. When did Honorius die, and who was his successor?
16. By whom was the empire invaded in his reign?
17. Did he long enjoy the advantages of this alliance?
18. What was Valentinian's general conduct?
19. What hastened his end?
20. How was this revenged?
21. Was his reign prosperous?
22. Did Genseric injure Rome?
23. Who succeeded Petronius?
24. Who was the successor of Majorian?
25. Who succeeded Severus, and who was the last monarch of the Western, or Roman empire?

Saracens, Arabs, called also Moors after having settled in Mauritania.

English Miles. 0 100 200 300 400

Roman Miles. 0 100 200 300 400

5 Long. West Meridian of London 5 Long. East 10 15 20 25 30 35 40 45

Published by G. & W. B. Whittaker, Ave-Maria Lane. 1822.

THE

INCURSIONS OF THE BARBARIANS,

THEIR

Origin, Settlements, Dispersions, &c.

CHAPTER I.

SECT. I.

1. HAVING seen, in the previous history, Rome rising from an obscure city, gradually increasing in extent and power, till she became almost literally the "Mistress of the World:" having also witnessed her decline, when her feeble supporters, no longer governed by those noble maxims of their ancestors, which taught them to subdue their passions, and live only for the glory of their country, were enervated by luxury and sunk in effeminacy; we now turn our eyes to that period when she became a prey to various adventurous nations, who issuing from the desert regions of the north, poured in upon her territories, crushed the stupendous edifice she had raised, and established themselves on its ruins.

2. To exhibit a clear account of the various causes which led to a change so important, it will be necessary to give a separate history, in as concise a manner as possible, of the different barbarous nations, whose actions in producing this great revolution are most conspicuous; and in doing this we shall avail ourselves of the best authorities that can be collected, for the purpose of forming a useful and interesting appendage to the Roman history.

3. The Barbarians who successively made incursions into the Roman empire, and who eventually became masters of all that was valuable in Europe, were,—the Huns,

the Alains, the Vandals, the Goths, the Heruli, the Gepidæ, the Suevi, the Burgundians, the Franks, the Saxons, the Lombards, the Saracens, the Normans, the Turks, the Bulgari, the Alemani, the Venedi, or Sclavi, and the Avari; the last four, from their comparative insignificance, being termed *minor* Barbarians.

THE HUNS.

4. We shall first endeavour to give an account of the Huns, a fierce and savage nation, who originally inhabited the vast deserts which border the north of China, known by the name of Scythia. It appears that after a series of civil wars in which these barbarians had been engaged, the vanquished tribes retired westward, and settled to the north of the Caspian Sea, near the source of the river Ural. 5. In the year 376 they advanced towards the Palus Mæotis, or Sea of Azof, under the command of Balimir, their chief, who subdued the Alains, and compelled such as were able to bear arms to join them.

6. Having this accession to their force, they next crossed the Tanais or Don, and bent their course towards the Danube, forcing the Ostrogoths and Visigoths from their territories, and taking possession of the whole country between these rivers. 7. In the year 391, they entered Mœsia and Thrace, where they were defeated and driven back by Stilicho, the commander of the Roman army in those provinces; but they still continued to make incursions to the south of the Danube.

8. Uldes, the successor of Balimir, in the year 400, several times attacked and at length vanquished the rebel Gainus, who, after having served in the Roman armies, had been banished, and who ineffectually endeavoured to seize the ancient country of the Goths; in the attempt, however, he lost his life, and his head was sent to the emperor Arcadius, and carried in triumph to Constantinople.

9. In the war between the Romans and Goths, Uldes

joined his forces to those of Stilicho, the Roman general, and very materially contributed to the decisive victory which was gained near Florence over the Gothic general Radagaisus. 10. Notwithstanding, however, the amity which at that time subsisted between the Huns and Romans, we find that in three years afterwards Uldes was engaged in a war against his former allies; but the Romans having succeeded in introducing their emissaries into his camp, he was abandoned by a part of his army, and compelled to retire beyond the Danube.

11. Caraton succeed Uldes about the year 412, and being enraged with the Romans for having assassinated another chief of his nation, named Donatus, he actively prepared for war, resolving to avenge his death. The emperor Theodosius, however, found means to appease his resentment, by making him some very valuable presents.

12. The Roman general Actius, in 424, obtained from the Huns an army of 60,000 men, to support the cause of the tyrant John, formerly secretary to the emperor Honorius; but John being beheaded in the following year, it was necessary to give them a large sum of money to induce them to retire. 13. Shortly after this, in the year 427, the Huns were driven from Pannonia by the united force of the Romans and Goths; but they soon reentered it, and assisted Actius, who had retired thither, in obtaining better terms from the emperor Valentinian III. than he could have gained without their aid.

14. The celebrated Attila, who from his excessive cruelty obtained the name of *the Scourge of God*, appeared at the head of the Huns in 433, and resolving on a new war with the Romans, took Viminacium on the Danube, over-ran Mœsia, Thrace, and Illyricum, and then concluded a peace with the Roman emperor Theodosius. 15. In the reign of Valentinian III. Attila invaded Gaul, at the head of a formidable army, and rendered his name execrable by the cruel devastations and unheard-of mas-

sacres which marked his way. 16. Having without any serious opposition pursued his bloody career through great part of Gaul, he at length arrived at Orleans, which he besieged and took in 451. Here, however, the tide of success turned against him: he was defeated by Actius, the Roman general, and Theodoric, king of the Visigoths; and in three months after he lost the famous battle of Chalons, where it is asserted 300,000 of his followers perished in the field; though some accounts state his loss as not amounting to two-thirds of that number. In this battle Theodoric was slain. 17. The fierce Attila, enraged at this defeat, crossed the Rhine, and having recruited his army, entered Italy, where he took Milan, Pavia, and several other cities, and was proceeding towards Rome, but by the persuasion of Pope Leo, he made peace and returned to his own country, where he shortly after died. 18. His body was enclosed in three coffins, the first of gold, the second of silver, and the third of iron, and secretly buried; and, in order to prevent the possibility of the place of his interment being known, all those who had been employed about his grave were put to death. Thus of this terrible scourge of the human race, it may be truly said, that both living and dead he was instrumental in inflicting misery on his fellow-creatures.

19. The successors of Attila were distracted by party feuds and internal divisions, and the empire of the Huns sunk into numerous petty sovereignties, which were finally overturned by the warlike Charlemagne, who ravaged their country: and, after a desolating war of eight years continuance, burned the towns, and dispersed among the neighbouring nations those Huns who escaped his conquering sword.

THE ALAINS.

20. The northern part of Asiatic Sarmatia was inhabited by the Alains, a people known to the Romans in the time

of Pompey. Under the first Roman emperors they several times invaded the frontier provinces, and in the reign of Vespasian they entered Media, and penetrated as far as Armenia. 21. When their country was overrun by the Huns about the year 376, such Alains as could escape the fury of their powerful invaders, retired towards Pannonia, whence advancing westward, they united with the Vandals and Suevi, with whom they crossed the Rhine, passed through France, and entering Spain under the command of Respendial, eventually settled in the province of Lusitania, (now Portugal), where they were subdued in 477, by the Visigoths, who at that time had made themselves masters of the greater part of the peninsula.

THE VANDALS.

22. Like many other barbarous tribes who at this period over-ran Europe, the Vandals issued from Scandinavia (now Sweden), and having crossed the Baltic, first settled in that part of Germany now called Mecklenburgh and Brandenburgh. 23. Their numbers, however, rapidly increasing, many of them again emigrated, and taking their route eastward, settled in the country between the Cimmerian Bosphorus and the Tanais, whence they made several incursions upon the Roman provinces, and at length united with the Alains and Suevi in Germany. 24. Headed by Gonderic they marched into Spain, and settled in a province which they named Vandalusia, since altered to Andalusia. 25. In 429 the Vandals left Spain, headed by Genseric their king, and marched into Africa, where they took possession of all the country between the Straits of Gibraltar and Carthage. 26. The Vandals at this period were extremely formidable; they ravaged the island of Sicily, and in 455 even assaulted and took Rome, which, with characteristic barbarism, Genseric gave up to his followers for fourteen days' pillage, and then returned to Africa. 27. Their power afterwards

declined, and in the year 535, the gallant Belisarius, a general of the emperor Justinian, attacked the Vandals in Africa, took Gillimer their leader prisoner, and not only annihilated their power, but erased the name of Vandals from the list of nations.

Questions for Examination.

1. What striking contrast do we see between the early, middle, and later ages of the Roman empire?
2. Whose history is it necessary that we should concisely relate?
3. What were the names of the barbarians who successively made incursions into the Roman empire?
4. What country did the Huns originally inhabit?
5. Where did they advance to in the year 376, and what people did they compel to join them?
6. What river did they cross, where did they next bend their course, and of whose country did they take possession?
7. By whom were they defeated, and when?
8. Who succeeded Balimir, and what was the fate of the rebel Gainus?
9. Did not Uldes join the forces of the Roman general Silicho?
10. How long did the Huns and Romans remain on friendly terms?
11. Who succeeded Uldes, and what was his reason for preparing for war?
12. How large an army did Actius obtain from the Huns?
13. What happened to them in the year 427?
14. What name did Attila obtain, and what were his successes in 433?
15. What country did he next invade?
16. At what place did the tide of success turn against him?
17. What followed?
18. Describe his burial.
19. Who overturned the empire of the Huns?
20. What country did the Alains originally inhabit?
21. Towards what country did they retire in 376?
22. Whence did the Vandals originate, and in what part of Germany did they first settle?
23. With whom did part of them afterwards unite?
24. In what province of Spain did they settle?
25. To what country did they march on leaving Spain?
26. In what year did the Vandals assault and plunder Rome?
27. When, and by whom, was their power annihilated?

SECT. II.

THE GOTHS.

1. THE Goths were of Scandinavian origin. They first settled in Pomerania, but afterwards advancing towards the east, they formed a settlement to the north of the lake Mæotis, where they divided into Visigoths, or Goths of the West, and Ostrogoths, or Goths of the East. 2. The Huns, however, compelled them to abandon their newly acquired territories, and a part of them (the Ostrogoths) took refuge in Pannonia, where they afterwards erected the new kingdom of Italy, under Theodoric, which continued till the year 553, when they were finally subdued by Narses, who governed their former kingdom with the title of Duke, till the year 567.

3. Those Visigoths who escaped from the Huns, were allowed by the emperor Valens to settle in Thrace, in 376. They however soon revolted against him, and plundered the country which he had humanely assigned to them as an asylum. 4. Returning from Antioch, where he had been concluding the Persian war, Valens advanced against the Goths, but in this expedition he was truly unfortunate, two-thirds of his army being cut to pieces at the battle of Adrianople; and the emperor himself being wounded, was carried to a cottage, where he was burnt alive by the barbarians on the same day. This disastrous event happened in 378. 5. Alaric, king of the Visigoths, in 395 overran Greece and the Peloponnesus; in 403 he entered Italy, where he was met by the Roman general Stilicho, who defeated him and compelled him to retire.

6. Radagaisus, another general of the Goths, shortly afterwards invaded Italy with an army of 400,000 men; but in a battle with Stilicho, and Uldes, the king of the Huns, which took place near Florence, Radagaisas was

slain, and his army totally routed. 7. Notwithstanding such a signal defeat, we find that, in 408, Alaric returned to Italy, besieged and took Rome, and advanced into Calabria, where he died while besieging Rhegio.

8. Ataulphus, the successor of Alaric, left Italy and marched into Gaul, where he reduced Narbonne and Toulouse, and laid the foundation of a kingdom in Aquitaine, which subsisted till the reign of Clovis, who destroyed it in the year 508.

9. The province of Catalonia, in Spain, had been in the possession of the Visigoths upwards of fifty years, when Euric, their king, in 477, achieved the conquest of Spain, with the exception of Gallicia and Navarre, and until they were finally subjugated by the Saracens in 712, it remained in their possession.

THE HERULI.

10. We trace the origin of this people also from Scandinavia, who, crossing the Baltic, and at first settling in Pomerania, afterwards took their route, like the Goths, towards the east, and established themselves on the borders of the Palus Mæotis. 11. Being, however, continually subject to the oppressions of their more powerful neighbours, they returned towards the west, and set sail for Thule, one of the Shetland Isles, and finally settled in Iceland. 12. On the establishment of the new kingdom of Italy, in 476, we find that Odoacer, one of the Heruli, was the first monarch, where he reigned without opposition for thirteen years; till Theodoric invaded Italy at the head of the Ostrogoths, and having entered into a treaty with Odoacer, basely assassinated him.

THE GEPIDÆ.

13. Of Scandinavian origin also were the Gepidæ; they first settled on the banks of the Vistula, and afterwards travelled towards the river Tanais. 14. The

Huns, under Attila, subdued them, with the other northern nations, and they marched, as his allies, in his famous expedition to Gaul. 15. On the death of Attila, the Gepidæ shook off the yoke that had been imposed on them, and received permission of the Roman emperors to settle in Dacia and Illyricum, where they remained till 572, when they were subdued by Alboinus, king of the Lombards.

THE SUEVI.

16. The Suevi were a wandering, but warlike nation of Germany, residing for the most part near where the city of Berlin now stands. 17. When the Alains and Vandals entered Gaul in 406, the Suevi accompanied them, and also passed into Spain with their new associates, receiving the province of Gallicia for their share, which they retained till the year 585, when the kingdom of the Suevi was destroyed by the Visigoths, under Leuvigild their king.

THE BURGUNDIANS.

18. This nation originally inhabited that part of the banks of the Vistula which now forms the kingdom of Prussia; but in 245 they were expelled by the Gepidæ, and driven beyond the Elbe.

19. About thirty years afterwards they moved towards the Rhine, which river they crossed, and took upwards of seventy towns on the other side of it, but were obliged to give up their conquests by the emperor Probus, in the year 277. 20. They re-entered Gaul in 287, but were shortly after expelled by Maximian Hercules. Having been invited thither by Stilicho, they once more invaded Gaul, under their chief Gundicarius, and being reinforced by such of their countrymen as had remained beyond the Rhine, they overran Alsace, and advanced as far as Geneva, where they established themselves,

and proclaimed Gundicarius their king. 21. He, however, afterwards removed the seat of the kingdom to Vienne in Dauphine, where his family reigned the time of Clotoire the First, king of France, who, in conjunction with Childebert and Theodobert, conquered Burgundy, and gave it to Goutran his son; since which time it has formed a province of France.

THE FRANKS.

22. These people originally inhabited that part of Germany which lies between the Rhine and the Weser, which now forms part of Holland and Westphalia. It is supposed that when Germany was invaded by the Romans, various native tribes united themselves together in defence of their country, and styled themselves Franks, or Free Men. 23. About the year 235 they made an irruption into Gaul, but experienced a considerable defeat by Aurelian, afterwards emperor of Rome. They, however, in the year 264, renewed their invasion, and overran Gaul, where they obtained a permanent footing, and eventually changed the name of the country from Gaul to France.

THE SAXONS.

24. The Saxons originally inhabited the western part of Holstein, and being invited by the Britons to assist them in repelling the Picts, they were joined by the Angles, who dwelt in the eastern part of Holstein, and joining their forces, they set sail and landed in Kent, in 449. 25. They were so well pleased with the country which they came to deliver from its enemies, that they felt no inclination to return, and being more warlike than the natives, found little difficulty in establishing themselves in Britain, where they founded the seven kingdoms called the Saxon Heptarchy.

THE LOMBARDS.

26. The Lombards emigrated from Scandinavia, and first settled on the banks of the Vistula, after which they advanced towards the Danube, and infested the Roman provinces in that quarter by their predatory incursions.

27. After the destruction of the kingdom of the Goths, they invaded Italy, and founded the new kingdom of the Lombards, in 563, which lasted till 774, when it fell under the dominion of Charlemagne.

Questions for Examination.

1. Describe the origin of the Goths.
   What names did the Western and Eastern Goths respectively bear?
2. Which of them took refuge in Pannonia?
   What kingdom did they found, and when were they finally subdued?
3. What became of the Visigoths?
4. What was the fate of the emperor Valens?
5. What countries did Alaric overrun?
6. With what force did Radagaisus invade Italy, and what was his fate?
7. Did not Alaric besiege and take Rome in 408?
8. Who founded the kingdom of Aquitaine in Gaul, and when was it destroyed?
9. Who achieved the conquest of Spain, and how long did the Visigoths retain possession of it?
10. Were not the Heruli originally from Scandinavia?
    Did they not take a similar route with the Goths?
11. Where did they finally settle?
12. Who was the first monarch of the new kingdom of Italy?
13. On their arrival from Scandinavia, where did the Gepidæ first reside?
14. Who subdued them, and in what expedition did they engage?
15. Who eventually subdued the Gepidæ?
16. Who were the Suevi?
17. What province of Spain was allotted to them, and how long did their kingdom exist?
18. What country did the Burgundians originally inhabit?
19. Describe their future progress?
20. When did they re-enter Gaul, and where did they at length establish themselves?

21. Who conquered the Burgundians?
22. Who were the Franks?
23. In what year did they obtain a permanent footing in Gaul?
Does not France owe its name to these people?
24. What was the origin of the Saxons?
What induced them to visit England?
25. What were the seven kingdoms called which they founded in Britain?
26. Where did the Lombards emigrate from, and on what part of the Roman provinces did they afterwards make incursions?
27. Under whose dominion did the kingdom of the Lombards fall, and when?

SECT. III.

THE SARACENS, ARABS, OR MOORS.

1. THE Saracens who came from Arabia Deserta, are supposed to have been descended from Ishmael, the son of Abraham and Hagar; they were the first disciples of Mahomet, who was born at Mecca, where he began to preach and propagate his new doctrine, in which he so far succeeded as to gain a number of followers. 2. In the year 622 he was expelled from Mecca by the magistrate, and this circumstance gave rise to the new era, called the Hegira, or flight of Mahomet. 3. Having retired to Medina, his fame spread with great rapidity, and his disciples increased so fast that he was enabled to make war against Christians, Jews, and Pagans, all of whom the arch-impostor stigmatized as idolaters.

4. The success of Mahomet was uninterrupted, and after his death, which happened in 632, his disciples conquered Syria, invaded Egypt, and took Alexandria, where with a zeal truly characteristic of their ignorance and bigotry, they burned the famous Alexandrian library. 5. In 652 the Saracens destroyed the kingdom of Persia, which was governed by Caliphs till the year 1258, when Bagdad the capital, was taken by the Moguls. 6. Those

Saracens who had settled in Mauritania, thence obtaining the name of Moors, invaded Spain in 712, and having destroyed the kingdom of the Visigoths, they founded a new empire, which extended all over the peninsula, except the province of Asturias, and was not finally destroyed till the time of Ferdinand the Catholic, in 1492.

THE NORMANS.

7. The inhabitants of Norway and Denmark, called Men of the North, or Normans, who lived chiefly by piracy, made their first attack on France in the year 838. They proceeded up the river Loire, and advanced as far as the city of Tours, but were repulsed and compelled to retire. 8. They afterwards made frequent descents along the French coast, and during the reign of Charles the First of France, they besieged Paris, and then made an advantageous peace with the French monarch. The peace, however, was of short duration, and they carried on war with various success for several years, till having obtained some decisive advantages under Rollo, their chief, they were allowed by Charles the Simple to settle in Neustria, which from that time obtained the name of Normandy.

THE TURKS.

9. The Turks derive their origin from the Avares, a tribe of the Huns, and were anciently divided into many distinct bodies, inhabiting Great Tartary, and extending themselves gradually over Tartary and Persia. 10. A considerable body of these people, distinguished by the name of Onigars, emigrated towards the west, about the end of the ninth century, and settled in Pannonia, which from them received the name of Hungary. Another powerful class, called the Seldjucides, gave rise to the Sultans of Damascus, Aleppo, and Iconium.

11. The first monarchy of the Turks was founded by

Solyman I. in 1074, who invaded Asia Minor, and made Iconium the seat of his empire, which at length was overturned by the Emirs, or governors of the provinces, who in 1294 rendered themselves independent of their sultan. 12. They did not, however, long remain independent, for Othman I. one of the principal emirs, restored the empire of Iconium to its former state about five years afterwards; and Mahomet the Second having taken Constantinople in 1453, the seat of the Turkish empire was transferred to that city.

13. In speaking of the Turks, we should not omit to notice Nouradin and Saladin, the Sultans of Aleppo, both of whom distinguished themselves so much during the crusades. 14. It was against Nouradin that the emperor Conrad III. and Louis VII. conducted the second crusade; and at his death, which happened in 1173, the brave Saladin succeeded to the throne, and retook from the crusaders nearly all the conquests which they had so dearly purchased. 15. His bravery rendered him an object of universal admiration among his subjects, and his generous conduct to his enemies excited their esteem, so that his death, which happened in the year 1193, was deplored by both.

THE BULGARI.

16. The Bulgari were but little known till towards the middle of the seventh century. They were of Scythian origin, and anciently inhabited Asiatic Sarmatia, westward of the mouths of the Volga, where they built the city of Bulgar, which still remains. 17. Like the other northern tribes, when their own country became too populous to support them, they went in quest of new habitations. Some established themselves near Benevento in Italy, where their descendants may still be distinguished by their language and peculiar dress, but the greater part of them crossed the Danube, and took up their re-

sidence in lower Mœsia, Moldavia, &c. enjoying their usurped territories without much interruption. 18. Their most celebrated king, Crumnus, invaded the eastern empire in 810, and though at first defeated by the emperor Nicephorus, and compelled to sue for peace, the good fortune of Crumnus soon returned, and Nicephorus being slain, the barbarian ordered his head to be brought to him, and had a cup made of his skull. 19. In 813 he marched towards Constantinople, and laid waste its territory; he afterwards captured Adrianople and Arcadiapolis, and sent all the inhabitants, with their goods and cattle, to Bulgaria. He died the next year, and his successors soon lost what Crumnus had gained. 20. In the year 1019 Bulgaria became a province of the eastern empire, and was governed by dukes till 1186, when the descendants of its former kings were restored to the sovereignty, and it continued as a monarchy till the reign of Bajazet the First, who conquered and united it to the Ottoman empire.

THE ALEMANI.

21. The Alemani were a people of Germany, which country is still called by the French Allemagne. It is supposed that they originally consisted of an union of several nations, as the etymology of their name (all man) imports. 22. We hear nothing of them till the beginning of the third century, in the reign of Caracalla, when they made several incursions on the Roman provinces, in one of which, after having ruined forty-five cities, and overrun a large extent of country, they were defeated by the emperor Julian: this happened in the year 355. 23. Having again experienced a dreadful overthrow by Clovis, king of France, in 496, they retired to their own country, now called Suabia.

THE VENEDI.

24. Towards the end of the fourth century, the Venedi, who inhabited that part of the coasts of the Baltic Sea near where the city of Riga now stands, crossed the Vistula, and took possession of the country which the Vandals had abandoned, as far as the Elbe, where they obtained the name of Sclavi, or Slaves. 25. They afterwards, in the reign of the emperor Justinian, crossed the Danube, and settled between the rivers Drave and Save, which track of country received from them the name of Sclavonia.

THE AVARI.

26. The Avari originally dwelt in the western part of Chinese Tartary, near the source of the river Irtish, which springs from the Attay Mountains. 27. About the middle of the sixth century they were expelled from their territory by a horde of Turks, and retiring westward, they settled on the banks of the Danube, where they remained till their subjection by the Bulgarians: and they are not mentioned in history after the year 614, when they formed part of the army under Doucom, which had for its object the invasion of the eastern empire.

Questions for Examination.

1. From whom are the Saracens supposed to have been descended?
2. What circumstances gave rise to the new era, and what was it called?
3. Against whom did Mahomet make war?
4. What celebrated library did the Mahometans destroy?
5. In what year did the Saracens destroy the kingdom of Persia?
6. How did the Saracens obtain the name of Moors, and when were they finally destroyed?
7. When did the Normans make their first attack upon France?

8. What was the ancient name of the province of Normandy?
9. From whom did the Turks derive their origin?
10. Whence did Hungary receive its name?
11. When was the first monarchy of the Turks founded?
12. At what time was the seat of the Turkish empire transferred from Iconium to Constantinople?
13. What Christian monarchs did Nouradin contend with?
14. In what was Saladin so eminently successful?
15. What was his character?
16. Who were the Bulgari?
17. In what part of Italy may the descendants of the Bulgari still be traced?
18. By what act of savage barbarity is the memory of Crumnus distinguished?
19. What cities were captured by him?
20. To what empire was Bulgaria at last united?
21. Who were the Alemani?
22. What is the first account we have of them?
23. To what country did they retire?
24. What country did the Venedi take possession of, and what were they called?
25. What track of country obtained its name from them?
26. Where did the Avari originally dwell?
26. What became of them?

A SUMMARY ACCOUNT

OF THE

PROGRESS OF THE CHRISTIAN RELIGION,

UNDER THE

ROMAN EMPERORS;

Extracted from Whitworth's Epitome of Roman History.

2. Dis'solute, *a.* debauched, wicked.
4. Unrelent'ing, *part.* that does not relent or pardon.
5. Pres'byters, *s.* elders.
6. Func'tions, *s.* duties of offices.
7. Impli'cit, *a.* complete (founded on the authority of another).
12. Interven'ing, *part.* coming between.
15. Eva'de, *v.* to escape.
16. Mar'tyrdom, *s.* death for religion.
17. Exas'perated, *part.* enraged.
18. Enthu'siasm, *s.* warmth of feeling.
21. Ali'enated, *part.* turned, changed.
27. Tran"sient, *a.* short, passing away.
31. Pros'elytes, *s.* converts.

1. The rapid progress of our sacred religion, under the governors of the Roman world, may be attributed to a variety of causes. 2. Next to the ruling providence of its Great Author, the following may be considered the principal: the primitive Christians were generally eminent for their virtues, and remarkable for the purity of their lives: averse from the gay and luxurious pleasures indulged in by the *dissolute* Pagans, they were meek, humble, patient, temperate, and chaste. 3. In imitation of their Divine Master, they preached the Gospel of Christ throughout the Roman empire, and effected an

entire reformation of manners in every one whom they converted to the true faith. 4. The cruel persecutions commenced against them by the *unrelenting* Ne'ro, far from exterminating the sect, served only to unite them more closely together, and to manifest to the world their firmness in the defence of their holy religion.

5. Soon after the death of our Saviour, the public duties of religion were intrusted to some of the wisest and most holy of the Christians; these were dignified with the names of *presbyters*, a word expressive of their gravity and wisdom; and their office was, to guide with equal authority, and with united counsels, their respective congregations. 6. But a regard for the public tranquillity at length induced these fathers of the church to appoint a superior magistrate, who might discharge the *functions* of an ecclesiastical governor. 7. To these new presidents was appropriated the sacred appellation of Bishops; they were chosen by the suffrages of the whole congregation, and they retained their dignity for life. Though originally they were only considered as the first of their equals, their authority afterwards became so great, that they exacted an *implicit* obedience from every member of the church. 8. The great theatre on which the apostle of the Gentiles (St. Paul) displayed his zeal in the propagation of the Christian religion, were the provinces of the Eastern empire. Here the seeds of the Gospel were plentifully scattered by that holy minister, and as diligently cultivated by his pious successors. 9. Of the societies instituted in Syr'ia, those of An'tioch and Damas'cus were the most ancient, and the most illustrious. The new religion was favourably received in Ephe'sus, Smyr'na, and Per'gamus; many of the inhabitants of Philadel'phia, Laodice'a, and Sar'dis, embraced with ardour the Christian faith, and in all these cities churches were established, and bishops were elected to administer the sacraments, to superin-

tend all religious ceremonies, and to determine any differences that might arise among the faithful. 13. In the west, the church of Rome was the greatest, and the most ancient of all the Christian establishments. It had been honoured by the preaching and martyrdom of those eminent men, St. Peter and St. Paul, whereas none of the other societies could boast of more than one apostolic founder.

11. After the death of Ne'ro, the Christians enjoyed a respite from persecution, many of them were restored to their rank and fortunes; and it was not until the reign of the inhuman Domit'ian, that they were again treated with severity. 12. The indulgence of a few of the *intervening* princes, and the indifference of the rest, permitted the pious Christians to enjoy a full toleration of their religion. 23. But the emperor Domit'ian, a few years after his accession to the empire, published a severe edict against them, and many fell victims to the resentment of this capricious tyrant. Under the gentle administration of Ner'va, the Christians were again suffered to live in perfect security; but his successor, the virtuous Tra'jan, influenced by mistaken notions of policy, in some degree subjected this unhappy sect, by the severity of his laws, to a renewal of their former miseries. 11. This prince, however, who always discovered a sincere regard for justice and humanity, would not suffer any to be put to death till they had undergone a fair and lawful trial, and their accusers, if they failed in bringing full proof against them, incurred the heavy penalties which would have been inflicted on the defendants, had they been condemned. 15. After sentence of death was passed on any individual for his adherence to the Christian religion, he still had it in his power to *evade* punishment, by consenting to burn incense on the Pagan altars. 16. A few, whose desire of life prevailed over the glory of *martyrdom*, accepted this means of

preserving their existence; others, and by far the greater number, submitted with resignation, and even with joy, to the dreadful tortures prepared for them. 17. Instances are recorded of martyrs who *exasperated* the fury of the lions appointed to devour them, who pressed the executioner to hasten his office, who even leaped into the fires that were kindled for their destruction, and discovered a sensation of pleasure in the midst of the most exquisite torments. 18. This intrepid constancy was productive of the most salutary effects; the generous *enthusiasm* communicated itself to the spectators; many, whose minds were formed by grace or nature for the easy reception of religious light, viewed, pitied, and admired the faithful sufferers; and numbers were thus converted to Christianity.

19. Aure'lius was the next emperor who treated with severity the followers of our holy religion. The hardships they endured under this prince were discontinued at the accession of Com'modus, who behaved towards them with singular lenity. 20. This is generally attributed to the influence of the celebrated Mar'cia, one of his concubines, who had long entertained an affection for the oppressed Christians, and had publicly declared herself their patroness. 21. Seve'rus, at the commencement of his reign, shewed them great favour, and even treated with peculiar distinction several persons who had embraced their religion. Some time before his death, however, the mind of this prince was so *alienated* from them, that he endeavoured to restrain the rapid progress of Christianity, by publishing several severe edicts against the new converts. 22. Under the emperor Caracal'la these restraints were removed, and the Christians enjoyed perfect tranquillity for upwards of thirty years. During the short reign of De'cius, they experienced treatment so rigorous, that, compared with this dreadful period, their condition, ever since the death of Do-

mit'ian, may be considered a state of freedom and security. 23. Vale'rian, towards the end of his reign, adopted the maxims, and imitated the severity of his predecessor De'cius; but under the succeeding emperors the sword of persecution was sheathed, and the Christians were allowed a free exercise of their religion throughout the Roman empire. 24. In every city the ancient churches were found insufficient to contain the increasing numbers of converts; and edifices more capacious and more magnificent were continually erected for the worship of the faithful. 25. But a dreadful period now approached: Diocle'tian, a short time before his resignation of the imperial purple, was prevailed on by Gale'rius, who then possessed the dignity of Cæsar, to commence a persecution against the unfortunate Christians. 26. The churches of Nicome'dia were accordingly burned to the ground; ravages were committed on many other sacred buildings. All who refused to deliver to the flames the volumes of Holy Scripture, were put to death in a variety of ways; and though Diocle'tian, who was naturally averse to the effusion of blood, endeavoured to moderate the fury of Gale'rius, yet very rigorous punishments were inflicted on all who were too firm, and too faithful, basely to renounce their religion.

27. These *transient* calamities, however, were fully and unexpectedly recompensed by the sunshine of royal favour, which, during the reign of the great Con'stantine, beamed with such lustre on the followers of Christianity. 28. Even before his accession to the empire, when he exercised a limited authority over the Gallic provinces, he protected, by his laws and by his authority, his Christian subjects. When appointed to sway the sceptre of the Roman world, he immediately suspended or repealed the dreadful edicts of the late emperors, and allowed the free exercise of their religious ceremonies to all those who had already declared them-

selves members of the church of Christ. 29. He commanded that all public lands, and all places of worship, should be restored to them without delay or expence; and if any of the purchasers had bought them in the late reigns, at a fair and adequate price, they were to be repaid from the imperial treasury. 30. Thus were all the temporal disadvantages, which had hitherto retarded the progress of Christianity, effectually removed; its active and numerous ministers received a free permission, and even a liberal encouragement, to extend the salutary truths of the Gospel over the whole world; and in this pious work every argument, capable of affecting the reason or piety of mankind, was strongly enforced. 31. The example of the emperor contributed greatly to increase the number of *proselytes;* and by the education of his children in the doctrine of Christianity, Con'stantine secured to his subjects a succession of princes, who from their infancy imbibed the spirit of the new religion. 32. In the reign of Theodo'sius the Pagan worship was entirely abolished; its altars and its temples were destroyed, and scarcely a vestige of idolatry remained.

Questions for Examination.

1. To what may the rapid progress of Christianity be attributed?
2. What were the principal?
3. Did they confine themselves to example only?
4. Did the persecutions raised against them diminish their zeal and success?
5. What was the primitive form of church government?
6. Was their authority sufficient?
7. What name and authority did these presidents possess?
8. What was the principal scene of St. Paul's labours?
9. In what cities of the East was the Gospel early received?
10. What part of the West was first enlightened by the truth?
11. Did the successors of Nero imitate his cruelties?
12. What was the conduct of succeeding princes?
13. How were they treated by Domitian, Nerva, and Trajan?

14. Did not Trajan soften those severities by wise regulations?
15. Was there any chance of escape after condemnation?
16. Did many avail themselves of this?
17. What proofs did they give of this?
18. What effects did their enthusiasm produce?
19. Who was the next persecutor?
20. To whom may this lenity be attributed?
21. How were the Christians treated by Severus?
22. What was the conduct of Caracalla and Decius towards them?
23. How were they treated by Valerian and his successors?
24. Did they increase in consequence?
25. Did this tranquillity last?
26. Was this persecution rigorous?
27. What succeeded this storm?
28. What was the conduct of Constantine towards them?
29. Did he not add farther favours?
30. By what means was Christianity farther promoted?
31. How did Constantine personally contribute to this?
32. When was Paganism entirely abolished?

THE END.

Printed by R. Gilbert, St. John's-Square, London.